LATIN
LESSONS

E. W. COY

LATIN LESSONS

FOR BEGINNERS

BY

E. W. COY, Ph.D.

PRINCIPAL OF HUGHES HIGH SCHOOL, CINCINNATI

———o○;○;○○———

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

PREFACE

THIS book for beginners in Latin aims to introduce the pupil early to good connected Latin reading, and at the same time to give him a thorough knowledge of the common forms and simple constructions of the language. A knowledge of the forms is essential, because it is not possible to read intelligently a language as highly inflected as the Latin without such knowledge. An early introduction to connected reading is essential, because the pupil needs to be trained to feel and know, from the beginning, that one of the chief objects in the study of the language is to learn to read it. Too exclusive attention to the study of forms in paradigms and in disconnected and trivial sentences leads to the feeling that the language is simply a curious mechanism to be examined and dissected, instead of a vehicle for the conveyance of thought. Every teacher of Latin beginners is familiar with the difficulties experienced in passing from the study of what may be termed the mechanics of the language, as seen in forms and rules, to the attempt to grasp the thought as expressed in the works of a Latin author. In order to avoid this difficulty in the present volume, the author proposes to begin very early the reading and translation of a connected Latin text.

After a few exercises have been given in the conjugations and declensions, selections have been made first from *Viri*

3

Romae, to form the basis of the lessons immediately following these exercises. These selections are presented in short passages, and are accompanied with such help in vocabularies and notes as the learner seems to need. Grammatical instruction in inflections and in the syntax is introduced gradually, as it is required in explanation of the text of the lesson. Each lesson also contains an exercise for translation at sight, and one made up of English to be turned into Latin, both of which are based upon the passage that has been read. Thus the vocabulary of each lesson is used three times: first, in the text to be read; again, in the passage for sight translation; and a third time, in the English to be converted into Latin. Besides this, frequent reviews have been given; and important words and constructions are repeated in several lessons, in addition to the one in which they first occur. It is believed that a working vocabulary will thus be acquired more easily and more naturally than by the mechanical memorizing of word lists.

Following the selections from *Viri Romae*, and treated in the same general manner, comes Nepos' *Life of Timoleon*, and finally *The Last Struggle for Gallic Freedom* under Vercingetorix, taken from the close of the seventh book of Cæsar's Gallic War.

In the earlier part of the book, the meaning of the new words accompanies each lesson, so that the beginner, in his first efforts at translation, may not have his attention diverted by being compelled to search for words in a general vocabulary. Farther on, the special vocabulary for each lesson is removed to the Appendix; and in the selections from Nepos and Cæsar, the student is referred for definitions to the general vocabulary at the end of the volume.

From the beginning, attention has been called to English derivatives; and groups of such words, derived from the Latin already used, have been given at frequent intervals. As soon as it could be done with advantage, groups of allied Latin words have also been given, and the more common synonymous words and phrases are noticed. It is hoped that these features may add to the interest and profit of the learner.

As an aid to pronunciation, all vowels long in quantity have been marked throughout the volume. In the case of hidden quantities, the *Hülfsbüchlein für die Aussprache der lateinischen Vokale in positionslangen Silben* of Anton Marx has been taken as authority. To assist further in securing a correct pronunciation, the accent of all inflections in the lessons has been marked. If by these means anything shall be contributed towards a more careful and accurate pronunciation of Latin in secondary schools the author's purpose will be answered.

In order to fix the attention of the learner upon the variable element in inflections, the endings of nouns and adjectives and the tense signs of verbs have been printed in heavier type.

The book is intended to furnish material for the first year's work, and is complete in itself; all grammatical forms, rules, and explanations needed being given with the lessons. What is unusual and exceptional has been excluded as confusing and foreign to the purpose of a beginner's book.

With these carefully selected portions of *Viri Romae*, Nepos, and Cæsar, an attempt is made to render the passage easier from the first to the second year's work in Latin, and to prepare the pupil, not alone for Cæsar, but

for any more suitable book that may be placed in his hands. The beginner who has been kept for the first year at the study of forms and the dreary translation of lifeless artificial sentences finds himself, at the threshold of the second year, when set at work upon a Latin author, facing a blank wall which he can neither scale nor batter down. Many plans have been proposed to relieve the difficulties of this situation; but with the limited time at our disposal, I think that there is no better way than the one presented in this book.

The author desires to acknowledge his indebtedness to a number of his colleagues and friends for generous aid in his work, and especially to Miss Clara B. Jordan, teacher of Latin in Hughes High School, Cincinnati, and Mr. A. F. Kuersteiner, formerly a teacher in the same school, whose kindly criticisms and suggestions have been of the greatest value in the preparation of this volume.

<div align="right">E. W. COY.</div>

August, 1895.

CONTENTS

———•◦•———

7

LATIN LESSONS

———∽o⦂⦂o∼———

INTRODUCTORY

1. The Latin alphabet is made up of twenty-four letters. The letters **w** and **j** are wanting, **k** is seldom used, and **y** and **z** are found only in words derived from the Greek or from other foreign sources.

2. There are two ways of pronouncing Latin in this country; the one known as the Roman, and the other as the English, method. By the former method, which is supposed to be nearly like that used by the ancient Romans, each letter has always the same sound; the long and the short vowels differ only in the time occupied in uttering them. By what is called the English method, the letters are given nearly the same sound as in English.

Sounds of the Letters by the Roman Method

3. (*a*) Vowels and Diphthongs.

ā as *a* in *father*.	**au** as *ow* in *now*.
ē as *ey* in *prey*.	**ei** as *ei* in *feint*.
ī as *i* in *machine*.	**eu** as *ew* in *new*.
ō as *o* in *go*.	**oe** nearly as *o-a* in *ó-a-sis*,
ū as *oo* in *moon*.	not quite like *oi* in *coin*.
ae as *ai* in *aisle*.	**ui** nearly as *oo-i* in *cooing*.

The vowels, when short, have the same sound, only less prolonged. The difference in the sound of the long and the short vowels is a difference of quantity, not of quality; yet in giving the sound of short **e** and of short **o** it is customary with most teachers in practice to change somewhat the quality of these vowels, in order that the distinction between the long and the short vowels may be made more apparent.

In the following words, the vowel sounds of the first syllables represent the short Latin vowels; those of the second syllables, the long Latin vowels: —

a . . . . . *papá*.		**o** . . . . . *foregó*.
e . . . . . *entaíl*.		**u** . . . . . *footstoól*.
i . . . . . *redeém*.		

(*b*) Consonants.

c and **g** are always hard, as in *cat*, *go*.

v has the sound of *w* in *wine*.

s has always the hissing sound, as in *so;* never the sound of *z*, as in *is*.

t has always the sound of *t* in *time;* never the sound of *sh*, as in *motion*.

i consonant, *i.e.* between two vowels or at the beginning of a word before a vowel, has the sound of *y* in *yes*.

bs, when both letters are in the same syllable, has the sound of *ps*, not of *bz*.

Syllables

4. (*a*) Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

(*b*) In dividing a Latin word into syllables, a single consonant, or any combination of consonants that may begin a

word, goes with the following vowel. In compounds, the parts are separated.

(c) The last syllable of a word is called the *ultima;* the last but one, the *penult;* the last but two, the *antepenult.*

Quantity

5. Of Vowels. Vowels are either long or short.

(a) A vowel before another vowel, or **h**, is short.

(b) A vowel before **nd** or **nt** is usually short.

(c) A diphthong, a vowel derived from a diphthong, or a vowel formed by contraction, is long.

(d) A vowel before **nf, ns, gn, gm,** or **i** (consonant) is long.

The quantity of other vowels must be learned from observation.

6. Of Syllables. Syllables are long, short, or common.

The quantity of a syllable depends upon the quantity of its vowel, or the position of its vowel.

(a) A syllable containing a long vowel or a diphthong is long.

(b) A syllable in which a short vowel is immediately followed by two consonants (the latter of the two not being **l** or **r**) or by a double consonant (**x, z**) is long. It is then said to be long by position.

(c) A syllable in which a short vowel is followed by two consonants, the latter of which is **l** or **r**, is common; *i.e.* it may be used as either long or short in verse.

In the last two cases, (b) and (c), the vowel retains its short sound.

(d) All other syllables are short.

In the following Lessons, all long vowels are marked thus (ˉ). All unmarked vowels are short.

Accent

7. All words of two syllables are accented on the penult.

8. All words of three or more syllables are accented on the penult, if the penult is long; if the penult is short or common, the accent is on the antepenult.

It is important that the learner should, from the beginning, give careful attention to the accent of the Latin words which he uses. He will observe that, in words of two syllables, the accent is uniformly on the penult, without regard to quantity. In words of more than two syllables, the only thing necessary to be known, in order to determine the place of the accent, is the quantity of the penult. If that is long, it takes the accent; if it is short or common, the accent goes to the antepenult.

9. Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following: —

māter	compulsus	amābat
pater	īnfantēs	servīlis
Caesaris	coepērunt	dīcantur
nātiō	vāgītus	māgnus
amīcitia	exitus	differō
tempora	vēnandō	Rhodanus
faciō	imperium	cōnscrībō

Pronounce the following often-recurring monosyllables, observing particularly the quantity of the vowel: —

sīc, *thus, so.*	**sē**, *himself, themselves.*	**sī**, *if.*
cūr, *why.*	**mē**, *me.*	**nōn**, *not.*
cum, *when, since.*	**est**, *is.*	**sed**, *but.*
tum, *then.*	**quīn**, *but that.*	**hī**, *these.*
quī, *who.*	**ē**, *out of.*	**nē**, *lest.*
quis, *who?*	**ā**, *from, by.*	**-que**, *and.*
ut, *so that, that.*	**hōc**, *this.*	**et**, *and.*

LESSON I

VERBS

First Conjugation — ā-stems

Amō (stem **amā-**), *I love.*

10. Latin verbs are divided into four classes, or conjugations, distinguished from one another by the final letter of the verb stem. This final letter is called the characteristic.

The characteristic[1] of the First Conjugation is **ā.**

"	"	"	Second	"	**ē.**
"	"	"	Third	"	a consonant or **u.**
"	"	"	Fourth	"	**ī.**

11. The stem is that part of a word to which the endings are added in order to indicate different relations, such as voice, mode, tense, person, number, and case. In adding these endings to form the word, the final letters of the stem often either disappear, or undergo important changes.

12. The Pres. Ind. Act. of **amō** is thus inflected: —

Present Tense

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	ám-ō, *I love.*[2]	amā́-mus, *we love.*
2.	ámā-s, *you love (thou lovest).*	amā́-tis, *ye* or *you love.*
3.	áma-t, *he, she,* or *it loves.*	áma-nt, *they love.*

It will be observed that **amō** is for **amaō**, and that the stem vowel **ā** disappears before the ending **ō.**

---

[1] We shall see that the long vowel characteristics are shortened in some of the forms.

[2] *I love, do love,* or *am loving.*

A study of these forms will show that they are made up of the stem **amā-**, together with certain endings that are joined to this stem.

These endings, used in the inflection of the verb in the active voice, are as follows: —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. **-ō** or **-m**, *I*.	**-mus**, *we*.
2. **-s**, *you* (*thou*).	**-tis**, *you*.
3. **-t**, *he, she,* or *it*.	**-nt**, *they*.

These endings are added to the stem, to form the different persons and numbers. They stand for the personal pronouns, and hence are called the *Personal Endings*.

13. Like **amō** inflect the following: —

rēgnō, *I reign*.	**līberō**, *I set free, I liberate*.
prīvō, *I deprive*.	**properō**, *I hasten*.
vocō, *I call*.	**ēducō**, *I bring up, I rear*.
indicō, *I point out, I inform*.	**peragrō**,[1] *I wander through*.

EXERCISE

14. *Pronounce, analyze into stem and personal ending, translate, and inflect:* —

1. Rēgnāmus; properant; peragrat.　2. Prīvās; indicā-tis; rēgnant.　3. Līberō; ēducat; vocās.　4. Properāmus; līberāmus; peragrātis.　5. Amat; properās; indicō.　6. Ēdu-cāmus; prīvant; amās.　7. Peragrāmus; vocant; properat; rēgnātis.　8. Indicāmus; prīvō; properātis.　9. Ēducās; rēgnat; līberant.

---

[1] Compounded of **per** and **ager**. The parts of a compound word are separated, in the division into syllables, — **pér-a-grō**.

Write in Latin and give orally : —

1. I am wandering through; we are setting free; he is reigning. 2. They hasten; he deprives; you inform. 3. We do love; he is loving; they set free. 4. You reign; I wander through; we hasten. 5. You are rearing; he hastens; they are calling. 6. Thou settest free; we deprive; she points out. 7. We are calling; you hasten; he is rearing.

15. Of **rēgnō** give the 3d sing.; 2d sing.; 2d plu.; 1st plu. Of **vocō** give the 1st sing.; 3d plu.; 2d sing.; 2d plu. Of **properō** give the 2d plu.; 3d sing.; 1st plu.; 3d plu.

Observe the following English derivatives : —

amiable	*privation*	*regnant*	*indicate*
educate	*education*	*vocation*	*liberate*

———◦◦⦂◦◦———

LESSON II

First Conjugation — *Continued*

16. *Imperfect Tense*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā́bam, *I was loving.*[1]	amābā́mus, *we were loving.*
2. amā́bās, *you were loving.*	amābā́tis, *ye* or *you were loving.*
3. amā́bat, *he, etc., was loving.*	amā́bant, *they were loving.*

The Imperfect Tense is formed, as will be seen, by adding to the stem the syllable **ba** and the personal endings; thus, **amā-ba-t, amā-bā-mus.** Hence **ba** may be called the tense sign of the Imperfect Tense.

---

[1] *I loved* or *did love.*

EXERCISE

17. *Pronounce, analyze into stem, tense sign and personal ending, translate, and inflect :* —

1. Prīvābat; rēgnant; amābātis. 2. Peragrābās; vocat; properābat. 3. Indicābam; līberābāmus; rēgnābant.
4. Ēducābātis; amābās; vocābat. 5. Līberābam; prīvābāmus; rēgnābat. 6. Vocat; vocābat; vocātis; vocābātis.
7. Indicās; indicābās; līberant; līberābant. 8. Rēgnāmus; rēgnābāmus; amō; amābam.

Write in Latin and give orally : —

1. We were liberating; he was reigning; they are rearing. 2. He hastens; he was hastening; you were calling.
3. They were traversing; they are traversing; we were loving. 4. She was informing; he was rearing; they are liberating. 5. We did liberate; he did traverse; they were hastening. 6. I called; I am calling; we were informing.
7. We call; we do call; we did call; we were calling.

18. Of **rēgnō** give the Pres. and Impf. 1st sing.; 3d sing.; 1st plu.; 3d plu.; 2d sing.; 2d plu.

Give the same of **vocō, līberō,** and **prīvō.**
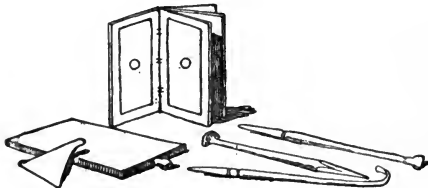
WRITING MATERIALS

LESSON III

First Conjugation — *Continued*

19. *Future Tense*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā́bō,[1] *I shall love.*[2]	amā́bimus, *we shall love.*
2. amā́bis, *you will love.*	amā́bitis, *ye* or *you will love.*
3. amā́bit, *he,* etc., *will love.*	amā́bunt, *they will love.*

It will be seen that the Future Tense is formed by adding to the stem the syllable **bi** (3d plu. **bu**) and the personal endings; thus, **amā-bi-t, amā-bi-mus.**

Hence **bi** may be called the tense sign of the Future Tense.

In like manner inflect the other verbs already given.

EXERCISE

20. *Pronounce, analyze into stem, tense sign and personal ending, translate, and inflect : —*

1. Prīvābit; peragrābimus; vocābunt. 2. Amābis; līberābitis; properābō. 3. Līberābit; indicābimus; prīvābunt. 4. Peragrābis; properābitis; ēducābimus. 5. Vocat; vocābat; vocābit. 6. Rēgnāmus; rēgnābāmus; rēgnābimus. 7. Līberant; līberābant; līberābunt. 8. Amās; amābās; amābis.

Write in Latin and give orally : —

1. We set free; we shall bring up; he hastened. 2. He will liberate; thou didst rear; they will be traversing.

---

[1] The final vowel of the tense sign disappears before the ending **ō.** Compare **amō.**

[2] Or *shall be loving.*

3. She called; they will love; they were loving.   4. He
calls; he was calling; he will call.   5. He will point out;
we were pointing out; we point out.   6. You are rearing;
you were rearing; you will be rearing.   7. They are reign-
ing; they were reigning; they will be reigning.   8. I call;
I was calling; I shall be calling.   9. We shall set free;
they will rear; they were calling.

21. Of **vocō** give the Pres., Impf., and Fut. 1st sing.;
3d sing.; 1st plu.; 3d plu.; 2d sing.; 2d plu.

Give the same of **līberō**, **rēgnō**, and **ēducō**.

——◦○᠅◦○᠅○◦——

LESSON IV

Second Conjugation — ē-stems

Moneō (stem monē-), *I warn.*

22. The Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses of **moneō**
are formed from the stem **monē-** just as the same tenses of **amō**
are formed from the stem **amā-**. The personal endings and the
tense signs are the same in both of these conjugations. Compare
amā-tis, **monē-tis**; **amā-bit**, **monē-bit**; **amā-bāmus**, **monē-
bāmus**.

23.   *Present Tense*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. móne-ō,[1] *I warn.*	moné-mus, *we warn.*
2. mónē-s, *you warn.*	moné-tis, *you warn.*
3. móne-t, *he*, etc., *warns.*	móne-nt, *they warn.*

---

[1] Unlike **amō**, **moneō** retains the stem vowel before the ending **ō**.

Imperfect Tense

SINGULAR | PLURAL

1. monébam, *I was warning.*   monēbámus, *we were warning.*
2. monébās, *you were warning.*   monēbátis, *ye or you were warning.*
3. monébat, *he, etc., was warning.*   monēbant, *they were warning.*

Future Tense

1. monébō, *I shall warn.*   monébimus, *we shall warn.*
2. monébis, *you will warn.*   monébitis, *you will warn.*
3. monébit, *he, etc., will warn.*   monébunt, *they will warn.*

24. Like **moneō** inflect the following: —

habeō, *I have.*   teneō, *I hold.*
moveō, *I move.*   videō, *I see.*
augeō, *I increase, enlarge* (trans.).   iubeō, *I order.*

EXERCISE

25. 1. Monet; monēbat; monēbit.   2. Iubēbam; habēbant; habent.   3. Vidēbitis; tenēmus; movēbis.   4. Augēbāmus; iubent; tenēs.   5. Habēbātis; movēbant; vidēbunt. 6. Augēbit; iubēbit; tenet.   7. Monēbimus; iubēbāmus; habētis.   8. Movēmus; vidēbant; habēbitis.   9. Habēbant; rēgnābant; videt; vocat.   10. Vident; vidēbant; vidēbunt.

1. He orders; he was ordering; he will order.   2. We increase; we were increasing; we shall increase.   3. They have; they had; they will have.   4. You (sing.) see; you (plu.) see; they will hold.   5. They were calling; they were moving; he was moving.   6. He will reign; he will have; they see.   7. You (plu.) were warning; you will

warn; you warn.　　8. I am holding; I was holding; I
will hold.　　9. You are liberating; you were enlarging;
they were ordering.

26. Of **rēgnō, habeō,** and **iubeō** write the 1st sing. of the
Pres., Impf., and Fut.; 3d sing.; 3d plu.; 2d plu.

Of **teneō, vocō,** and **videō** write the 3d plu. of the Pres.;
2d plu. of the Impf.; 1st plu. of the Fut.; 3d sing. of the
Impf.

Observe the following English derivatives: —

habit	*monument*	*vision*
move	*tenet*	*visible*
motion	*tenement*	*augment*

<hr/>

LESSON V

Nouns — First Declension

27.　　　　　　　　**Stella,** *a star.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	stélla, *a star.*	stéllae, *stars.*
Gen.	stéllae, *of a star.*	stellárum, *of stars.*
Dat.	stéllae, *to or for a star.*	stéllīs, *to or for stars.*
Acc.	stéllam, *a star.*	stéllās, *stars.*
Voc.	stélla, *O star.*	stéllae, *O stars.*
Abl.	stéllā, *by or with a star.*	stéllīs, *by or with stars.*

28. The First Declension includes nouns whose stem ends in **a.**
The terminations, made by the union of the case endings with the
final vowel of the stem, are affixed to the base, — the part of the
word unchanged in inflection, — to form the different cases.　The

base may be found by dropping the termination of the Genitive singular,[1] which in the first declension is **-ae**.

Hence the base of **stella** is **stell-**. The terminations affixed to this, to form the different cases, are as follows : —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	-a	-ae
Gen.	-ae	-ārum
Dat.	-ae	-īs
Acc.	-am	-ās
Voc.	-a	-ae
Abl.	-ā	-īs

(a) It will be observed that the vowel of these terminations is long in all cases except the Nom., Acc., and Voc. sing. Observe also that, although there are six different cases, we have but four different forms in the sing., and four in the plu. The Nom. and Voc. sing. are alike, the Gen. and Dat. sing., the Nom. and Voc. plu., and the Dat. and Abl. plu. The Abl. sing. is like the Nom. and Voc. sing., except that it has **ā**.

29. VOCABULARY

rīpa, gen. **rīpae**, *a bank* (of a river).

aqua, gen. **aquae**, *water.*

casa, gen. **casae**, *a hut.*

incola,[2] gen. **incolae**, *an inhabitant.*

fēmina, gen. **fēminae**, *a woman.*

fīlia,[3] gen. **fīliae**, *a daughter.*

silva, gen. **silvae**, *wood, forest.*

rēgīna, gen. **rēgīnae**, *a queen.*

via, gen. **viae**, *way, road.*

puella, gen. **puellae**, *a girl.*

est, *is.*

sunt, *are.*

---

[1] As the final vowel of the stem is sometimes changed, and sometimes entirely disappears before the case ending proper, the pupil would not be aided in learning the forms by referring the formation to the stem. Hence the formation of the cases is referred to that unchanged part of the noun which we have called the base.

[2] **Incola** is either masc. or fem.

[3] **Fīlia** and **dea** (*goddess*) have **-ābus** in the Dat. and Abl. plu.

māgna, gen. **māgnae**, adj., *great,*   **longa**, gen. **longae**, adj., *long.*
    large.   **ad**, prep., *to, towards;* always
multa, gen. **multae**, adj., *much,*   followed by the acc.
    many.   **in**, prep., *in, into, on.*

In casā fīliam relinquit, *he leaves (his)[1] daughter in the hut.*
In casam fīliam dūcit, *he leads (his) daughter into the hut.*
Observe that in these sentences **in** denoting *rest in a place* is
    followed by the ablative; denoting *motion to a place*, by
    the accusative.
Rēx Albānōrum duōs fīliōs habuit, *the king of the Albans had
    two sons.*
a. **Rēx** (*king*) is in the nom. case, the subject of **habuit** (*had*).
b. **Albānōrum** (*of the Albans*) is in the gen. case, limiting **rēx.**
c. **Fīliōs** (*sons*) is in the acc. case, the object of **habuit.**

These three facts illustrate the following rules of syntax : —

Rule. — *The subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative
case.*

Rule. — *The object of a transitive verb is in the Accusative
case.*

Rule. — *A noun limiting another noun denoting a different
person or thing is in the Genitive case.*

EXERCISE

30. 1. Rēgīna[2] iubet. 2. Stellās vidēbant. 3. Ad rīpam
properābimus. 4. Via est longa. 5. Multae sunt stellae.
6. In rīpā multās incolās videō. 7. Māgnam silvam pera-
grābat. 8. Puellae sunt in casā. 9. Fēmina in casam pro-

---

[1] The possessive pronouns may not be translated into Latin when they
are unemphatic and may be easily inferred from the context.

[2] **Rēgīna** means *a queen,* or *the queen,* or simply *queen.* The Latin
has no article, and the context will show what article is to be supplied, or
whether none is to be used.

perābit. 10. Incolae longam viam indicābunt. 11. Rēgīnae fīlia est in rīpā. 12. Rēgīna fīliās ēducābit. 13. In rīpīs sunt multae casae. 14. Puellae ad māgnam silvam properābant. 15. Rēgīna multās fīliās habet.

1. We see many stars. 2. The way is long. 3. The girls are in the hut. 4. The daughters of the queen pointed out the hut of the woman. 5. The queen was reigning. 6. She called the girl into the great wood. 7. He is hastening towards the bank. 8. The queen is ordering. 9. They are hastening towards the water. 10. The queen will order. 11. He set free the inhabitants. 12. They see the women in the forest. 13. There[1] are many stars.

Decline together **via longa, multa casa.**

Observe the following English derivatives: —

stellar	*feminine*	*magnitude*
aquatic	*sylvan*	*multitude*
aquarium	*magnify*	*longitude*

31. The Latin admits of greater freedom of arrangement of words in a sentence than does the English. This is made possible by the fuller inflection of the Latin. The natural, unemphatic Latin order is the subject followed by its modifiers, the modifiers of the verb, and, last of all, the verb. But this order is constantly being disregarded for the sake of emphasis. Any word placed out of its natural order is thus made emphatic.

Pater fīliam amat, *the father loves his daughter.* In this sentence the words have the natural order, and no special emphasis is given to any part.

---

[1] Not to be translated.

Fīliam pater amat. Here **fīliam** is made emphatic, and we might express the thought thus: *It is the* DAUGHTER *whom the father loves.*

Again, **Amat pater fīliam** gives emphasis to **amat,** and we might translate thus: *It is* LOVE *that the father has for his daughter.*

The force of the Latin sentence can be understood only by careful attention to the order of words. The pupil should, from the first, be required to read with proper emphasis the Latin in the order given, and should be trained to discover the meaning of the sentence in this way. The translation into idiomatic English should follow this exercise.

---

32. DECLENSIONS. — Latin nouns are divided into five declensions, distinguished from one another by the final letter of the stem, called the characteristic.

The characteristic of the First Declension is **a.**

"	"	"	Second	"	**o.**
"	"	"	Third	"	a consonant or **i.**
"	"	"	Fourth	"	**u.**
"	"	"	Fifth	"	**e.**

(*a*) As the stem ending is not apparent in all cases (**28,** n. 1), these declensions may in general be best distinguished by the endings, especially by the ending of the genitive singular.

The ending of the Genitive sing. of the First Declension is **ae.**

"	"	"	"	"	Second	"	**ī.**
"	"	"	"	"	Third	"	**is.**
"	"	"	"	"	Fourth	"	**ūs.**
"	"	"	"	"	Fifth	"	**eī.**

33. CASES. — Latin nouns have six cases; namely, Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative.

The Nominative corresponds in meaning and use to the English **nominative**; the Accusative, to the objective; the Vocative, to the

case of address; the Genitive, to the possessive, or the objective with *of;* the Dative, to the objective with *to* or *for;* the Ablative, to the objective with *by, with,* or *from.* These meanings will be best understood from the use of the cases in sentences.

All of the cases except the Nominative and Vocative are called oblique cases.

34. GENDER. — Latin nouns have three genders; Masculine, Feminine, and Neuter.

The gender of Latin nouns, as will be seen from the following rules, is not determined solely by sex. It depends in part upon the meaning and in part upon the endings.

(*a*) General Rules for Gender : —
1. Names of males are masculine.
2. Names of rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
3. Names of females are feminine.
4. Names of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine.
5. Indeclinable nouns and infinitives used as nouns are neuter.

(*b*) Special rules for gender depending upon the endings will be found in the following lessons.

Nouns of the First Declension are feminine, except such as are masculine under the general rules.

CASA

LESSON VI

Fourth Conjugation — ī-stems

35.   **Audiō** (stem **audī-**[1]), *I hear.*

Present Tense		*Imperfect Tense*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. aúdi-ō	audí-mus	1. audiḗbam	audiēbámus
2. aúdī-s	audí-tis	2. audiḗbās	audiēbā́tis
3. aúdi-t	aúdi-unt	3. audiḗbat	audiḗbant

Observe that the Pres. and Impf. Tenses of this conjugation are inflected throughout just like the same tenses of the Second Conjugation, with the following exceptions : —

1. In the Pres., **u** is found between the stem and the personal ending of the 3d plu.   Cf. **mone-nt** and **audi-u-nt.**

2. In the Impf., **ē** is found between the stem and the tense sign **ba** in all the forms.   Cf. **monē-ba-m** and **audi-ē-ba-m.**

36.   VOCABULARY

pūniō,[2] *I punish.*	**rāna,** *a frog.*
fīniō,[2] *I finish.*	**agricola,** m., *a farmer.*
mūniō,[2] *I fortify.*	**bona,** adj., *good.*
veniō,[2] *I come.*	**mala,** adj., *bad.*
volō (1st Conj.), *I fly.*	**ē**[3] or **ex,** prep., *from, out of.*
laudō (1st Conj.), *I praise.*	Followed by the Ablative.
aquila, *an eagle.*	

---

[1] The final vowel of the stem is shortened in some of the forms, as in the second conjugation.   N. 1, Less. I.

[2] Inflect, in the Pres. and Impf. Tenses, like **audiō.**

[3] **Ē** is used only before consonants; **ex,** before both vowels and consonants.

EXERCISE

37. 1. Rānās audiō. 2. In silvam veniēbant. 3. Aquilae ex silvā volant. 4. Rēgīna ad casam venit. 5. Viam mūniunt. 6. Bona rēgīna agricolās laudābit. 7. Fēmina ex casā veniēbat. 8. Fīlia bonae rēgīnae venit. 9. Fīniunt; fīniēbant; vocant; habēbant. 10. Vident; veniunt; tenēbat; mūniēbat. 11. Rēgīna rēgnat. 12. In māgnam silvam veniēbant. 13. Longam viam peragrat. 14. Mala rēgīna agricolās pūnit. 15. Audiēbās; mūnīs; pūniēbātis; fīnītis.

1. The good women are in the hut. 2. The eagle will fly to the forest. 3. They were coming out of the water. 4. We are fortifying the long road. 5. The inhabitants punish the bad queen. 6. The queen was reigning. 7. They are finishing; they were finishing. 8. The farmers heard the frogs. 9. Many eagles were hastening into the wood. 10. We are coming; we are seeing; we are praising. 11. The daughter of the farmer came from the bank. 12. We hear; we were hearing; you fortify; you were fortifying.

Observe the following English derivatives: —

punishment	*finish*	*audience*	*volatile*	*laudatory*
munitions	*convene*	*auditor*	*laud*	*agriculture*
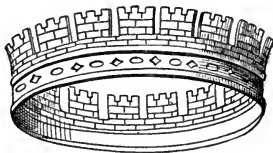
LESSON VII

Second Declension

38.   **Servus,** m.,[1] *a slave.*   **Bellum,** n., *war.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	sérvus	sérvī		béllum	bélla
Gen.	sérvī	servórum		béllī	bellórum
Dat.	sérvō	sérvīs		béllō	béllīs
Acc.	sérvum	sérvōs		béllum	bélla
Voc.	sérve	sérvī		béllum	bélla
Abl.	sérvō	sérvīs		béllō	béllīs

The Second Declension includes nouns whose stem ends in **-o.**
The Nom. sing. ends in **-er, -ir, -us,** or **-um.**   Those ending in **-um**
are neut.; the rest are masc.

TERMINATIONS

39.   *Masculine*   *Neuter*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
Nom.	-us or —	-ī		-um	-a
Gen.	-ī	-ōrum		-ī	-ōrum
Dat.	-ō	-īs		-ō	-īs
Acc.	-um	-ōs		-um	-a
Voc.	-e	-ī		-um	-a
Abl.	-ō	-īs		-ō	-īs

These terminations are added to the base, which in the above
nouns is **serv-** and **bell-,** found by dropping the ending **-ī** of the
gen. sing.

(*a*) It will be observed that, in masculine nouns, the vowel of
these terminations is long, except in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. sing.

---

[1] m. = masculine; n. = neuter; f. = feminine.

Cf. **28.** (*a*). In neuters the vowel is long, except in the Nom., Acc., and Voc., both numbers.

(*b*) Observe also that the endings of the Nom., Acc., and Voc. neuter are alike; being in the sing. **-um**, and in the plu. **-a.** These cases are alike in neuter nouns of all declensions, and in the plural they always end in **-a.**

It will be seen that the only difference between the endings of the masculines and the neuters of this declension is in the Nom. and Voc. sing., and in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. plu.

(*c*) Nouns in **-us** of this declension are the only Latin nouns in which the endings of the Nom. and Voc. sing. are not alike.

(*d*) Comparing the endings of nouns of the First Declension with those of the Second Declension, we find that the Acc. sing. of the First Decl. ends in **-am**, Second Decl. **-um**; Gen. plu. First Decl. **-ārum**, Second Decl. **-ōrum**; Acc. plu. First Decl. **-ās**, Second Decl. **-ōs**; Dat. and Abl. plu. both declensions, **-īs.**

Where may **servī** be found (give case and number)? **servō**? **servīs**? **bellō**? **bellum**? **bella**? **bellīs**?

40.   VOCABULARY

rēgnum, -ī, n., *a kingdom.*

vinculum, -ī, n., *a bond, chain.*

caelum, -ī, n., *heaven, the sky.*

Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius* (a legendary king of Alba).

amīcus, -ī, m., *a friend.*

equus, -ī, m., *a horse.*

fīlius,[1] **-ī,** m., *a son.*

populus, -ī, m., *the people.*

fluvius, -ī, m., *a river.*

Albānī, -ōrum, plu. m., *Albans* (inhabitants of Alba).

et, conj., *and.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

Inflect the masculine nouns given in the vocabulary like **servus**; the neuter nouns, like **bellum.**

---

[1] Nouns in **-ius**, like Amūlius, fīlius, and fluvius, and nouns in **-ium**, contract **-iī** in the gen. sing. into **-ī** without changing the accent.

Proper names in **-ius**, also fīlius and genius, drop **e** in the voc. sing.

41. Adjectives like **bonus**, *good*, are declined in the masculine like **servus**, in the feminine like **stella**, and in the neuter like **bellum**.

SINGULAR

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	bónus	bóna	bónum
Gen.	bónī	bónae	bónī
Dat.	bónō	bónae	bónō
Acc.	bónum	bónam	bónum
Voc.	bóne	bóna	bónum
Abl.	bónō	bónā	bónō

PLURAL

Nom.	bónī	bónae	bóna
Gen.	bonórum	bonárum	bonórum
Dat.	bónīs	bónīs	bónīs
Acc.	bónōs	bónās	bóna
Voc.	bónī	bónae	bóna
Abl.	bónīs	bónīs	bónīs

In giving the forms, read from left to right.

In like manner decline the adjectives **multus, -a, -um, mágnus, -a, -um, longus, -a, -um,** and **malus, -a, -um.**

42. Study the following sentences : —

> **Mágnum bellum gerit,** *he is waging a great war.*
> **Bonōs amīcōs habet,** *he has good friends.*
> **Via est longa,** *the way is long.*

Observe that the adjectives **mágnum, bonōs,** and **longa** have the same gender, number, and case as the nouns to which they belong. Hence the following

Rule.—*An adjective agrees with its noun in Gender, Number, and Case.*

EXERCISE

43. 1. Amūlius fīliōs habet. 2. Oppidum Albānōrum tenē-
bat. 3. Multōs servōs dominus habēbat. 4. Albānī māgnum
bellum fīniēbant. 5. Amūlī amīcus est. 6. Fīliōs et fīliās
rēgīnae vidēmus. 7. Servī dominum nōn amant. 8. Popu-
lus multōs amīcōs habet. 9. In fluvī rīpā est māgnum
oppidum. 10. Albānī multōs equōs et servōs habēbant.
11. Stellae in caelō sunt. 12. Vincula servōs nōn tenent.
13. Albānōrum oppida līberābat. 14. Rēgnī oppida mūniē-
bat. 15. Servī bonum dominum amant. 16. Multa aqua
est in fluviō. 17. Ad oppidum amīcus populī properābat.
18. Fīliī Amūlī servōs līberābunt.

1. Many stars are in the sky. 2. Amulius finished many
wars. 3. Amulius is not a friend of the queen. 4. The
master was punishing the bad slaves. 5. The good people
were moving into the town. 6. He will increase the king-
dom of the Albans. 7. The horses were hastening towards
the river. 8. He will set free the sons and daughters of
Amulius. 9. He wanders through the kingdom of the
Albans. 10. The bad master does not have many friends.
11. The chain is long. 12. The water of the river is good.
13. He will finish the war.

Inflect together **māgnum oppidum, bonus amīcus,** and **lon-
gum vinculum.**

Observe the following English derivatives: —

filial	*popular*	*servile*
domineer	*nonentity*	*belligerent*
amicable	*equine*	*servitude*

LESSON VIII

Second Declension — *Continued*

44.   **Ager,** m., *a field.*   **Puer,** m., *a boy.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	áger	ágrī		púer	púerī
Gen.	ágrī	agrórum		púerī	puerórum
Dat.	ágrō	ágrīs		púerō	púerīs
Acc.	ágrum	ágrōs		púerum	púerōs
Abl.	ágrō	ágrīs		púerō	púerīs

Vir, m., *a man.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	vír	vírī
Gen.	vírī	virórum
Dat.	vírō	vírīs
Acc.	vírum	vírōs
Abl.	vírō	vírīs

45. Most nouns of the Second Declension ending in **-er** are declined like **ager**. The principal nouns declined like **puer** are

> **gener,** m., *a son-in-law.*
> **socer,** m., *a father-in-law.*
> **līberī,** m., *children* (plu. only).
> **vesper,** m., *evening.*

(*a*) The terminations added to the base of nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are the same as in nouns in **-us**, except that the Nom. and Voc. sing. have no termination.

(*b*) **Vir** and its compounds are the only nouns commonly met with that end in **-ir**.

(c) It will be noted that, in nouns like **ager**, the **e** is not found in the stem, but is simply inserted before **r**, in the Nom. and Voc., to aid in the pronunciation.

46. VOCABULARY

aper, aprī, m., *a wild boar.*
caper, caprī, m., *a goat.*
culter, cultrī, m., *a knife.*
faber, fabrī, m., *a carpenter.*

liber, librī, m., *a book.*
magister, magistrī, m., *a master.*
doceō (st. docē-), *I teach.*
hortus, -ī, m., *a garden.*

dominus, *master* of a household, or of slaves.
magister, *master* of a school.

EXERCISE

47. 1. Caper et equus in virī hortō sunt. 2. Magistrī puerōs amant. 3. Magister generum rēgīnae docēbit. 4. Līberī fabrī librōs et cultrōs habent. 5. Sunt multī caprī et aprī in silvā. 6. Dominus malōs puerōs pūniēbat. 7. Vir in socerī hortum venit. 8. Magister amīcī līberōs docet. 9. Multōs aprōs in agrīs .vidēbam. 10. Līberī et fabrī et agricolae et rēgīnae fīliī in oppidum properābant. 11. Ager agricolae est in fluvī rīpā. 12. Populus nōn multōs amīcōs habet.

1. The masters were teaching the carpenter's sons. 2. They were traversing the fields of the Albans. 3. The father-in-law is hastening into the town. 4. He saw the goats and wild boars in the farmer's garden. 5. The slaves saw the horses of (their) master. 6. The carpenter had many knives. 7. The farmer has many[1] good horses. 8. The children saw the eagles in the wood. 9. The boys came to

---

[1] The Latin should be "*many and good.*"

the bank of the river.   10. The men called the children into the hut.

Decline together **bonus vir, māgnus culter, malus aper.**

Observe the following English derivatives : —

virile	*fabric*	*docile*
puerile	*library*	*doctor*
capricious	*magistrate*	*horticulture*

————o⚬⚭⚬o————

LESSON IX

Third Conjugation — Consonant and u-stems

48. Most verbs of the Third Conjugation are formed from stems ending in a consonant.   In the other conjugations, the present stem, as we have seen, is the same as the verb stem.

In the Third Conjugation, the present stem is formed by adding **e** to the verb stem.   This vowel appears as **i** in the Pres. Ind. Act., except in the 1st pers. sing., where it disappears before the ending **-ō** (cf. **amō**) ; and in the 3d pers. plu., where we have **u** before **-nt.**

Regō (verb stem **reg-**; pres. stem **rege-**), *I rule.*

Present		*Imperfect*	
I rule or *am ruling.*		*I ruled* or *was ruling.*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. rég-ō	régi-mus	1. regébam	regēbámus
2. régi-s	régi-tis	2. regēbās	regēbátis
3. régi-t	régu-nt	3. regébat	regébant

49. Like **regō** inflect the following : —

dūcō, *I lead.*	**relinquō**, *I leave.*
mittō, *I send.*	**gerō**, *I bear, carry on.*
currō, *I run.*	**pellō**, *I drive away, expel.*

EXERCISE

50. 1. Dūcis; dūcēbās; mittit; mittēbat.   2. Equī currē-bant.   3. Virōs mittunt; bellum gerēbat.   4. Oppidum relin-quimus.   5. Rēgīna incolās pellit.   6. Aper in silvam currit.   7. Amūlius regēbat.   8. Virī equum in aquam dūcēbant.   9. Agricolārum agrōs relinquēbant.   10. In hortum puerī currunt.   11. Populus rēgīnam pellēbat.   12. Multa bella Albānī gerunt.   13. Multōs librōs ad magistrum mittunt.   14. Ad māgnōs Albānōrum agrōs veniunt.   15. Agricola equōs in māgnam silvam dūcit.

1. The boy is leading the horse.   2. The friends of the people are good men.   3. The children of the farmer have many books.   4. The inhabitants of the town expel the good queen.   5. The wild boars and the goats leave the fields.   6. The Albans were carrying on war.   7. They are running; we are sending; he is leading.   8. The slaves leave their masters.   9. The master teaches the boys and girls.   10. They were running towards the town.   11. He sends; he has; he calls; he punishes.   12. We lead; we move; we deprive; we finish.

Observe the following English derivatives : —

relinquish	*concur*	*duct*	*mission*
current	*expel*	*conduct*	*remit*
occurrence	*compel*	*reduce*	*gesture*

LESSON X

Third and Fourth Conjugations — Future Tense

51. THIRD CONJ.   FOURTH CONJ.

Regam, *I shall rule* or *be ruling.*   **Audiam,** *I shall hear* or *be hearing.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL		SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. régam	regḗmus		1. aúdiam	audiḗmus
2. régēs	regḗtis		2. aúdiēs	audiḗtis
3. réget	régent		3. aúdiet	aúdient

It will be observed that the tense sign **bi** of the First and Second Conjugations is wanting in the Third and Fourth Conjugations.

Inflect, in like manner, the Future Tense of the verbs given in **36** and **49**.

EXERCISE

52. 1. Relinquunt; relinquēbant; relinquent.   2. Mittit; mittēbat; mittet.   3. Servōs pūnient; puerōs docēbunt. 4. Magister līberōs agricolārum docēbit.   5. Puer ex oppidō equum dūcet.   6. Curret; movet; mittent; habent.   7. Pūniēmus; vidēmus; dūcit; dūcet.   8. Multa bella Albānī gerent.   9. Puerī rānās ex aquā pellent.   10. Populus rēgīnam in oppidum dūcet.   11. Vinculum servum nōn tenēbit. 12. Equī in agricolae agrum current.   13. Albānī oppidum mūnient.

1. I shall lead; I was leading; I am leading.   2. He runs; he was running; he will run.   3. He hears; he was hearing; he will hear.   4. The people will wage a long war. 5. Amulius will fortify the town of the Albans.   6. They

will punish the children. 7. He will lead the horse to the river. 8. They will send good books to (their) friend. 9. Many people will come to the bank of the river. 10. The farmers will leave the horses in the field. 11. He will leave; he is moving; they will punish; they are holding. 12. The master will send the slave into the town. 13. The king of the Albans has two sons.

———○○⌖◉⌖○○———

LESSON XI

Third Declension

53. The Third Declension includes nouns with stems ending in a consonant or **i**.

Consonant stems may be divided into the following classes : —

1. Mute stems
  - (a) Stems ending in a labial (lip sound), **p, b.**
  - (b) " " " lingual (tongue sound), **t, d.**
  - (c) " " " palatal (throat sound), **c, g.**

2. Liquid stems, or stems ending in **l, m, n, r.**

3. Sibilant stems, or stems ending in **s.**

54.   TERMINATIONS

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	-s *or* —	—	-ēs	-a *or* -ia
Gen.	-is	-is	-um *or* -ium	-um *or* -ium
Dat.	-ī	-ī	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	-em *or* -im	—	-ēs *or* -īs	-a *or* -ia
Abl.	-e *or* -ī	-e *or* -ī	-ibus	-ibus

Mute Stems

55. (*a*) LABIALS

Prīnceps, m.,
a chief.
st. **prīncip-**[1].

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N.V.	prĭnceps	prĭncipēs
Gen.	prĭncipis	prĭncipum
Dat.	prĭncipī	prīncĭpibus
Acc.	prĭncipem	prĭncipēs
Abl.	prĭncipe	prīncĭpibus

(*b*) LINGUALS

	Mīles, m.,	**Aetās,** f.,	**Custōs,** m. & f.,
	a soldier.	*age, time of life.*	*a guard, keeper.*
	st. **mīlit-**[1].	st. **aetāt-**.	st. **custōd-**.
		SINGULAR	
N.V.	mĭles	áetās	cústōs
Gen.	mĭlitis	aetātis	custṓdis
Dat.	mĭlitī	aetā́tī	custṓdī
Acc.	mĭlitem	aetā́tem	custṓdem
Abl.	mĭlite	aetā́te	custṓde
		PLURAL	
N. Acc. V.	mĭlitēs	aetā́tēs	custṓdēs
Gen.	mĭlitum	aetā́tum (-ium)	custṓdum
Dat. Abl.	mīlĭtibus	aetā́tibus	custṓdibus

56. Masculine and feminine mute stems form the Nom.
sing. by adding **s.** A labial before **s** unites with it without
change, as **prīnceps;** a lingual is dropped, as **custōs;** a pala-
tal unites with **s** to form **x,** as **rēx** (st. **rēg-**).

---

[1] These stems were primarily **prīncĕp-** and **mīlĕt-,** and the short **e**
was changed to short **i** before an added syllable.

57.   VOCABULARY

comes, -itis, m. and f., *a com-*
    panion.
nepōs, -ōtis, m., *a grandson.*
sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., *a*
    priest, priestess.
cīvitās, -ātis, f., *state, citizen-*
    ship.

eques, -itis, m., *a horseman.*
pedes, -itis, m., *a foot-soldier.*
quod, conj., *because.*
quid, conj., *why?*
ubi,[1] adv., *where.*
quō, adv., *whither.*
iūcundus, -a, -um, adj., *pleasant.*

EXERCISE

58. 1. Quō mīlitēs dūcet ?   2. In oppidum Albānōrum
mīlitēs dūcit.   3. Silvae custōdēs vidēmus.   4. Quid prīnci-
pēs in oppidum equitēs mittēbant ?   5. Quod māgnum bellum
gerēbant.   6. Nepōs prīncipis comitēs relinquet.   7. Peditēs
et equitēs cīvitātem līberābunt.   8. Fīlius prīncipis bonōs
comitēs habet.   9. Ubi sunt amīcī Albānōrum ?   10. Fīliī
Amūlī sunt iūcundī comitēs.   11. Mīlitēs longum bellum
fīnient.   12. Quid mīlitēs in silvam properant ?   13. Quod
equitēs ex oppidō veniunt.

1. The keepers set free many slaves.   2. The priest warns
the companions of the chiefs.   3. He will send the horse-
men to the chiefs of the state.   4. Whither are the slaves
of the master running ?   5. Where are the friends and com-
panions of the keeper ?   6. Not many soldiers are-fond-of
(amō) war.   7. The daughter of the queen will have many
companions.   8. Pleasant friends will come to the hut of
the farmer.   9. The horsemen and the foot-soldiers are the
guards of the state.   10. Why do the foot-soldiers run out
of the town ?   11. Because the soldiers of the Albans are

---

[1] Sometimes **ubī.**

coming.   12. The chiefs will finish the war.   13. They will have pleasant companions.   14. The soldiers of the chiefs are not the friends of the people.

Observe the following English derivatives : —

comity	*equestrian*	*military*
nepotism	*pedestrian*	*principle*
sacerdotal	*custodian*	*ubiquitous*

———◦◦‡◦‡◦◦———

LESSON XII

Third Declension

Mute Stems — Continued

59.   (c) PALATALS

	Rēx, m., *a king.* st. rēg-.	Dux, m. & f., *a leader.* st. duc-.	Iūdex, m. & f., *a judge.* st. iūdic-.[1]	Cōniūnx, m. & f., *a spouse.* st. cōniug-.
		SINGULAR		
N. V.	rēx	dux	iū́dex	cṓniūnx
Gen.	rḗgis	dúcis	iū́dicis	cṓniugis
Dat.	rḗgī	dúcī	iū́dicī	cṓniugī
Acc.	rḗgem	dúcem	iū́dicem	cṓniugem
Abl.	rḗge	dúce	iū́dice	cṓniuge
		PLURAL		
N. Acc. V.	rḗgēs	dúcēs	iū́dicēs	cṓningēs
Gen.	rḗgum	dúcum	iū́dicum	cṓniugum
D. Abl.	rḗgibus	dúcibus	iūdícibus	cōniúgibus

---

[1] See note 1, p. 38.

60.   VOCABULARY

vōx, vōcis, f., *a voice.*   caput, capitis, n., *the head.*
lēx, lēgis, f., *a law.*   frūmentum, -ī, n., *corn.*
grex, gregis, m., *a flock.*   vincō (3d Conj.), *I conquer.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light.*   vinciō (4th Conj.), *I bind.*
perīculum, -ī, n., *danger.*   studium, -ī, n., *desire, zeal.*

61. Examine the following sentences : —

Equōs aquā prīvābat, *he deprived the horses of water.*
Māgnō mē metū līberābis, *you will free me from great fear.*

Observe that **aquā**, in the first sentence, is in the Ablative, after **prīvābat**, a verb of *depriving;* and in the second sentence, **metū** is in the Ablative, after **līberābis**, a verb of *freeing.*

Rule. — *That of which a person or thing is* DEPRIVED, *or from which it is* FREED *or* SEPARATED, *is expressed by the* ABLATIVE.

Multī convēnēre studiō videndae novae urbis, *many came together from a desire to see the new city.*
Lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrēs auxēre, *they increased their strength by friendly contests.*
Vinculīs servōs vinciunt, *they bind the slaves with chains.*

In the first sentence, **studiō** is in the Ablative, denoting the *cause* of **convēnēre**; in the second sentence, **certāminibus** is in the Ablative, denoting the *means* of **auxēre**; and in the third sentence, **vinculīs** is in the Ablative, denoting the *instrument* of **vinciunt**.

Rule. — CAUSE, MEANS, *and* INSTRUMENT, *are expressed by the* ABLATIVE.

EXERCISE

62. 1. Iūcunda est vōx amīcī.   2. Quō rēx mīlites dūcet?
3. Lēgēs rēgnī sunt bonae.   4. Sacerdōtēs et iūdicēs vidēbimus.
5. Rēx populum agrīs nōn prīvābit.   6. Oppidum bellī perī-
culo līberābunt.   7. Māgnā vōce equitēs iubēbat.   8. Ducēs
vinculīs līberābat.   9. Rēx est caput cīvitātis.   10. Populus
bellī studiō ex oppidō properat.   11. Albānōs bellō mīlitēs
rēgis vincent.   12. Vinculīs amīcōs Albānōrum vincient.

1. The voice of the judge warns the companions of kings.
2. He will send the chiefs of the state to the leader of the
horsemen.   3. Why did the chiefs of the state expel the
good inhabitants from the kingdom?   4. The friends of
the good man are coming with a desire for war (Gen.).
5. The chief they were praising with a loud voice.   6. We
will free the slaves from the danger of chains.   7. The boys
will lead the herd of goats into the woods.   8. They con-
quered the leaders of the Albans in war and bound (them)
with chains.   9. They deprived the inhabitants of corn.

Observe the following English derivatives: —

vocal	gregarious	lucid	induce
legal	capital	judicial	conduct
regal	invincible	conjugal	studious

Compare **vōx** (**vōcis**) and **vocō**; **rēx** (**rēgis**) and **regō**;
dux (**ducis**) and **dūcō**; **amīcus** and **amō**.

Compare also the endings of the Genitive singular, Third
Declension, and the possessive case in English, as rēg**is**
and *king's,* mīlit**is** and *soldier's;* also the Nominative plural
in Latin and in English, as vōc**ēs** and *voices,* iūdic**ēs** and
judges.

LESSON XIII

Third Declension — *Continued*

63. *Liquid Stems*

	Pāstor, m., *a shepherd.* st. **pāstor-**.	**Legiō, f.,** *a legion.* st. **legiōn-**.	**Flūmen, n.,** *a river.* st. **flūmin-**[1].	**Pater, m.,** *a father.* st. **pater-**.
		SINGULAR		
N. V.	pắstor	légiō	flū́men	páter
Gen.	pāstṓris	legiṓnis	flū́minis	pátris
Dat.	pāstṓrī	legiṓnī	flū́minī	pátrī
Acc.	pāstṓrem	legiṓnem	flū́men	pátrem
Abl.	pāstṓre	legiṓne	flū́mine	pátre
		PLURAL		
N. V.	pāstṓrēs	legiṓnēs	flū́mina	pátrēs
Gen.	pāstṓrum	legiṓnum	flū́minum	pátrum
Dat.	pāstṓribus	legiṓnibus	flūmī́nibus	pátribus
Acc.	pāstṓrēs	legiṓnēs	flū́mina	pátrēs
Abl.	pāstṓribus	legiṓnibus	flūmī́nibus	pátribus

Multitūdō, f.,
a multitude, a great number.
st. **multitūdin-**[2].

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	multitū́dō	multitū́dinēs
Gen.	multitū́dinis	multitū́dinum
Dat.	multitū́dinī	multitūdī́nibus
Acc.	multitū́dinem	multitū́dinēs
Abl.	multitū́dine	multitūdī́nibus

---

[1] Primarily **flūmĕn-**, but **ĕ** becomes **ĭ** before an added syllable.

[2] Primarily **multitūdŏn-**, but **ŏ** becomes **ĭ** before an added syllable.

64.   *Sibilant Stems*

	Flŏs, m., *a flower.* st. flōs-.		Corpus, n., *a body.* st. corpos-.	
	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
N. V.	flōs	flṓrēs	córpus	córpora
Gen.	flṓris	flṓrum	córporis	córporum
Dat.	flṓrī	flṓribus	córporī	corpóribus
Acc.	flṓrem	flṓrēs	córpus	córpora
Abl.	flṓre	flṓribus	córpore	corpóribus

Liquid stems form the Nominative singular without the addition of **s**. Those ending in **l** or **r** have the Nominative like the stem. Those ending in **n** drop the final **n** to form the Nominative, except neuters in **-men** and a few others.

Nearly all sibilants change **s** to **r** between two vowels, like **flōs** and **corpus**.

Like **pater** are declined **māter** and **frāter**. It will be noted that **e** of the stem in these nouns is kept only in the Nominative and Vocative sing.

65.   VOCABULARY

āgmen, -inis, n., *an army.*
carmen, -inis, n., *a song.*
virgō, -inis, f., *a maiden, girl.*
soror, -ōris, f., *a sister.*
mercātor, -ōris, m., *a merchant.*
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *an embassy.*
templum, -ī, n., *a temple.*
frāter, -tris, m., *a brother.*

māter, -tris, f., *a mother.*
Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *a province.*
ōrnō (1st Conj.), *I adorn.*
canō (3d Conj.), *I sing.*
altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*
novus, -a, -um, adj., *new.*

EXERCISE

66. 1. Rēx māgnum āgmen in Ītaliam dūcet.   2. Rēgīnae frāter et soror templum ōrnābant.   3. Albānī lēgātiōnem ad

rēgem mittent   4. Quid virginēs nova carmina in altīs templīs canēbant ?   5. Alta sunt Ītaliae flūmina.   6. Novae legiōnēs mercātōrēs frūmentō prīvābunt.   7. Mīlitēs prōvinciā pellēbant.   8. Bonus pater fīliōs' ēducābit.   9. Rēgis pāstōrēs sunt in flūminis rīpā.   10. Comitēs habēbitis (ad multitūdinem iūcundōs)   11. Alta templa flōribus ōrnābit. 12. Multīs perīculīs prōvinciam āgmen līberābit.

1. The leader of the Albans moved the army into the province.   2. The rivers of Italy are large and deep. 3. Whither are the mothers and maidens hastening?   4. Why do not the priests adorn the temples with flowers?   5. The merchants will send an embassy into the new province. 6. The soldiers of the queen will free the state from the dangers of war.   7. The fathers and mothers love the songs of the maidens.   8. The chiefs of the state were waging a great war in Italy.   9. The voice of the king is the law of the state.   10. The good master will not deprive the children of books.   11. There was much corn in the fields.   12. They were expelling from the state the leaders of the army.

RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

67. 1. Nouns ending in ō, or, ōs, er, es (increasing in the Genitive[1]) are masculine.   Exception : abstract and collective nouns in -iō, and nouns in -dō and -gō of more than two syllables, are feminine.

2. Nouns ending in ās, ēs (not increasing in the Genitive) **is, s** preceded by a consonant, **aus,** and **x** are feminine.

---

[1] That is, having more syllables in the Gen. sing. than in the Nom. sing. These are from consonant stems.

3. Nouns ending in **ĭ, c, e, l, a, n, t, y, ar, ur,** and **us** are neuter.

There are many exceptions to these rules, which must be learned by observation. The above rules do not apply to nouns the gender of which may be determined by the General Rules under **34.**

NOTE. — While these rules may be found useful in teaching the gender of nouns of the 3d Declension, they should not be relied upon as the only means to be used for this purpose. It is earnestly recommended that the beginner be required to learn the gender of each noun as he learns the noun itself, and that special attention be called to the use of the noun in connection with adjectives whose terminations indicate the gender.

Observe the following English derivatives : —

fraternal	*pastoral*	*ornament*	*altitude*
maternal	*corporeal*	*floral*	*novel*
paternal	*provincial*	*canticle*	*novelty*

———o∘⚬∘o———

LESSON XIV

Perfect Tense of the First and Second Conjugations

68. The endings of the Perfect Tense are the same for all conjugations, and are as follows[1] : —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -ī	-imus
2. -istī	-istis
3. -it	-ērunt *or* -ēre

---

[1] These endings are made up of the tense sign **ĭ** and the pers. endings.

69. Inflection of the Perfect of **amō** and **moneō** : —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā́vī, *I loved* or *have loved.*	amā́vimus, *we loved* or *have loved.*
2. amāvístī, *you loved* or *have loved.*	amāvístis, *you loved* or *have loved.*
3. amā́vit, *he loved* or *has loved.*	amāvḗrunt *or* -ḗre, *they loved* or *have loved.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. mónuī, *I warned* or *have warned.*	monúimus, *we warned* or *have warned.*
2. monuístī, *you warned* or *have warned.*	monuístis, *you warned* or *have warned.*
3. mónuit, *he warned* or *has warned.*	monuḗrunt *or* -ḗre, *they warned* or *have warned.*

70. The perfect stem in the First Conjugation is regularly formed by adding **v** to the present stem; as, **amā-, amāv-; rēgnā-, rēgnāv-.**

71. The perfect stem in the Second Conjugation is usually formed by dropping the final vowel **e** of the present stem and adding **u**; as, **monē-, monu-; tenē-, tenu-.** A few verbs of this conjugation form the perfect stem by adding **v** to the present stem, as in the First Conjugation. Other ways of forming the Perfect of this conjugation must be learned by observation.

Like **amāvī** inflect the following : —

rēgnāvī (rēgnō)	indicāvī (indicō)
prīvāvī (prīvō)	properāvī (properō)
volāvī (volō)	ēducāvī (educō)

Also form the Perfect of **vocō, laudō,** and **līberō,** and inflect the same.

Like **monuī** inflect the following: —

habuī (habeō)	**vīdī** (videō)
tenuī (teneō)	**mōvī** (moveō)
auxī (augeō)	**iussī** (iubeō)

EXERCISE

72. 1. Vocāvērunt; vīdimus; līberāvistī. 2. Tenuimus; auxit; mōvistī. 3. Mōvistis; prīvāvit; ēducāvērunt. 4. Rēx Albānōrum fīliōs habuit. 5. Equitēs iussit; mīlitēs frūmentō prīvāvit. 6. Sacerdōtēs templum flōribus ōrnāvērunt. 7. Perī-culō oppidum līberāvit. 8. Virgō flōrēs in capite habuit. 9. Videt; vidēbat; vidēbit; vīdit. 10. Vocat; vocābat; vocābit; vocāvit. 11. Lūcem stellārum vīdit. 12. Rōmu-lus frātrem līberāvit. 13. Dux āgmen in oppidum mōvit. 14. Novī peditēs in prōvinciam properāvērunt.

1. We praise; we were praising; we shall praise; we have praised. 2. They have; they were having; they will have; they have had. 3. Many eagles flew out of the woods. 4. Good men praised the laws of the state. 5. The people loved the good judge. 6. He moved the new legions into the province. 7. The shepherds increased their flocks. 8. The leader freed the people from the dangers of war. 9. We saw the bodies of the soldiers in the field. 10. The priest called the multitude into the high temple. 11. Italy has many (and) deep rivers.

LESSON XV

Perfect Tense of the Third and Fourth Conjugations

73. Inflection of the Perfect of **regō** and **audiō** : —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	rēxī, *I ruled* or *have ruled.*	rēximus
2.	rēxístī	rēxístis
3.	rēxit	rēxérunt *or* -ére

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	audívī, *I heard* or *have heard.*	audívimus
2.	audīvístī	audīvístis
3.	audívit	audīvérunt *or* -ére

74. The perfect stem in the Third Conjugation is formed, in most cases, by adding **s** to the verb stem. Changes in the final letters of the stem then often follow for the sake of euphony; as, **reg-, reg + s = rēx-**; **ger-, ger + s = gess-**.

The perfect stem of verbs of the Third Conjugation is formed in several other ways, which may best be learned by observation. The following may be mentioned here : —

(*a*) By reduplication, *i.e.* prefixing the initial consonant with a vowel; as, **curr-, cucurr-**; **pell-, pepul-**.

(*b*) By lengthening the root vowel, sometimes with change of that vowel; as, **em-, ēm-** (*buy*); **fac-, fēc-** (*do*).

(*c*) By retaining the verb stem unchanged; as, **vertō**, stem **vert-**, perf. **vert-** (*turn*); **dēfendō**, stem **dēfend-**, perf. **dēfend-**.

75. The perfect stem in the Fourth Conjugation is usually formed by adding **v** to the present stem. Cf. the formation of the perfect stem of the First Conjugation; as, **amā-, amā + v**; **audī-, audī + v**.

Like **rēxī** inflect the following : —

dūxī (dūcō)	**relīquī (relinquō)**
mīsī (mittō)	**gessī (gerō)**
cucurrī (currō)	**vīcī (vincō)**

76. Learn also the following perfects : —

Pres.	*Perf.*	*Pres.*	*Perf.*
mūniō	**mūnīvī**	**veniō**	**vēnī**
fīniō	**fīnīvī**	**vinciō**	**vinxī**
pūniō	**pūnīvī**	**canō**	**cecinī**

EXERCISE

77. 1. Dūcit; dūcēbat; dūcet; dūxit. 2. Venit; veniēbat; veniet; vēnit. 3. Oppidum relīquērunt; venīmus; vēnimus. 4. Albānōs dux vīcit; gerit; geret. 5. Servōs vinculīs vinxērunt; pūnīvistī. 6. Ad patrem puerī cucurrērunt. 7. Soror prīncipis iūcunda carmina cecinit. 8. Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī. 9. Pāstor gregem in agrōs dūxit. 10. Nova lēgātiō vēnit. 11. Legiōnēs Albānōrum vincunt; vincient; vīcē- runt. 12. Oppidum stellārum lūce vīdērunt.

1. We are singing; we were singing; we shall sing; we have been singing. 2. I am binding; I was binding; I shall bind; I have been binding. 3. I saw the horses in the deep river. 4. He led the army into the kingdom of the Albans. 5. Why did they send the horsemen into the province? 6. Because the chief of the province was waging war. 7. The girls and boys have come into the garden. 8. He left the new road. 9. They have finished the wars. We have fortified the towns. 10. We are coming; we have come; he comes; he has come.

LESSON XVI

The Irregular Verb *Sum,* I am

78. *Present*   *Imperfect*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. sum, *I am.*	súmus, *we are.*	1. éram, *I was.*	erámus, *we were.*
2. es, *you are.*	éstis, *you are.*	2. érās, *you were.*	erátis, *you were.*
3. est, *he is.*	sunt, *they are.*	3. érat, *he was.*	érant, *they were.*

79. Observe that the personal endings are the same as in the regular verb. The verb **sum** has for its stem **es-**. **Sum** is for **esum, sunt** for **esunt,** etc., the initial **e** of the stem being dropped in some of the forms. The **s** becomes **r** between two vowels, as in some noun forms (cf. **64**); thus, **eram** is for **esam, erāmus** for **esāmus,** etc.

THE PLUPERFECT TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS

80. The Pluperfect Tense is formed from the perfect stem. The tense sign of the Pluperfect Tense is **era**, which, with the personal endings **-m, -s, -t, -mus, -tis, -nt,** takes the form —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -eram	-erāmus
2. -erās	-erātis
3. -erat	-erant

It will be seen that these terminations are the same as the Imperfect of the verb **sum**.

The Pluperfect Tense of all verbs of all conjugations has the same tense sign, **era**, and the same personal endings, and is formed from the perfect stem in the same way.
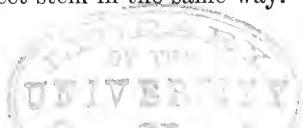
Pluperfect of **Amō**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amāveram, *I had loved.*	amāverāmus, *we had loved.*
2. amāverās, *you had loved.*	amāverātis, *you had loved.*
3. amāverat, *he had loved.*	amāverant, *they had loved.*

Inflect the Pluperfect of **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** in the same way, —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monu-		
rēx-	-eram, -erās, -erat.	-erāmus, -erātis, -erant.
audīv-		

Inflect in like manner the Pluperfect of other verbs that have been given.

EXERCISE

81. 1. Vocō; vocāvī; vocāveram. 2. Tenet; tenēbat; tenēbit; tenuit; tenuerat. 3. Dūcimus; dūcēbāmus; dūcēmus; dūximus; dūxerāmus. 4. Mōverat; vīderātis; habuerant; vīcerat. 5. Via erat longa. 6. Līberī erant in hortō. 7. Comitēs et amīcī multitūdinis erāmus. 8. Sumus cīvitātis mīlitēs. 9. Estis rēgis bonī amīcī. 10. Erant multī mercātōrēs in oppidō. 11. Erāmus; iūsserāmus; erat; habuerat. 12. Erās; laudāverās; erātis; vinxerātis.

1. I was; I had punished; they were; they had sent. 2. He sends; he was sending; he will send; he has sent; he had sent. 3. They had come to the deep river. 4. The priest had come into the high temple. 5. The girls had been singing new songs. 6. The people had seen the foot-soldiers and the horsemen. 7. You are; you were; you

have had; you had had. 8. The new legions had fortified the town. 9. He had called; he had led; he had moved; he had finished. 10. Many men were in the town.

———∘∘⋅∘⋅∘∘———

LESSON XVII

Future Tense of *Sum*

82.

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. érō, *I shall be.*	érimus, *we shall be.*
2. éris, *you will be.*	éritis, *you will be.*
3. érit, *he will be.*	érunt, *they will be.*

THE FUTURE PERFECT TENSE OF REGULAR VERBS

83. The Future Perfect Tense, like the Pluperfect, is formed from the perfect stem. The tense sign of the Future Perfect is **eri**, which, with the personal endings, takes the form —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
-erō	-erimus
-eris	-eritis
-erit	-erint

These terminations, it will be noticed, are the same as the Future of the verb **sum**, except in the 3d plu.

The Future Perfect Tense of all verbs of all conjugations has the same tense sign, **erī**, and the same personal endings, and is formed from the perfect stem in the same way.

Future Perfect of **Amō**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā́verō, *I shall have loved.*	amāvérimus, *we shall have loved.*
2. amā́veris, *you will have loved.*	amāvéritis, *you will have loved.*
3. amā́verit, *he will have loved.*	amā́verint, *they will have loved.*

Inflect the Future Perfect of **moneō, regō,** and **audiō** in the same way, —

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
monu- ⎫		
rēx- ⎬	-erō, -eris, -erit.	-erimus, -eritis, -erint.
audīv- ⎭		

Inflect in like manner the Future Perfect of other verbs that have been given.

84. The synopsis of a verb in any mode consists in giving any required person and number of the verb in each tense of that mode. For example, the synopsis of **amō** in the Indicative mode, 3d pers. sing., is given as follows: —

Pres. **amat,** Impf. **amābat,** Fut. **amābit,** Perf. **amāvit,** Plupf. **amāverat,** Fut. Perf. **amāverit.**

EXERCISE

85. 1. Est; erat; erit; sumus; erāmus; erimus. 2. Gerit; gerēbat; geret; gessit; gesserat; gesserit. 3. Erant; mīserant; erunt; mīserint. 4. Erimus; tenuerimus; erāmus; tenuerāmus. 5. Vēnit; vēnerat; vēnerit. 6. Ubi mīlitēs erunt? 7. Puellae carmina iūcunda ad populōs cecinerint. 8. Fīnīverint novum templum. 9. Legiōnēs in prōvinciam vēnerant. 10. Prīnceps populōs frūmentō prīvāverit.

1. You are; you were; you will be; you had punished;
you will have punished. 2. He will be; he will have had;
he was; he had had. 3. The soldiers of the king will have
conquered the legions of the Albans. 4. The chief had led
the army to the river. 5. They have sent an embassy to
the king. 6. He will have taught; he will have fortified;
he will have called. 7. We had praised; we had con-
quered; we had bound. 8. We shall be; we shall have
finished; we were; we had sent. 9. The rivers will be
deep. 10. The people of the town will have been freed
from much danger.

Give the synopsis of **moveō** in the 3d sing. of the Indica-
tive mode; of **dūcō** in the 3d plu.; of **mūniō** in the 1st plu.;
of **rēgnō** in the 1st sing.

———oo⦂⦂oo———

LESSON XVIII

Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Tenses
of *Sum*

86. These tenses of **sum** are formed from the stem **fu-**,
just the same as the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect
Tenses of regular verbs are formed from the perfect stem.

Fuī, *I have been.*		**Fueram**, *I had been.*	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fúī	fúimus	fúeram	fuerámus
2. fuístī	fuístis	fúerās	fuerátis
3. fúit	fuḗrunt (-re)	fúerat	fúerant

Fuerō, *I shall have been.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. fúerō	fuérimus
2. fúeris	fuéritis
3. fúerit	fúerint

EXERCISE

87. 1. I have been; I had been; I shall have been.
2. He has been; he had been; he will have been. 3. The
boys had been in the river. 4. Soldiers, you have not been
friends of the people. 5. (There) had been many foot-
soldiers in the provinces. 6. The shepherd's herds have
been in the farmer's fields. 7. The legions of the king
had been in the kingdom of the Albans.

Give the synopsis of **sum** in the 3d sing., Indicative mode;
in the 1st plu.; in the 2d sing.; in the 3d plu.; in the
1st sing.

---

88. In the following lessons, let the learner be directed first to
look through the Latin passage assigned, and see whether it con-
tains any new words. The meaning of such words may be learned
from the accompanying vocabulary. Then let him read the passage
through in the Latin, and follow the meaning word by word in
the order given. Finally, let him turn the passage into idiomatic
English.

This work cannot be insisted upon too strongly by the teacher;
for it is only by such a process that the student can be led to an
intelligent appreciation of the Latin sentence, and, through this,
to facility in translation.

It should, however, be borne in mind that one of the chief objects
of these early lessons is to give an easy familiarity with the *forms*

of Latin words. To this end, nothing can take the place of persistent repetition. The declension of nouns and adjectives, and the inflection and synopsis of verbs, both orally and by writing, should be continued until they can be given rapidly and correctly.

———∘⟨∘⟩∘———

LESSON XIX

The Beginnings of Rome

89. Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum relīquit.

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca,* a proper name.	**quī,** rel. pron., *who.*
Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor,* a proper name.	**nātū māior** (literally, *greater by birth*) = *elder.*

NOTES

90. Proca, a legendary king of Alba, — a town about twenty miles southeast of Rome, commonly known as *Alba Longa.*

Albānī, the inhabitants of Alba.

Numitōrem, declined like **pāstor (63)**; but names of persons are commonly used in the singular only.

fīliōs : p. 29, n. 1.

Numitōrī, Dat. after **relīquit.** Compare in English, *He gave the book to him.* **rēgnum** is the direct, and **Numitōrī** the indirect object of **relīquit.** What, then, is the case of the direct, and what the case of the indirect object ?

quī is a rel. pron., Nom. sing. masc., the subject of **erat.** Its antecedent is **Numitōrī.** Observe that **quī** has the same gender and number as its antecedent. Observe also that **Numitōrem** and **Amūlium** mean the same as **fīliōs,** and are in the same case.

91. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rēx Albānōrum Numitōrem fīlium habuit.   2. Amūlius Procae fīlius erat.   3. Numitor Amūlium frātrem habuit.   4. Fīliō rēgnum relinquet.   5. Proca Amūliō rēgnum nōn relīquerat.   6. Amūlī fīlius rēx fuit.   7. Numitor erit rēx Albānōrum.   8. Numitor, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum habēbit.

1. The king of the Albans had a son.   2. Numitor was son of Proca.   3. Proca had a son, Amulius.   4. Numitor and Amulius were sons of the king.   5. They had had sons, Numitor and Amulius.   6. Numitor, son of Proca, had been king of the Albans.   7. Proca, the king, will leave the kingdom to Numitor.   8. He left the kingdom to (his) son Amulius. 9. Numitor was the brother of Amulius.[1] 10. Proca will have left the kingdom to (his) son Numitor, who was the elder.   11. The sons, Numitor and Amulius, left the kingdom to (their) brother.   12. The son who was the elder had the kingdom.

---

[1] Cf. p. 29, n. 1.

LESSON XX

92. Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum relīquit; sed Amūlius, pulsō frātre, rēgnāvit et, ut eum subole prīvāret, Rheam Silviam, ēius fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit.

sed, conj., *but.*	**subole,** *offspring.*
pulsō, Perf. Pass. Part., *having been driven away, banished.*	**prīvāret,** *he might deprive.*
	ēius, pron., *his, of him.*
ut, conj., *in order that, in order to, that.*	**Rheam Silviam,** *Rhea Silvia.*
	Vestae, *of Vesta.*
eum, pron., *him.*	**fēcit,** *he made.*

NOTES

93. pulsō is the Perf. Pass. Part. of **pellō**, in the Abl. sing. masc., to agree with **frātre**. It is inflected like **bonus (41),** —

Nom.	**pulsus**	pulsa	pulsum
Gen.	**pulsī**	pulsae	pulsī, etc.

pulsō frātre, literally, *the brother having been driven away;* better translated, *having driven away his brother.*

eum, Acc. sing. masc. of the demons. pron. **is,** *this,* and the direct object of **prīvāret.** The demons. pron. **is** is often used, as it is here, for the pers. pron. of the 3d pers., *he, she, it.* Notice the ending **-m,** corresponding to the ending of the Acc. sing. of nouns.

subole, Abl. sing. of **subolēs,** limiting **prīvāret.** Rule XX.[1] *In order that he might deprive him of offspring.*

(*a*)	N. V.	súbol**ēs**	(The plu. is rarely found.)
	Gen.	súbol**is**	
	Dat.	súbol**ī**	
	Acc.	súbol**em**	
	Abl.	súbol**e**	

---

[1] See Rules on pp. 277–279.

ēius, Gen. sing. of the demons. pron. **is.**

fīliam : decline, p. 21, n. 3.

Vesta, the goddess of the hearth and hearth fire; daughter of Saturn and Rhea, and sister of Jupiter.

sacerdōtem : decline like **custōs, 55** (*b*), — Nom. **sacerdōs,** Gen. **sacerdōtis,** etc.

fēcit, Perf. Ind. 3d sing., from **faciō,** *to make, do,* a verb of the 3d Conjugation. The perf. stem is **fēc-.** It is inflected regularly, like **rēxī.** Inflect the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf. tenses.

With the Latin, **fīliam sacerdōtem fēcit,** compare the English expressions, *they made Romulus king; they called the man dictator.*

94. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Amūlius frātrem pellet. 2. Amūlius frātrem pepule-rat (**74** (*a*)). 3. Numitōris frāter rēgnābat. 4. Numitōrem subole prīvāverat. 5. Frātrem rēgnō prīvāvit. 6. Populus eum rēgem fēcit. 7. Rheam Silviam sacerdōtem fēcerant. 8. Fīliōs Procae sacerdōtēs fēcērunt.

1. I made; I had made; I shall have made. 2. He deprived him of offspring. 3. Amulius deprived (his) brother of offspring. 4. They had deprived the sons of Numitor of the kingdom. 5. He banished his brother. 6. He made (his) brother king of the Albans. 7. Amulius will deprive Numitor of the kingdom. 8. They made (their) sister priestess of Vesta. 9. The priestess of Vesta was daughter of Numitor. 10. Numitor had a daughter, Rhea Silvia.

LESSON XXI

95. Rheam Silviam, ēius fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit.

> **quae,** rel. pron., *who.*
> **tamen,** adv., *nevertheless.*
> **Rōmulum,** *Romulus.*
>
> **Remum,** *Remus.*
> **ēdidit,** *gave birth to.*

NOTES

96. **quae,** Nom. sing. fem., subject of **ēdidit.** Its antecedent is **fīliam.** Observe that it has the same gender and number as its antecedent. Cf. **quī (90).** It will be noticed that, in both of these instances, the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in *gender* and *number,* but that the case of the relative is not the same as that of the antecedent in either instance; its case depending upon the construction of its clause. This is always true of the relative, and of other pronouns used as substantives; hence the following rule: —

Rule. — *A pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, but its case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands.*

(a)   INFLECTION OF **Quī,** *who*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**quī**	**quae**	**quod**	**quī**	**quae**	**quae**
Gen.	**cūius**[1]	**cūius**	**cūius**	**quōrum**	**quārum**	**quōrum**
Dat.	**cuī**[2]	**cuī**	**cuī**	**quíbus**	**quíbus**	**quíbus**
Acc.	**quem**	**quam**	**quod**	**quōs**	**quās**	**quae**
Voc.	——	——	——	——	——	——
Abl.	**quō**	**quā**	**quō**	**quíbus**	**quíbus**	**quíbus**

---

[1] Pronounced *coó-yoos.*   [2] Pronounced *kwee.*

Observe and point out resemblances between these forms and forms of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Declensions.

Rōmulum and **Remum**: compare the expressions, **Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit**, and **Rheam Silviam, ēius fīliam Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit**, and **Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit**. Observe that **Rōmulum** and **Remum** stand in the same relation to **geminōs** as **Rheam Silviam** stands to **fīliam**, and as **Numitōrem** and **Amūlium** stand to **fīliōs**. Observe also that, in each of these groups, the first named words are in the same case as the second named, and that they refer to the same person or persons. Nouns standing in such relation to other nouns are said to be in apposition.

Rule. — *A noun joined to another noun denoting the same person or thing is in the same case by* APPOSITION.

geminōs, used as a noun in the plu. only. The termination -**ōs** shows what declension? what case? what gender?

ēdidit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **ēdō**. Inflect the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf. tenses.

97. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Quī; quod; cūius; cuī; quibus.   2. Quōs; quae; quōrum; quās.   3. Amīcus, quem in hortō vīdī, fīlius agricolae fuit.   4. Ducēs quī Albānōs vīcērunt ex prōvinciā vēnerant.   5. Rōmulus et Remus geminī fuērunt. 6. Rhea Silvia, quae Vestae sacerdōs erat, fīlia erat Numitōris.   7. Fīliō, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum relīquit.

1. *Give in the sing.:* of whom; whose; to whom; which; of which.   2. *Give in the plu.:* whose; to which; whom; which; of which.   3. Rhea Silvia was the daughter of Numitor.   4. King Proca left the kingdom to his son Numitor. 5. Romulus, the son of Rhea Silvia, banished (his) brother Remus.   6. Romulus, who was the brother of Remus, made

his father king. 7. Numitor, to whom he left the kingdom, was brother of Amulius. 8. The brothers to whom Proca left the kingdom, carried on long wars.

———∞⊱❦⊰∞———

LESSON XXII

98. Eā rē cōgnitā Amūlius ipsam in vincula coniēcit, parvulōs alveō impositōs abiēcit in Tiberim.

eā, *this.*

rē, *thing, fact, circumstance.*

cōgnitā, *having been learned, found out.*

ipsam, *her, herself.*

coniēcit, *threw, cast.*

in vincula, *into bonds,* i.e. *into prison.*

parvulōs, *the little ones, the children.*

alveō, *a skiff.*

impositōs, *having been placed in, put on board.*

abiēcit, *he cast off.*

Tiberim, *the Tiber,* the river that flows past Rome.

NOTES

99. Eā, Abl. sing. fem. of the demons. pron. **is.** It agrees with **rē. Is** is sometimes used as a substantive, and sometimes as an adjective. In the latter case, it is called an adjective pronoun. Cf. **eum** and **ēius** in Lesson XX.

rē is in the Abl. sing. fem., from **rēs,** a noun of the 5th Declension. Nouns of the 5th Declension are formed from stems ending in -ē. The stem of **rēs** is **rē-. Rēs** is thus declined: —

(a)	SINGULAR		PLURAL
N. V.	rēs		rēs
Gen.	réī		rérum
Dat.	réī		rébus
Acc.	rem		rēs
Abl.	rē		rébus

The stem vowel is shortened in the Acc. sing., and also in the Gen. and Dat. sing., when a consonant precedes. This declension contains but two nouns that are declined throughout; viz. **rēs** and **diēs**, *a day*. All nouns of the 5th Declension are feminine except **diēs**, which is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, and **merīdiēs**, *midday*, which is always masculine.

Write out the endings of this declension, as seen in **rēs** above, and decline **diēs**.

cōgnitā, a Perf. Pass. Part. from **cōgnōscō**, in the Abl. sing. fem., to agree with **rē**; literally, *this fact having been learned;* better translated, *having learned this fact*, or *when he learned this fact*, or *upon learning this fact*. Cf. **pulsō frātre (93)**. Inflect **cōgnitā** like **bonus (41)**: **cōgnitus, cōgnita, cōgnitum**.

ipsam is the Acc. sing. fem. of the demons. pron. **ipse**, used here for an emphatic pers. pron., in contrast with **parvulōs**. It is usually intensive, meaning *self;* as, **rēx ipse**, *the king himself;* **fīlia ipsa**, *the daughter herself*.

coniēcit is the Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **cōniciō** (= **con** + **iaciō**. The perfect stem is **coniēc-**; cf. **fēcit (93)**. Inflect **coniēcit** in the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf. Tenses. What is its subject? its object?

parvulōs: decline like **servus**. Why is it in the Acc. case?

alveō: Dat. sing. from **alveus**. What other case has the same ending? It depends upon **impositōs**.

impositōs, Perf. Pass. Part. from **impōnō** (= **in** + **pōnō**), *to place in, to put on board*. It agrees with **parvulōs**. Cf. **pulsō** and **cōgnitā** with respect to form. The Latin, literally translated, reads thus: *he cast off into the Tiber, the children having been put on board a skiff.* We should rather say in English, *he put the children on board a skiff, and cast them off into the Tiber*. The Latin often has a verb and a participle, where in English we should use two verbs.

abiēcit: cf. **coniēcit**, above. What is its subject? its object?

Tiberim, from **Tiberis**, a noun of the 3d Declension, with stem in **-ī**. It is thus declined: —

(b)   N. V.   Tíberis   Acc.   Tíberim
   Gen.   Tíberis   Abl.   Tíberī
         Dat.   Tíberī

Observe especially the Acc. and Abl. in -im and -ī. A few nouns of the 3d Declension are declined like **Tiberis**. What is the gender of **Tiberis** (**34** (a) 2)?

100. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Parvulōs alveō imposuit.[1]   2. Amūlius fīliam in vincula coniēcit.   3. Geminōs in Tiberim abiēcit.   4. Līberōs in flūmen abiēcerat.   5. Amūlius eam rem cōgnōscit. 6. Fīliam ipsam alveō imposuerant.   7. Alveus in rīpā Tiberis erat.

1. The children had been in a skiff.   2. They had cast the child off into the Tiber.   3. Amulius had thrown (his) brother into prison.   4. When they had learned this fact [this fact having been learned], they threw the twins into prison.   5. The king himself was reigning.   6. Having learned this fact, he made (his) daughter priestess of Vesta.   7. The brother, whom I saw in the skiff, they made leader.   8. Where are the foot-soldiers who were hastening into the province?   9. The boys have been in the river Tiber.

---

[1] The perfect stem. of **impōnō** is **imposu-**.
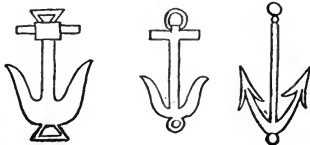
LESSON XXIII

101. Parvulōs alveō impositōs abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus; sed relābente flūmine eōs aqua in siccō relīquit.

tunc, *then, at that time.*	**relābente,** *flowing back, receding.*
forte, *by chance, as it happened.*	**eōs,** *them.*
super, *beyond, above.*	**siccō,** *dry land.*
erat effūsus, *had been poured out.*	

NOTES

102. quī: decline (**96** (*a*)). What is its gender and number, and why?

super, a preposition governing the Acc., except when it means *about, concerning;* it then governs the Abl.

rīpās: in what declension? gender? case? construction?

erat effūsus, Plupf. Ind. Pass., from **effundō,** = **ex** + **fundō;** **fundō,** *to pour,* and the prep. **ex,** *out.* Hence **effundō** = *to pour out.* **erat effūsus,** *had been poured out.* **super rīpās erat effūsus,** *had been poured out beyond the banks* = *had overflowed its banks.*

relābente, Pres. Act. Part., Abl. sing., agreeing with **flūmine,** just like an adj. Cf. Rule IV. for the adjective. Translate, *the river receding.*

eōs, demons. pron., Acc. plu. masc., from **is.** Cf. **eum** and **ēius,** Lesson XX., and **eā,** Lesson XXII. **Is** is thus declined:—

(*a*)	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	is	ea	id	íī (éī)	éae	éa
Gen.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	éī	éī	éī	íīs, éīs	íīs, éīs	íīs, éīs
Acc.	éum	éam	id	éōs	éās	éa
Abl.	éō	éā	éō	íīs, éīs	íīs, éīs	íīs, éīs

Observe and point out the resemblances between these endings and those of the 1st and 2d Declensions.

is is a weak demonstrative, meaning *this* or *that*. It is often used for the pers. pron. of the 3d pers., as we have already seen.

aqua: what case? How does the Abl. sing. of the 1st Declension differ from the Nom. sing.?

siccō, from **siccum**. Decline like **bellum**. What is the difference between **in** with the Abl. and **in** with the Acc.?

103. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Proca iīs rēgnum relīquit. 2. Eōs in oppidum mīsit. 3. Frātrēs eōrum in prōvinciā fuerant. 4. In eam prōvinciam māgnum āgmen vēnerat. 5. Id quod dīxī ad populum est iūcundum. 6. Puellae quās in hortō vīdī ex oppidō vēnērunt. 7. Is fluvius; ea rēs; id flūmen; eae mātrēs; eōrum puerōrum; eārum fīliārum. 8. Eae rēs ad rēgis amīcōs erunt iūcundae. 9. Bonī sunt iī quī populum māgnō perīculō līberant.

1. Amulius had left them in the Tiber. 2. They had left the twins on dry land. 3. He will have left; you had left. 4. The son of the king had made (his) daughter priestess. 5. The water will leave them on dry land. 6. They will have cast off the children into the Tiber. 7. I shall have had; we shall have reigned. 8. The water receding, we left the banks of the river. 9. He; she; him; her; it; them; their; his; her; they. 10. This thing; of this thing; of these things; of these children.

LESSON XXIV

Review

104. *Read and translate:* —

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs
habuit. Numitōrī, quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum relīquit;
sed Amūlius, pulsō frātre, rēgnāvit et, ut eum subole prī-
vāret, Rheam Silviam, ēius fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit,
quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Eā rē
cōgnitā Amūlius ipsam in vincula coniēcit, parvulōs alveō
impositōs abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpas erat
effūsus; sed relābente flūmine eōs aqua in siccō relīquit.

NOTES

105. Write the Acc. sing. of **rēx, fīlius, fīlia, rēs.** In what
respects are their endings alike? Write the Acc. plu. of the same.
How do the endings of these compare? Compare also the endings
of the Gen. plu. of the same.

Write the Gen. and Voc. sing. of **fīlius** and **Amūlius.** Give
the rule for their formation.

Compare the endings of the Gen. sing. of **is** and of **quī**; the
Gen. plu.

What is the direct object of **habuit**? of **relīquit** (both occur-
rences)? of **prīvāret**? of **fēcit**? of **ēdidit**? of **coniēcit**? of **abiēcit**?

Construction of **Numitōrem** and **Amūlium**? of **Rōmulum** and
Remum? of **Rheam Silviam**? Give the rule.

What determines the number and gender of **quī** (both occur-
rences)? of **quae**? Give the rule.

Why is **subole** in the Abl.?

To whom do **eum, ēius, ipsam, eōs,** refer?

Why are **vincula** and **Tiberim** Acc., and **siccō** Abl.?

Give the Latin for: —

he has	he leaves	he reigns
he was having	he was leaving	he was reigning
he will have	he will leave	he will reign
he has had	he has left	he has reigned
he had had	he had left	he had reigned
he will have had	he will have left	he will have reigned
he is	they are	we leave
he was	they were	we were leaving
he will be	they will be	we shall leave
he has been	they have been	we have left
he had been	they had been	we had left
he will have been	they will have been	we shall have left

Decline **frāter, subolēs, sacerdōtem, flūmine, is,** and **quī.**

Make a list of the masc. nouns of the 3d Declension in the above passage. By what rule are they masculine? What one is neuter? Rule. What one is feminine? Rule. What one is sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine?

Decline **rē.** What is the gender of nouns of the 5th Declension?

Give English derivatives from the following: **rēx, fīlius, relinquō, frāter, prīvō, impositōs, aqua.**

Decline together **ea rēs; id flūmen; is frāter.**

Give the synopsis of **relinquō** in the 3d plu.; of **habeō** in the 1st plu.; of **sum** in the 1st sing.

LESSON XXV

106. Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitūdinēs erant. Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est, ad vāgītum accurrit.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, desolate.* Cf. Eng. *waste.*

tum, adv., *then.* Cf. **tunc,** Lesson XXIII.

locus, -ī, m., *place.*

sōlitūdō, -inis, f., *wilderness.*

lupa, -ae, f., *a she-wolf.*

ut, adv., *as.*

fāma, -ae, f., *report, tradition.*

trāditum est, *it is handed down.*

vāgītum, *crying.*

accurrit, *ran to.*

NOTES

107. Vāstae: decline like **bonus.** In what different places[1] may **vāstae** be found? With what word in this sentence must it agree? Why may it not be taken with **locīs**?

iīs: decline in the plural.

locīs is from **locus, -ī,** masculine in the sing., and usually neuter in the plural. Decline.

fāmā, Abl. of means, limiting **trāditum est.** Rule XIX.

trāditum est, Perf. Ind. Pass. 3d sing., from **trādō. ut fāmā trāditum est,** literally, *as it has been handed down by tradition,* = *as the tradition is.*

vāgītum, Acc. sing. of the 4th Decl.; thus declined: —

(a)   **Vāgītus** (st. **vāgītu-**), m., *a crying.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	vāgítus	vāgítūs
Gen.	vāgítūs	vāgítuum
Dat.	vāgítuī	vāgítibus
Acc.	vāgítum	vāgítūs
Abl.	vāgítū	vāgítibus

---

[1] Case, number, gender.

In the same way decline **saltus**, *a woodland;* **vultus**, *the counte-nance;* **exercitus**, *an army;* **manus**, *the hand.*

The stem of nouns of the 4th Declension ends in -**u**, which becomes -**i** before -**bus** in the Dat. and Abl. plu. A few nouns retain the **u** in these cases also. The Nom. ends in -**us** or -**ū**. Those in -**us** are generally masculine, except a few like **manus**, which are feminine. Those in -**ū** are neuter, and are indeclinable in the sing., except that they sometimes have -**ūs** in the Gen. The other cases of the sing. are the same as the stem with final **u** length-ened. In the plu. the Nom., Acc., and Voc. are formed by adding **a** to the stem. The other cases are formed like those of the mas-culines. As there are but four neuters, and they are but seldom used, they may be learned as they occur.

accurrit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from **accurrō**.

Notice that the prep. **ad** is repeated with **vāgītum**, although **accurrit** is itself compounded of **ad** and **currō**. Cf. English *adhere to an opinion; adjacent to the town.*

108. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Pāstor vāgītum parvulōrum audīvit.   2. Proca, rēx, exercitum Albānōrum dūxit.   3. Frātrēs saltūs peragrābant. 4. Virgō vīdit id quod Amūlius in manū habuit.   5. Puerī multōs flōrēs in manibus gerēbant.   6. Iūcundum amīcī vul-tum vidēbat.   7. Erat lupa in iīs locīs.   8. Parvulī ad lupam accurrērunt.

1. The she-wolf had heard the crying of the children. 2. She ran to them.   3. They were in a desolate wilder-ness.[1]   4. Amulius, son of the king, had left them in that place.   5. The water had left them on dry land.   6. The Tiber, as the tradition is, had at-that-time overflowed its

---

[1] Use the plural.

banks. 7. The army of the king moved into the province. 8. The slave had a chain in his hands. 9. Romulus and Remus wandered-over the woodlands. 10. The countenance of the king's daughter was pleasant.

Decline together **longa manus ; māgnus exercitus**.

LESSON XXVI

109. Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est, ad vāgītum accurrit, īnfantēs linguā lambit, ūbera eōrum ōrī admōvit mātremque sē gessit.
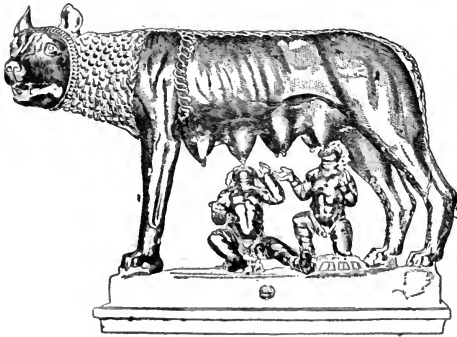
BRONZE WOLF (*Rome*)

īnfantēs, *infants, babes.*
lingua, -ae, f., *tongue.*
lambit, *she licked.*
ūber, -eris, n., *udder, breast.*

ōs, ōris, n., *the mouth, face.*
admoveō, *to move to* or *towards.*
-que, conj., *and.*
sē, *herself.*

NOTES

110. **īnfantēs** is from **īnfāns**, an adjective used here as a noun. As an adjective it means *not speaking, speechless;* and as very young children have not the power of speech, **īnfāns** came to mean an *infant* or *babe.* **īnfantēs**, used as a noun, is either masculine or feminine. As an adjective of the 3d Declension it is thus declined:—

(a)	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	ínfāns	ínfāns	īnfántēs	īnfántia
Gen.	infántis	infántis	īnfántium (-um)	īnfántium (-um)
Dat.	infántī	infántī	īnfántibus	īnfántibus
Acc.	infántem	ínfāns	īnfántēs (-īs)	īnfántia
Abl.	infánte (-ī)	infánte (-ī)	īnfántibus	īnfántibus

In the same way decline **relābente**, Pres. Part. from **relābēns**, Lesson XXIII. All Pres. Act. Participles are declined in this way. They belong to the **i** stems of the 3d Declension **(53)**. The stem ends in **-ntī**, but the **i** of the stem disappears in some of the forms. All of these have **-e** or **-ī** in the Abl. sing.; **-ium** in the Gen. plu.; **-ēs** or **-īs** in the Acc. plu. masc. and fem.; and **-ia** in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. plu. of the neuter.

Decline

<div>

amāns, Pres. Part. of amō;

regēns, " " regō;

audiēns, " " audiō.

</div>

linguā: Rule XIX.

lambit, Perf. of **lambō**. The perfect stem is the same as the verb stem **(74 (c))**.

ūber, -eris, a liquid noun of the 3d Declension. Plu. is **ūbera, ūberum,** etc. Decline in full.

eōrum limits **ōrī**. To whom does **eōrum** refer? Decline it in full.

ōrī, a neut. noun of the 3d Declension. Declined **ōs, ōris, ōrī,** etc. The Gen. plu. is wanting. It depends upon the prep. **ad** in **admōvit**. Cf. **alveō impositōs**, Lesson XXII. **ūbera . . . admōvit**, *moved her udders to their mouth.*

Rule. — *Many verbs compounded with* **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** *and* **de** *are followed by the Dative.*

admōvit = ad + moveō. Give the synopsis in the 3d sing.

mātrem: decline like **pater** (**63**). In apposition with **sē.** Rule VI.

-que is an enclitic; *i.e.* a word attached to another word, as **-que** is here attached to **mātrem.** An enclitic always precedes in meaning the word to which it is attached, and draws the accent forward to the syllable immediately before it, — **mā-trém-que.**

sē is a reflexive pronoun of the 3d person. It regularly refers to the subject; here to **lupa.** It is declined as follows, the forms being same for both numbers and all genders: —

(*b*)

N. V.	——
Gen.	**súī**
Dat.	**síbi**
Acc. Abl.	**sē** *or* **sḗsē**

gessit: give the synopsis in the 3d plu.

sē gessit, *bore herself as a mother* = *conducted herself as a mother.*

(*c*) **īnfāns,** *a child considered as one unable to speak.*
parvulus, literally, *a little one;* from **parvus,** *small.*

111. *Translate ai sight:* —

1. Lupa īnfantem linguā lambit.   2. Lupa ad īnfantēs accurrit.   3. Īnfantēs ad lupam accurrērunt.   4. Amīcus patrem sē gessit.   5. Albānī amīcōs sē gessērunt.   6. Parvulī ōrī aquam admōvērunt.   7. Vir aquam eōrum ōrī admōvit.

1. The she-wolf licks the infants with (her) tongue. 2. The she-wolf had run to the crying of the infants. 3. The daughter conducts herself as a mother.   4. The

brother of the king had conducted himself as a father.
5. Amulius conducted himself as a friend. 6. They will
have conducted themselves as good soldiers. 7. The shep-
herd had moved the water to their mouth. 8. They ran up
to the infants. 9. He ran up to them.

———oo°o°oo———

LESSON XXVII

112. Cum lupa saepius ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs
reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs
tulit in casam.

cum, conj., *when.*

saepius, adv., *oftener, more fre-
quently.*

velutī, adv., *just as, as if.*

catulus, -ī, m., *a whelp.*

reverterētur, *returned.*

regius, -a, -um, adj., *of the king
royal.*

animadversā, *having been ob-
served, noticed.*

tulit, *bore, carried.*

NOTES

113. saepius, the comparative of the adv. **saepe.** It may be
translated here, *repeatedly.*

reverterētur is from **revertor**, a verb that has a passive form
and an active meaning. Such verbs are called *Deponent*, because
they have laid aside the active form and the passive meaning.

pāstor rēgius, *a shepherd of the king.* An adjective is sometimes
used with the meaning of the Gen. of the noun from which it is
derived. **rēgius** is derived from **rēx**, and is here equivalent to
rēgis. Decline **pāstor rēgius** together. Cf. Rule VI.

rē animadversā, *having noticed the circumstance.* What would
be the literal meaning? Cf. **eā rē cōgnitā** and **pulsō frātre**, above.

To whom does **eōs** refer?   What declension has this ending for the Acc. plu. masc.?

tulit is the Perf. 3d sing. of the irregular verb **ferō**.   Inflect the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf.

114. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Lupa saepius ad parvulōs veniēbat.   2. Pāstor rēgius eōs in Faustulī casam tulit.   3. Eā rē animadversā, ad parvulōs accurrit.   4. Exercitus rēgius in prōvinciā bellum gerēbat.   5. Īnfantēs in aquam tulerant.   6. Cum lupa reverterētur, pāstor eōs in casam tulerat.   7. Faustulus, pāstor bonus, parvulōs in cōniugis casam tulit.

1. Faustulus, the shepherd of the king, saw them in the river.   2. Having noticed this circumstance, he bore them into the hut.   3. He ran to them as if to (his) children. 4. Faustulus was a shepherd of the king.   5. He was on the bank of the Tiber.   6. He saw the twins in a skiff. 7. The river receding, the water had left them on dry land. 8. The she-wolf ran up to them.   9. When the she-wolf returned repeatedly to the children, the shepherd bore them into the hut.

LESSON XXVIII

115. Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae cōniugī dedit ēducandōs. Adultī deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrēs auxēre.

Acca Lārentia, name of the wife of Faustulus.
dedit, *gave.*
ēducandōs, *to be brought up.*
adultus, -a, -um, adj., *grown up, matured.* Cf. Eng. *adult.*
deinde, adv., *then, next.*

hī, *these, they.*
inter, prep., *among, between.*
prīmō, adv., *at first, in the first place.*
lūdicrīs, adj., *playful, sportive.*
certāmen, -inis, n., *a contest.*
vīrēs, *strength, force.*

NOTES

116. Accae Lārentiae, Dat. of Indirect Object, after **dedit.** Cf. **Numitōrī** (90).

Rule. — *The* INDIRECT OBJECT *of an action is in the Dative case;* as, —

**Numitōrī rēgnum relīquit,** *he left the kingdom to Numitor.*
Accae Lārentiae eōs dedit, *he gave them to Acca Larentia.*

dedit, Perf. Ind. Act. of **dō,** *to give.* Perf. formed by reduplication. Cf. **74** (*a*). The direct object of **dedit** is **eōs.** Inflect **dedit** in the Perf., Plupf., and Fut. Perf.

ēducandōs, a verbal adj. from **ēducō,** denoting purpose, *to be brought up.* Usually called a *Gerundive.* It agrees with **eōs,** and is declined like **bonus.**

Adultī, an adj. agreeing with **hī,** the subject of **auxēre.** Decline like **bonus.**

hī is a demons. pron., Nom. plu. masc., from **hīc.** It is thus declined : —
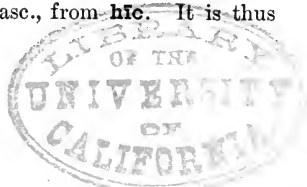
(a)   SINGULAR   PLURAL

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hīc	haec	hōc	hī	hae	haec
Gen.	hūius	hūius	hūius	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	huīc[1]	huīc	huīc	hīs	hīs	hīs
Acc.	hunc	hanc	hōc	hōs	hās	haec
Abl.	hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

hīc is used of that which is thought of as near the speaker; hence it is called the demonstrative pronoun of the 1st person. hī refers here to the two children who are the subject of the discourse. Compare the endings of is, quī, and hīc, noticing especially those of the Gen. sing. Point out resemblances between the endings of these pronouns and of nouns of the 1st, 2d, and 3d Declensions.

inter is a prep. used only with the Acc.

lūdicrīs is an adj. in the Abl. plu., to agree with certāminibus.

certāminibus, Abl. plu., from certāmen; declined like flūmen (63). It limits auxēre. Rule XIX.

vīrēs, a fem. noun of the Third Declension, from vīs. It belongs to the i stems, and is declined irregularly; thus, —

(b)   SINGULAR   PLURAL

	Singular	Plural
N. V.	vīs	vīrēs
Gen.	vīs[2]	vīrium
Dat.	vī	vīribus
Acc.	vim	vīrēs
Abl.	vī	vīribus

It is the direct object of auxēre.

auxēre, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d plu., from augeō (71).

117. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Hī inter pāstōrēs rēgiōs erant.   2. Geminī, Rōmulus et Remus, vīrēs auxērunt.   3. Deinde vīrēs lūdicrīs certāminibus augēbant.   4. Parvulōs huīc dedērunt ēducandōs.

---

[1] Pronounced *hweek*.   [2] The Gen. and Dat. sing. are rare.

5. Īnfantēs in casam hōrum tulerant.   6. Hīs rēgnum relīque-
rant.   7. Nōn vīribus corporum māgnum bellum gessērunt.
8. In hōc templō est sacerdōs.   9. Eōrum; hōrum; quōrum.

1. At first these were increasing (their) strength by sport-
ive contests.   2. He gave the infants to the shepherds of
the king.   3. The friends of these had been among the
Albans.   4. The shepherd of the king conducted himself
as a father.   5. Faustulus gave the infant to (his) wife.
6. The child whom Amulius left in the skiff was the son
of Rhea Silvia.   7. Great is the strength of the state.
8. The boy who came among the shepherds was Romulus,
brother of Remus.   9. This boy whom the shepherds
brought up conducted himself as a king.   10. Of these;
to or for these; of whom (*sing. and plu*).   11. They gave
him water.

———o°o°o°o———

LESSON XXIX

118. Adultī deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs cer-
tāminibus vīrēs auxēre, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et
latrōnēs ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.

vēnandō, *in hunting.*   **rapīna,-ae,** f.,*plundering,robbery.*
saltus, -ūs, m., *woodland, forest.*   **pecus, -oris,** n., *cattle, herd.*
latrō, -nis, m., *a robber.*   **arcēre,** *to keep away, prevent*
ā, prep., *from, by.*   **coepērunt,** *they began.*

NOTES

119. **deinde** introduces a second thought, following that intro-
duced by **prīmō.** *In the first place* they increased their strength,
then they began, etc.

vēnandō, a verbal noun, usually called a *Gerund*, corresponding to the English verbal noun in *-ing*. The Gerund is in the neuter gender, and is used only in the oblique cases of the singular. **vēnandō** is in the Abl., modifying **peragrāre**. Inflect it.

saltūs is a noun of the Fourth Declension, and is declined like **vāgītus (107 (a))**. It is in the Acc. plu., the direct object of **peragrāre**.

peragrāre is in the Pres. Inf. Act., depending on **coepērunt**.

(*a*) The Pres. Inf. Act. of regular verbs is formed by adding **-re** to the pres. stem; thus, **amā-, amāre; monē-, monēre; rege-, regere; audī-, audīre**. The Pres. Inf. shows to what conjugation any verb belongs; the endings being as follows: —

For the First Conjugation, **-āre**.
" Second " **-ēre**.
" Third " **-ere**.
" Fourth " **-īre**.

latrōnēs, Acc. plu., declined like **legiō (63)**.

ā is always followed by the Ablative. It takes the form **ab** before words beginning with a vowel or **h**, and is written **ā** usually before consonants.

pecorum: cf. **corpus (63)**.

arcēre, same construction as **peragrāre**. In what conjugation does this form of the Infinitive show **arcēre** to be?

coepērunt is in the Perf. Ind. Act. 3d plu., from **coepī**. It is a *defective verb*, the forms from the pres. stem not being used. The forms from the perf. stem are regular, — **coepī, coeperam, coeperō**.

120. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Puerī vēnandō saltūs peragrābant — peragrāverant. 2. Hī adultī ā rapīnā latrōnēs arcent. 3. Lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrēs augēre coepērunt. 4. Silvam peragrāre coeperat. 5. Parvulōs ēducāre coeperāmus. 6. Pāstōrēs latrōnem ā pecoribus arcēbant. 7. Prīnceps ā prōvinciā equitēs arcēbat.

1. In hunting, Romulus will wander through the woodlands.   2. They had begun to increase (their) strength by hunting.   3. He began to keep away the shepherds from the hut.   4. At first they were wandering through the woods, then they were keeping the robbers away from plundering the herds.   5. The brother who was the elder began to reign.   6. The she-wolf began to run to the crying of the infants.   7. I saw these children.   8. These girls will sing.

———oo⁘o⁘oo———

LESSON XXX

Review

121. *Read and translate:* —

Vāstae tum in iīs locīs sōlitūdinēs erant.   Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est, ad vāgītum accurrit, īnfantēs linguā lambit, ūbera eōrum ōrī admōvit mātremque sē gessit.   Cum lupa saepius ad parvulōs velutī ad catulōs reverterētur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rē animadversā eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae cōniugī dedit ēducandōs.   Adultī deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs certāminibus vīrēs auxēre, deinde vēnandō saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.

NOTES

122. What three words have we had meaning *then?*   Make lists of nouns, in the above passage, of the Third Declension, classify them according to gender, and give the rule for the gender of each.

What two nouns of the Fourth Declension? Rule for gender in the Fourth Declension?

Give the Gen. and Dat. sing. and plu. of **is** and **hīc**.

What word has the same forms in the singular and plural?

How can you tell whether **sē** in **sē gessit** is singular or plural?

The endings of **parvulōs, catulōs, eōs, ēducandōs,** show what declension, case, number, gender? What part of speech is **rēgius**? What is it equivalent to in the expression, **pāstor rēgius**?

Give the Ablative plural of **rē animadversā.**

Give the synopsis in the Ind. 3d sing. of **erant, admōvit, gessit, auxēre.**

Give the Accusative and Ablative singular of **vīrēs.**

To whom does each of the following refer: **eōrum, sē, eōs, hī**? Give the gender and number of each, and the rule.

What case follows **admōvit,** and why? What case follows **dedit,** and why?

Observe the English derivatives: —

impose	*aquarium*	*tradition*
effusive	*local*	*lingual*
aquatic	*solitude*	*revert*

EXERCISE

123. Romulus and Remus were twins. Their mother was Rhea Silvia, whom Amulius made priestess of Vesta. Amulius cast the children into the Tiber. As it happened, the river at that time had overflowed its banks. A she-wolf ran to them, and acted like a mother. Faustulus, a shepherd of the king, bore the little ones to (his) wife. She brought them up in (her) hut. At first they increased (their) strength by playful contests, and next they wandered through the woodlands in hunting. They began to drive away the robbers from the herds.

LESSON XXXI

Passive Voice

124. The Pres. Ind. Pass. of **amō** is thus inflected: —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. ámor,[1] *I am loved.*	amámur, *we are loved.*
2. amáris *or* -re, *you are loved.*	amáminī, *you are loved.*
3. amátur, *he, she,* or *it is loved.*	amántur, *they are loved.*

It will be seen that these forms are made up of the stem **amā-**, together with certain endings joined to it.

These endings used in the inflection of the verb in the Passive voice are as follows: —

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. -r *or* -or	-mur
2. -ris *or* -re	-minī
3. -tur	-ntur

Compare these endings with the personal endings of the Active voice (**12**). The letter **r** is so commonly found in these endings that it may properly be called the Passive Sign.

By substituting these endings for the endings of the Active voice in the Present, Imperfect, and Future Tenses, we have the Passive forms for those tenses.

Present Tense

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. móneor	monémur	1. régor	régimur
2. monéris (-re)	monéminī	2. régeris	regíminī
3. monétur	monéntur	3. régitur	regúntur

---

[1] For **amaor.**

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. aúdior	audímur
2. audíris (-re)	audíminī
3. audítur	audiúntur

EXERCISE

125. 1. Laudantur; laudātur; laudāmur; laudāmus. 2. Movēris; movēminī; movētur; moventur. 3. Dūcitur; dūcuntur; mitteris; mittor. 4. Fīnītur; fīniuntur; pūnīris; pūnīmur. 5. Rēgnum Numitōrī relinquitur. 6. Numitor subole prīvātur. 7. In siccō frātrēs relinquuntur. 8. Perīculō bellī līberāmur.

1. He sees; he is seen; he hears; he is heard. 2. We call; we are called; we lead; we are led. 3. You send; you are sent; you teach; you are taught. 4. The twins are left in the skiff. 5. The strength of the boys is increased. 6. The army is led into the province. 7. Amulius is sent into the town. 8. We are left in the hut of the shepherd.

LESSON XXXII

Passive Voice — *Continued*

126. (*a*)   *Imperfect Tense*

SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amābar, *I was loved.*	amābāmur, *we are loved.*
2. amābāris (-re), *you were loved.*	amābāminī, *you are loved.*
3. amābātur, *he, etc., was loved.*	amābántur, *they are loved.*

Inflect, in the same way, the Imperfect of **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō**, —

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
monēbā- regēbā- audiēbā-	-r, -ris (-re), -tur.		-mur, -minī, -ntur.

The **a** in the tense sign **ba** is short in the 1st sing. and the 3d plu., as in **amābar** and **amābantur**. Observe that these forms are made up of the present stem, the tense sign, and the personal endings of the Passive Voice; as **monē + bā + tur**.

(*b*)   *Future Tense*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
amāb- monēb-	-or, -eris (-re), -itur.		-imur, -iminī, -untur.
reg- audi-	-ar, -ēris (-re), -ētur.		-ēmur, -ēminī, -entur.

Write out these forms in full, and compare them with the corresponding forms of the Active voice. For the tense sign of the Future, cf. **19.**

EXERCISE

127. 1. Subole prīvātur — prīvābātur — prīvābitur.
2. Tenentur; tenēbātur; tenēbitur. 3. Vocantur; amā-
bantur; vidēbantur. 4. In siccō relinquentur. 5. Līberā-
bimur; movētur; movēbitur. 6. Monēbit; monēbitur;
monēbat; monēbātur. 7. Bellum gerēbātur. 8. Rēgnum
Numitōrī relinquēbātur. 9. Pūniunt; pūniuntur; pūniē-
bant; pūniēbantur. 10. Mittō; mittor; mittēbam; mit-
tēbar; mittam; mittar. 11. Laudāris; movēris; dūceris;
vincīris.

1. You will be left in the water. 2. The twins were left
in a skiff. 3. He is seen; it is pointed out; they are
moved. 4. They will be moved; they will be sent; they
will be called. 5. They hear; they are heard; they lead;
they are lead. 6. We were ordering; we were ordered; he
is heard; it is finished. 7. The brother will be banished.
8. He saw; he was seen; he will send; he will be sent.
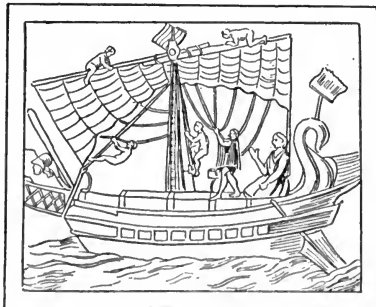
LESSON XXXIII

Participles

128. The Latin verb has *four* participles, — the Present and Future of the Active voice, and the Perfect and Gerundive, or Future, of the Passive voice. For example: —

ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres. am**ān**s, *loving*.	Perf. amā**tus**, *loved* or *having been loved*.
Fut. amā**tūrus**, *being about to love*.	Fut. (Gerundive) ama**ndus**, *to be loved*.
Pres. mon**ēns**	Perf. moni**tus**
Fut. moni**tūrus**	Fut. (Gerundive) mone**ndus**
Pres. reg**ēns**	Perf. rēc**tus**
Fut. rēc**tūrus**	Fut. (Gerundive) rege**ndus**
Pres. audi**ēns**	Perf. audī**tus**
Fut. audī**tūrus**	Fut. (Gerundive) audie**ndus**

Give the Participles of **vocō, mittō,** and **pūniō.**

It will be seen that the Present Participle is formed from the present stem by adding **-ns**; in the Fourth Conjugation, **-ēns**.

The Gerundive is also formed from the present stem by adding **-ndus**; in the Fourth Conjugation, **-endus**.

The Future Active and the Perfect Passive Participles are formed from the supine stem. This stem is formed by adding **t** (sometimes **s**) to the verb stem. It will be noticed that, in the Second Conjugation, the final **e** of the verb stem is changed to **i** before **t** in the supine stem; also that consonant changes sometimes take place in forming the supine

stem of the Third Conjugation, as in **rēct-**, where **g** becomes **c** before **t**; and **gest-**, where **r** becomes **s** before **t**. These changes may best be learned from observation.[1]

The Present Participle is declined like **īnfāns** (**110** (*a*)). The Future Active, Perfect Passive, and Gerundive are declined like **bonus**.

The supine stem is so called because the Supine — a part of the verb but little used — is formed from it. The Supine corresponds in form to the neut. sing. of the Perfect Passive Participle. Thus, **amātum, monitum, rēctum, audītum** are the Supines of **amō, moneō, regō**, and **audiō** respectively.

129. The Present Indicative, Present Infinitive, Perfect Indicative, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the verb, because they show the three stems of the verb and also the conjugation to which the verb belongs.

				Pres. Ind.	*Pres. Inf.*	*Perf. Ind.*	*Supine*
The prin. parts of	**amō**	are	ámō	amā́re	amā́vī	amā́tum
"	"	"	**moneō**	"	móneō	monḗre	mónuī	mónitum
"	"	"	**regō**	"	régō	régere	rḗxī	rḗctum
"	"	"	**audiō**	"	aúdiō	audī́re	audī́vī	audī́tum

The conjugation to which the verb belongs may conveniently be known by observing the vowel before **-re** of the Infinitive.

130. *Read and translate:* —

Quā rē cum iīs īnsidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit.

---

[1] The final **t** of the supine stem is changed to **s** after **t, d, lg, rg, ll, rr**, and in a few other cases, the preceding letter being then assimilated or omitted.

quā rē (sometimes written as
one word, quārē), *on account
of which thing, wherefore.*
īnsidiātī essent, *had lain in am-
bush, had plotted against.*

captus est, *was taken captive,
was captured.*
dēfendō, -ere, -ī, dēfēnsum, *to
defend.*

NOTES

131. Quā rē, Abl. of cause, or reason, modifying dēfendit.

cum : cf. cum in Lesson XXVII.

iīs, Dat., depending upon īnsidiātī essent. Rule X. Decline
iīs in the plu.

īnsidiātī essent, Plupf. Subj., from īnsidior, a deponent verb.
Cf. reverterētur, Lesson XXVII. Compounded with the prepo-
sition in.

captus est, Perf. Ind. Pass. 3d sing., from capiō.

vī : decline. Abl., modifying dēfendit : *defended himself with
force.* Rule XIX.

The conjunction et may be supplied before Rōmulus.

sē : decline (110 (*b*)). To whom does sē refer?

dēfendit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing., from dēfendō, dēfendere,
dēfendī, dēfēnsum. Write the participles of dēfendō. Give the
synopsis in the 3d sing. of the Ind. Act. and the Ind. Pass. as far
as it has been learned.

132. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Rōmulus vī Remum dēfendet. 2. Rōmulus sē dēfen-
dere coepit. 3. Frātrēs sē dēfendērunt. 4. Cum eī īnsidi-
ātī essent latrōnēs, ad casam Faustulī cucurrit. 5. Frātrēs,
quī sē dēfendēbant, in oppidum properāvērunt. 6. Hī sē
vī dēfenderant.

1. Wherefore Remus was taken captive. 2. Romulus will
be defended. 3. Remus defended Romulus by force. 4. The
shepherds began to defend themselves. 5. These will de-

fend themselves.   6. When the robbers had lain in wait
for Remus, Romulus defended himself.   7. We began to
defend the sons of the priestess.   8. Amulius, to whom
the kingdom was left, threw Rhea Silvia into prison.
9. Having; leading; having been led; having been or-
dered; being about to lead; being about to punish.

———oo;o;oo———

LESSON XXXIV

133. Tum Faustulus, necessitāte compulsus, indicāvit
Rōmulō quis esset eōrum avus, quae māter.   Rōmulus
statim, armātīs pāstōribus, Albam properāvit.

necessitās, -tātis, f., *necessity.*
compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum,
   to compel, force.
quis, *who?*
esset, *was.*

avus, -ī, m., *grandfather.*
statim, adv., *forthwith, straight-*
   way.
armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to arm.*

NOTES

134. necessitāte: decline like **aetās (55 (*b*)).**   For con-
struction, cf. Rule XIX.

compulsus, Perf. Pass. Part., from **compellō,** agreeing with
Faustulus.   Compounded of **con** and **pellō.**   Note that the
reduplication of the Perfect of the simple verb is omitted in the
compound (**74 (*a*)).**

Rōmulō: Rule IX.

quis is an interrogative pronoun.   It is declined like the rela-
tive **quī,** except that when used as a substantive it has **quis** in
the Nom. masc. sing., and **quid** in the Nom. and Acc. neut. sing.
Write out the declension of **quis** in full.

esset, Impf. Subj. 3d sing. of **sum.**

quae is the Nom. fem. sing. of **quis. Quis** and **quae** agree in number and gender respectively with **avus** and **māter.** If the predicate noun were neut. plu., for example, the interrogative would be neut. plu. Supply **esset** after **quae.**

avus and **māter** are predicate nouns after **esset.** Their case follows the

Rule. — *A predicate noun after a neuter or passive verb takes the same case as the subject;* for example, —

> **Rēx est populī amīcus,** *the king is a friend of the people.*
> **Incolae appellantur Gallī,** *the inhabitants are called Gauls.*

armātīs, a Perf. Pass. Part. in the Ablative Absolute with **pā-stōribus.** Literally, *the shepherds having been armed;* better, *having armed the shepherds.* This construction is called the *Ablative Absolute.* It corresponds to the independent construction in English; as, *the war being finished, the general returned home.* But the Ablative Absolute construction is much more common in Latin than the independent construction in English; and in translating the Ablative Absolute into English, the independent construction should generally be avoided. Cf. **pulsō frātre,** Lesson XX.; **eā rē cōgnitā,** Lesson XXII.; **relābente flūmine,** Lesson XXIII.; **rē animadversā,** Lesson XXVII.

Study also the following examples of the same construction: —

Cicerōne cōnsule, Catilīna cōniūrātiōnem fēcit, *in the consulship of Cicero, Catiline formed a conspiracy.* (Cicero being consul.)

Vīvīs nōbīs, ex urbe ēgressus est, *he went out of the city, and left us alive.* (We living.)

Rule. — *A noun and a participle, or a noun and an adjective, or two nouns, may be put in the Ablative to denote the* TIME, CAUSE, *or other* ATTENDANT CIRCUMSTANCE *of an action.*

The Ablative Absolute may generally be best translated into English by a clause with *when, while, if, although, after,* etc., or by

the Perf. Act. Part. with an object, or by a verb and an object. Thus, in the example in this lesson, **armātīs pāstōribus,** *having armed the shepherds,* or *he armed the shepherds and hastened,* etc.

Albam, Acc. of *place to which,* after **properāvit.**

Rule.—*After verbs of motion,* PLACE TO WHICH *is expressed by the Accusative,* PLACE FROM WHICH *by the Ablative; names of towns, small islands,* **domus** (*home*), *and* **rūs** (*the country*) *without a preposition; other nouns take* **ad** *or* **in** *with the Accusative, and* **ab, dē,** *or* **ex** *with the Ablative; for example,* —

> **Rōmam properāvit,** *he hastened to Rome.*
> **Rōmā properāvit,** *he hastened from Rome.*
> **Ad urbem properāvit,** *he hastened to the city.*
> **Ab urbe properāvit,** *he hastened from the city.*
> **Domum properāvit,** *he hastened home.*

135. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Faustulus necessitāte compellitur. 2. Necessitās Faustulum compellit. 3. Indicābat Rōmulō quis esset ēius pater. 4. Numitor erat Rōmulī avus. 5. Quae est geminōrum māter? 6. Quis est Amūlī pater? 7. Indicat Rōmulō quis sit[1] ēius avus. 8. Indicābimus Remō quae sit ēius māter. 9. Rōmulus, armātīs pāstōribus, domum properāvit. 10. Frātrēs statim Albā properābant. 11. Eā rē cōgnitā, ad urbem properāvit.

1. Forced by necessity, Romulus and Remus defended themselves. 2. He sees who his father is. 3. He saw who his mother was. 4. They ran home; they ran to the town; they ran to Alba. 5. Having armed (his) brother, he began

---

[1] Pres. Subjunc. 3d sing. of **sum** = *is.* Notice that **sit** and **esset** are used when the interrogative part of the sentence is dependent.

to hasten to the king. 6. Wherefore he began to inform
Remus who his father was. 7. Having armed the shep-
herds, they began to drive the robbers away from the plun-
dering of the herds. 8. Who was the father of the twins?
9. He informed them who their father was (cf. **135**. 3).

———ooႱoϿoo———

LESSON XXXV

136. Intereā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem per-
dūxērunt, eum accūsantēs, quasi Numitōris agrōs īnfēstāre
solitus esset; itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium
trāditus est.

intereā, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*	**īnfēstō, -āre, ——, ——,** *to trouble, disturb.*
perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *to conduct.*	**solitus esset,** *had been accustomed.*
accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to accuse.*	**itaque,** conj., *and so, therefore.*
quasi,[1] adv., *as if, on the pretext that.*	**supplicium, -ī,** n., *punishment.*
	trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum, *to give up, hand over.*

NOTES

137. perdūxērunt (per, *through,* **and dūcō,** *to lead*). Give the
synopsis of the Ind. mode, Act. voice, and the first three tenses of
the Pass. What is the subject? what the object?

---

[1] **Quasi** and **ubi** (**57**) are the only words, thus far given, having final
i short.

accūsantēs, Pres. Act. Part., from **accūsō**. Give the participles, both voices. Decline like **īnfāns** (**110** (*a*)). With what does it agree?

ā rēge, *by the king.* *Means,* as we have seen, is expressed in Latin by the Abl. without a prep.; but a person is not regarded as a *means*, but as an *agent*, and the *agent* is expressed in Latin by the Abl. with **ā** or **ab**. Thus, in Lesson XXV., "**fāmā trāditum est**," *it has been handed down by tradition*, **fāmā** is the Abl. of means; but in "**ā rēge trāditus est**," *he was handed over by the king*, **rēge** is the agent, and the prep. **ā** is expressed.

Rule. — *The voluntary agent of a verb in the Passive voice is in the Ablative with* **ā** *or* **ab**.

trāditus est: cf. **trāditum est**, Lesson XXV. Give all the participles of **trādō**. **trāditus est** is in the Perfect Indicative Passive 3d sing.

138. The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect Passive are compound tenses formed by combining the Perfect Passive participle with the first three tenses of **sum**.

The Perfect Passive Participle with the Present tense of **sum** forms the Perfect Tense, Passive Voice; with the Imperfect Tense of **sum**, the Pluperfect Passive; and with the Future Tense of **sum**, the Future Perfect Passive.

Thus,   **amātus sum**, *I have been loved* or *I was loved.*
        amātus eram, *I had been loved.*
        amātus erō, *I shall have been loved.*

As the participle, like the adjective, agrees with its noun in gender, number, and case, it will take the masculine, feminine, or neuter form, according as the subject is masculine, feminine, or neuter. Thus we have, —

amātus, -a, -um est, *he was loved, she was loved, it was loved.*
amātī, -ae, -a sunt, *they were loved; they* being either masculine feminine, or neuter.

(a) *Perfect Passive*

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
amātus, -a, -um		amātī, -ae, -a	
monitus, -a, -um	sum, es, est.	monitī, -ae, -a	sumus, estis,
rēctus, -a, -um		rēctī, -ae, -a	sunt.
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

(b) *Pluperfect Passive*

amātus, -a, -um		amātī, -ae, -a	
monitus, -a, -um	eram, erās,	monitī, -ae, -a	erāmus, erātis,
rēctus, -a, -um	erat.	rēctī, -ae, -a	erant.
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

(c) *Future Perfect Passive*

amātus, -a, -um		amātī, -ae, -a	
monitus, -a, -um	erō, eris,	monitī, -ae, -a	erimus, eritis,
rēctus, -a, -um	erit.	rēctī, -ae, -a	erunt.
audītus, -a, -um		audītī, -ae, -a	

139. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Intereā Remus ad rēgem properāverat. 2. Remus ā latrōnibus ad Amūlium perductus erat. 3. Latrōnēs eōs accūsāvērunt. 4. Frātrēs, Rōmulus et Remus, ā rēge Amūliō accūsātī sunt. 5. Is rēgis agrōs īnfēstāre solitus erat. 6. Remus, quī ad Amūlium perductus est, ā latrōnibus rēgī trāditus erat. 7. Agrī pāstōrum ā frātribus peragrātī erant. 8. Puerī agrōs eōrum īnfēstāre solitī sunt. 9. Virī ad eōs properābant. 10. Frātrēs domum properāverint.

1. Remus had been accused by the robbers. 2. The king had handed over Remus to Numitor for punishment. 3. And so the robbers ran to Amulius. 4. He was accustomed to

accuse the shepherds who were troubling (his) fields. 5. They accused the men who had been handed over to Numitor for punishment. 6. Straightway the shepherds of the king hastened to them. 7. Having learned this fact,[1] the robbers conducted him to Alba. 8. They will have been accused by the king.

———◦◦◦◦◦———

LESSON XXXVI

140. At cum Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōnsīderāns, aetātem minimēque servīlem indolem comparāret, haud procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret.

At, conj., *but.* Cf. **sed** in **92** and **101**.

adulēscēns, -entis, adj. used as a noun, *a youth.*

vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks.*

cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to consider.*

minimē, adv., *least of all, not at all.*

servīlem, adj., *slavish, servile.*

indolēs, -lis, f., *character, disposition.*

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to compare.*

haud, adv., *not, by no means.*

procul, adv., *far, far off.*

quīn, conj., *but that.*

āgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum, *to recognize.*

NOTES

141. adulēscēns, used as a noun, is declined like the masc. and fem. of **īnfāns (110 (a))**, — **adulēscēns, adulēscentis, adulēscentī,** etc. It has **e** alone, and not **e** or **ī**, in the Abl. sing. Nouns in **-ns** and **-rs** of the 3d Declension are declined like **adulēscēns.**

---

[1] Cf. **98, 99.**

vultum, a noun of the 5th Declension, declined like **vāgītus** (**107** (*a*)).

cōnsīderāns, Pres. Act. Part., from **cōnsīderō**. Decline like **īnfāns**. Give all the participles of **cōnsīderō**.

minimē, superlative of the adv. **parum**, *little*. **minimē servīlem**, *not at all slavish*.

que: cf. **110**, n. on **que**.

servīlem, an adj. in the Acc. sing., from **servīlis**, agreeing with **indolem**.

indolem, noun in the Acc. sing., from **indolēs**. Decline like **subolēs** (**93** (*a*)). Not used in the plu.

comparāret, Impf. Subj. Act. 3d sing. Cf. **prīvāret** in Lesson XX., **reverterētur** in Lesson XXVII., **āgnōsceret** in this Lesson. It will be observed that each of these forms has the syllable **re** immediately following the stem vowel. This syllable is always found in the Impf. Subj., and may be called the sign of that tense. For example: —

(a) $\left.\begin{array}{l}\textbf{amā-re} \\ \textbf{monē-re} \\ \textbf{rege-re} \\ \textbf{audī-re}\end{array}\right\}$ are the *bases* upon which the Impf. Subj. is formed in these verbs.

It will be observed also that these *bases* correspond exactly with the Pres. Inf. Act. of these verbs. The Pres. Inf. Act. and the *base* of the Impf. Subj. are always the same. By adding the personal endings to this base, we have the inflection of the Impf. Subj.: —

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. amā́rem	amārḗmus	1. amā́rer	amārḗmur
2. amā́rēs	amārḗtis	2. amārḗris (-re)	amārḗminī
3. amā́ret	amā́rent	3. amārḗtur	amārḗntur

ACTIVE

$\left.\begin{array}{l}\textbf{monē-} \\ \textbf{rege-} \\ \textbf{audī-}\end{array}\right\}$ **-rem, -rēs, -ret.** $\left.\right\}$ **-rēmus, -rētis, -rent.**

PASSIVE

monē-
rege- } -rer, -rēris, -rētur. } -rēmur, -rēminī, -rentur.
audī-

Inflect in the same way prīvāret, comparāret, and āgnōsceret.

haud is a negative adv. used chiefly with adjectives and other adverbs.

quīn is a conjunction regularly followed by the Subjunctive, as in this instance by āgnōsceret.

nepōtem: cf. 57.

haud procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret, literally, *he was by no means far but that he recognized his grandson.* Better thus: *he was not far from recognizing,* or, *he almost recognized,* etc.

Give the synopsis of erat.

142. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Cum Numitor adulēscentis vultum cōnsīderāret, nepōtem āgnōscēbat. 2. Rhēae Silviae fīlius minimē servīlem indolem habēbat. 3. Remus haud procul erat quīn vī sē dēfenderet. 4. Vultum adulēscentis āgnōvit. 5. Vultus adulēscentis haud servīlis erat. 6. Cum Amūlius nepōtem āgnōsceret, Remum Numitōrī ad supplicium trādidit. 7. Ā pāstōribus regī trāditus est. 8. Ad avum eum perdūxērunt.

1. When Numitor recognized (his) grandson, he conducted him to the king. 2. Having noticed[1] this circumstance, he began to recognize the countenance of the youth. 3. He began to compare the age of the youth, and his disposition by no means slavish. 4. He was on the point[2] of handing him over to the king for punishment. 5. The youth who had been captured by the robbers was the grandson of Numi-

---

[1] Lesson XXVII.   [2] **Haud procul,** etc.

tor.   6. The youth, whose countenance he was considering,
was conducted to Alba.   7. The king was on the point of
recognizing Remus.

Give the synopsis of **trādō** and of **comparō** in the Ind.
Pass. 3d sing.

———o o:o:o o———

LESSON XXXVII

143. Nam Remus ōris līneāmentīs erat mātrī simillimus
aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat.   Ea rēs dum
Numitōris animum anxium tenet, repente Rōmulus super-
venit, frātrem līberat, interēmptō Amūliō avum Numitōrem
in rēgnum restituit.

nam, adv., *for.*
ōs, ōris, n., *face, features.*
līneāmentum, -ī, n., *lineament,
outline.*
simillimus, -a, -um, adj., *most
like, very like.*
expositiō, -ōnis, f., *exposure.*
**congruō, -ēre, -uī, —— (con +
gruō),** *to agree, coincide.*
dum, conj., *while.*

anxius, -a, -um, adj., *anxious,
troubled.*
repente, adv., *suddenly.*
**superveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ven-
tum,** *to come up, arrive.*
interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,
to kill, slay.
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *to
replace, restore.*

NOTES

144. **ōris** : cf. Lesson XXVI., **ōrī.**

līneāmentīs, Abl. plu., limiting **simillimus.** *Very like his mother
in the outlines of his face.*   It denotes in what respect he was like his
mother.   Cf. **nātū,** in **nātū māior,** Lesson XIX.: *greater in respect
to birth.*   These constructions follow the

Rule. — *The* ABLATIVE OF SPECIFICATION *is used with nouns, adjectives, and verbs to denote* IN WHAT RESPECT *anything is true.*

mātrī, Dat., limiting **simillimus.** Adjectives of likeness are followed by the Dat. in Latin. Cf. the English, *similar to his mother.*

simillimus, an adj. from **similis,** *like,* in the superlative degree, declined like **māgnus.**

temporibus, Dat., by Rule X. *Coincided with the time,* etc.

Ea rēs: give Gen. and Dat. sing. and plu.

anxium is predicative: *keeps the mind of Numitor anxious,* i.e. *in doubt* or *in perplexity.*

(*a*) The verbs of this sentence, — **tenet, supervenit, līberat,** and **restituit,** are called *Historical Presents;* so called because they describe past events as if they were taking place in the present. The same usage is not uncommon in English, in vivid description; as, " Ulysses *wakes,* not knowing where he is."

supervenit = super + veniō. How does the 3d sing. of the Pres. Act. differ from the 3d sing. of the Perf. Act. of this verb? Which is this?

Give the principal parts and the synopsis of the Ind. Act. of the four verbs in this sentence.

interēmptō Amūliō: Rule XXVIII. How may this be best translated? Cf. Lesson XXXIV., n. on **armātīs.**

145. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Remus ōris līneāmentīs similis erat mātrī. 2. Fīlius erat mātrī simillimus. 3. Numitōris animus eā rē anxius tenēbātur. 4. Amūlius ā Rōmulō interēmptus est. 5. Rōmulus Remum frātrem līberāverat. 6. Repente Rōmulus supervēnit et Amūlium interēmit. 7. Eā rē audītā Remum līberāvit et avum in rēgnum restituit.

1. Romulus was not very like Remus. 2. Hearing the cry of the little ones [the crying of the little ones being

heard], the brother suddenly came up.   3. The robbers will
slay the youth whom the brother has liberated.   4. Romulus
having armed the shepherds straightway restored Numitor to
the throne.   5. Romulus was very like (his) father in the
outlines of his face.   6. This circumstance kept the mind
of his grandfather anxious.   7. Then he informed Romulus
who his grandfather was.   8. When Numitor recognized (his)
grandson, he freed Remus and slew Amulius.

———o⚬✧⚬o———

LESSON XXXVIII

Review

146. *Read and translate:* —

Quā rē cum iīs īnsidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est,
Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit.   Tum Faustulus, necessitāte com-
pulsus, indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset eōrum avus, quae māter.
Rōmulus statim armātīs pāstōribus Albam properāvit.   Inter-
eā Remum latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt, eum
accūsantēs, quasi Numitōris agrōs īnfēstāre solitus esset;
itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad supplicium trāditus est;
at cum Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōnsīderāns, aetātem
minimēque servīlem indolem comparāret, haud procul erat
quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret.   Nam Remus ōris līneāmentīs erat
mātrī simillimus aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus congruē-
bat.   Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium tenet, repente
Rōmulus supervenit, frātrem līberat, interēmptō Amūliō
avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.

NOTES

147. What mode and tenses have we had in clauses introduced by **cum**?

How does the declension of **quis** differ from that of **quī**, the relative?

To whom does **eōrum** refer? What gender and number is **eōrum,** and why? What words are declined like **māter**? How are *place to which* and *place from which* expressed in Latin? How is the agent expressed in Latin? the indirect object? the means?

What two words have we had meaning *not?*

Give the Impf. Subj. of **indicāvit, properāvit, perdūxērunt, congruēbat.** Give all the participles, Act. and Pass., of **dēfendit, cōnsīderāns, tenet, restituit.** Give the principal parts of the eight verbs just mentioned. Give the synopsis, Act. and Pass. 3d sing., of **indicāvit, trāditus est,** and **tenet.** Give the synopsis of **sum** in the Ind. 3d plu.

Decline **vī** and **sē.** How may the Ablative Absolute be best translated?

What is the rule for the case of **māter** in **quae māter**?

Observe the English derivatives: *insidious, capture, defense, compel, infest, servile, similar, expose, incongruous, restitution.*

EXERCISE

148. The robbers lay in wait for the twins. Faustulus told Romulus who his mother was. Romulus immediately armed the shepherds. He then hastened to the town. They were led to Amulius by the robbers who accused them. They gave up Remus to Numitor for punishment. Remus was very like (his) mother in countenance. The brother had been set free by Romulus. Amulius was killed. The grandfather Numitor was restored to the kingdom, and immediately hastened to Alba.

LESSON XXXIX

149. Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in īsdem locīs, ubi expositī ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt; sed ortā inter eōs contentiōne, uter nōmen novae urbī daret eamque imperiō regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre.

deinde : cf. Lesson XXIX.
īsdem, *same.*
expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *to expose.*
ubique, *and where.*
condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to found, build.*
ortā, *having arisen.*
contentiō, -ōnis, f., *contest, strife.*
uter, utra, utrum, *which of the two.*
nōmen, -inis, n., *a name.*
urbs, -bis, f., *a city.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *to give.*
daret, *should give.*
imperium, -ī, n., *power, authority, supreme power, empire.*
auspicium, -ī, n., *divination, auspices.*
dēcernō, -ere, dēcrēvī, dēcrētum, *to decide, determine, decree.*
adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to employ, make use of, have recourse to.*

NOTES

150. urbem, a noun of the 3d Declension with **-ium** in the Gen. plu. and **-ēs** or **-īs** in the Acc. plu. It belongs to the **i** stems. Cf. **53.**

īsdem is a demons. pron. from **īdem,** compounded of **is** and the affix **-dem.** It is declined like **is** (**102** (*a*)), the syllable **-dem** remaining unchanged throughout. The only changes from the declension of **is** are the following: **isdem** in the Nom. sing. masc. becomes **īdem**; **iddem** in the neut., **idem**; **m** is changed to **n** in the Acc. sing. and the Gen. plu. before **d**; and **iīsdem** becomes **īsdem** in the Dat. and Abl. plu. Write out the declension in full.

locīs : cf. **107,** n. on **locīs.**

erant is to be taken with **expositī** as well as with **ēducātī.** Give the synopsis of these verbs in the Ind. Pass.

ubique = ubi + que. Cf. **110,** n. on **-que.**

condidērunt: inflect the tense, and give all the participles.

ortā is a Perf. Part. from **orior,** a deponent verb. Cf. **113,** n. on **reverterētur.**

inter: cf. **inter pāstōrēs,** Lesson XXVIII.

eōs refers to whom?

ortā contentiōne, Ablative Absolute. Give rule for gender of **contentiō.**

nōmen: cf. **flūmen, (63).**

urbī: Rule IX.

daret: observe the short **a** in the stem. **dō** is the only verb of the 1st Conjugation with the characteristic vowel **a** short. Imperfect Subjunctive. Inflect the tense.

eam refers to **urbī;** hence fem.

imperiō: Rule XIX. Decline in the sing.

regeret = *should rule.* Imperfect Subjunctive. Inflect the tense. Connected to **daret** by **-que.**

auspicia is derived from two Latin words meaning *to observe birds.* The early Romans sought to learn the will of their gods by observing the flight of birds. The meaning of **auspicium,** in process of time, was widened, and came to be applied to various means for learning of future events. It is here used in its original meaning. Before entering upon any important undertaking, whether public or private, the Romans were accustomed to take the auspices. **auspicia** is the object of **adhibēre.**

151. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmulus urbem condidit.   2. Rōmulus et Remus in īsdem locīs ēducātī sunt ubi urbem condidērunt.   3. Cum urbem conderent, inter eōs contentiō orta est.   4. Deinde nōmen novae urbī dedērunt.   5. Nōmen novae urbī ab iīs datum est.   6. Hanc urbem imperiō regēbant.   7. Novam urbem condere dēcrēverant.   8. Urbe conditā, Rōmulus eam imperiō regere dēcrēvit.   9. Urbs quam condidērunt

fuit Rōma.   10. Ortā inter frātrēs contentiōne Remus vī
sē dēfendēbat.

1. A city was founded by Romulus.   2. Having given a
name to the new city, they ruled it by (their) power.
3. They consulted (*adhibeō*) the auspices (as to) which of
the two should found[1] the city.   4. Romulus gave the name
to the new city.   5. They decide to found a city in the same
places where they had been exposed.   6. Romulus informed
(his) grandfather who was ruling the city.   7. They gave to
this city which they founded the name Rome.

LESSON XL

152. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus posteā duo-
decim vīdit.   Sīc Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam
vocāvit.   Ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum vidēbātur.

prior, adj., comparative degree,
   former, first.
sex, numeral adj., *six.*
vultur, -uris, m., *a vulture.*
posteā, adv., *afterwards.*
duodecim, numeral adj., *twelve.*
sīc, adv., *thus.*

augurium, -ī, n., *augury, sign.*
tūtēla, -ae, f., *protection, defense.*
sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to
   be sufficient, suffice.*
vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart.*
vidēbātur, *seemed.*

NOTES

153. **prior,** an adj. in the comparative; the positive is wanting.
Used here instead of a superlative, because but two (Romulus and
Remus) are spoken of.   It is declined as follows : —

---

[1] Cf. **uter daret,** above.

(a)

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. and F.	*N.*	*M. and F.*	*N.*
N. V.	príor	príus	prióres	prióra
Gen.	prióris		priórum	
Dat.	prióri		prióribus	
Acc.	priórem	príus	prióres	prióra
Abl.	prióre *or* prióri		prióribus	

All comparatives are declined like **prior**. They are classed with adjectives of the 3d Declension. Cf. **pāstor (63)**. Observe that they have -e or -ī in the Abl. sing., and -um in the Gen. plu.

Decline, in the same way, **māior**, *greater*, and **melior**, *better*.

sex, a numeral adj.: indeclinable.

duodecim: indeclinable. **duo**, *two*, + **decem**, *ten*.

victor: many verbal nouns in -**tor** are used as adjectives. **victor auguriō** = *victorious through augury; i.e.* shown to be victorious by the omens.

auguriō: Rule XIX. *Through augury*, i.e. *through observance of omens;* in this instance, by observing the flight of birds.

urbem Rōmam vocāvit, *called the city Rome*. Cf. Lesson XXI., **ēius fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit**, *made his daughter priestess of Vesta*. These two accusatives after the verb are explained by the following rule: —

. **Rule.** — *Verbs meaning to* MAKE, CHOOSE, NAME, CALL, *and the like, take two Accusatives of the same person or thing.*

Ad tūtēlam: cf. **ad supplicium**, Lesson XXXV.

vidēbātur: Impf. Ind. Pass. 3d sing. of **videō**, *to see;* but **videō** in the Pass. form is often used as a deponent with the meaning, *to seem*. This is its use here. What is a deponent verb? Cf. **113**. Synopsis of the Ind. Pass.

154. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmulus erat victor auguriō.   2. Remus duodecim vulturēs vīderat.   3. Remus posteā Rōmulum victōrem

vocāvit.   4. Rōmulus auspicia adhibēre solitus est.   5. Vāl-
lum ad urbis tūtēlam sufficiet.   6. Urbem quam condidērunt
Rōmam vocāvērunt.   7. Rōmulus victor auguriō esse[1] vidē-
bātur..   8. Remus prior sex vulturēs, Rōmulus deinde duo-
decim vīdit.

1. A contest having arisen between the brothers, they
determined to consult the auspices.   2. They called the
shepherds robbers.   3. Six vultures were seen by Remus,
afterwards twelve by Romulus.   4. Thus Romulus was called
the victor.[2]   5. Remus first saw the vultures.   6. The new
city was called Rome by Romulus.   7. Romulus called the
new city Rome.   8. They had determined to consult the
auspices (as to) which-of-the-two should rule the new city.

———oo⦆ʘ⦅oo———

LESSON XLI

155. Quod inrīdēns cum Remus saltū trāiēcisset, eum
īrātus Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs increpāns verbīs: "Sīc deinde,
quīcumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea." Ita sōlus potītus
est imperiō Rōmulus.

inrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *to
laugh at, ridicule.*
saltū, *with a leap* or *bound.*
trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *to
pass over, go over.* (**trāns,**
across + **iaciō,** *to throw.*)

īrātus, -a, -um, adj., *angry, en-
raged.*
interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum,
to kill, slay.
increpō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *to up-
braid, chide.*

---

[1] *To be.*   [2] *Cf. Rule III.*

verbum, -ī, n., *a word.*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever.*

alius, alia, aliud, adj., *other, another.*

trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, ——, *to leap over* or *across.*

moenia, -ium, n., *ramparts, walls.* Only in the plu.

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron., *my.*

ita, adv., *so, thus.*

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., *alone, only.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, *to become master of, gain possession of.*

NOTES

156. **quod,** neut. sing. Acc. of the rel. pron., with **vāllum,** in the preceding lesson, for its antecedent. It is the object of **inrīdēns.** The rel. pron. is often used at the beginning of a sentence in Latin where in English a demons. or a pers. pron. would be used. **Quod** is here equivalent to **id.** *Laughing at this* or *it.*

inrīdēns, agrees with **Remus.** The English order would be **cum Remus inrīdēns quod,** etc. Give all of the participles, both voices, of **inrīdēns.**

saltū, a noun of the 4th Declension, with only the Acc. and Abl. sing. and plu. in use. Rule XIX.

trāiēcisset, Plupf. Subj. 3d sing., *had gone over.*

eum, object of **interfēcit.**

interfēcit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d sing. Inflect the tense. Give the Plupf. and Fut. Perf.

With what do **īrātus** and **increpāns** agree?

verbīs: for construction, cf. **saltū** above.

sīc, *thus* (shall be killed).

deinde, *after this, hereafter.*

quīcumque alius = *whatever other one.*

quīcumque is a general or indefinite rel. pron., declined like **quī, quae, quod** (96 (*a*)), with the affix **-cumque** added to all of the forms; as, —

        Nom.   **quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque**

        Gen.   **cūiuscumque**

        Dat.   **cuīcumque,** etc.

alius is declined as follows : —

(a)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	álius	ália	áliud	álií	áliae	ália
Gen.	alíus	alíus	alíus	aliórum	aliárum	aliórum
Dat.	álií	álií	álií	áliīs	áliīs	áliīs
Acc.	álium	áliam	áliud	áliōs	áliās	ália
Abl.	áliō	áliā	áliō	áliīs	áliīs	áliīs

Eight other adjectives, making nine in all, have the Gen. sing. in -**īus**, and the Dat. sing. in -**ī**. These adjectives are —

nūllus, -a, -um, *no one.*

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone.*

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole.*

uter, -tra, -trum, *which* (of two).

ūllus, -a, -um, *any.*

ūnus, -a, -um, *one.*

alter, -tera, -terum, *the other* (of two).

neuter, -tra, -trum, *neither.*

It will be noticed that **alius** has -**d** in the Nom. and Acc. neut. sing. **nūllus, sōlus, tōtus, ūllus,** and **ūnus** are declined like **bonus,** except in the Gen. and Dat. sing. The declension of **alter, uter,** and **neuter** will be given later.

trānsiliet = **trāns,** *across,* + **saliō,** *to·leap.* Give the synopsis of **trānsiliet** in the Ind. Act.

imperiō is in the Abl., after **potītus est,** according to the —

Rule. — *The deponent verbs* **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vescor** *are followed by the Ablative.*

(**ūtor,** *to make use of;* **fruor,** *to enjoy;* **fungor,** *to perform;* **potior,** *to gain possession of;* **vescor,** *to feed upon, to eat.*)

Observe especially the perf. stems of **inrīdeō, increpō,** and **trānsiliō.**

157. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Remus saltū vāllum trāiēcit.   2. Remus vāllum inrī-sit.   3. Rōmulus cum eum increpuisset, interfēcit.   4. Hīs verbīs Remum increpābat.   5. Quīcumque alius hōc vāllum

saltū trāiēcerit, interficiam.   6. Remus mea moenia nōn trān-
siliet.   7. Sōlus Remus vāllum trānsiluit.   8. Alius imperiō
potītus est.   9. Aliī rēgnō potītī sunt.   10. Alius moenia
saltū trāiciet.   11. Quīcumque moenia trānsilit, multīs verbīs
increpat.

1. Remus was leaping over the rampart.   2. Romulus,
being angry, killed him.   3. Romulus gained possession of
the kingdom.   4. Remus went over the rampart with a leap.
5. Then another laughed at the rampart.   6. Romulus, who
had built the city in this place, upbraided him with these
words.   7. "Thus will I slay whatever other one shall laugh
at my rampart."   8. He alone gained possession of the chief-
power.   9. They alone will leap over my walls.

LESSON XLII

Review

158. *Read and translate:* —

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem in īsdem locīs ubi
expositī ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt; sed ortā inter
eōs contentiōne, uter nōmen novae urbī daret eamque im-
periō regeret, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre.   Remus prior
sex vulturēs, Rōmulus duodecim vīdit.   Sīc Rōmulus, victor
auguriō, urbem Rōmam vocāvit.   Ad novae urbis tūtēlam
sufficere vāllum vidēbātur.   Quod inrīdēns cum Remus saltū
trāiēcisset, eum īrātus Rōmulus interfēcit hīs increpāns ver-
bīs: "Sīc deinde, quīcumque alius trānsiliet moenia mea."
Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus.

NOTES

159. Make a list of the verbs in the above passage, arranging them according to the conjugations to which they belong.

Give the principal parts of **condidērunt, daret, inrīdēns, increpāns,** and **trānsiliet.** What is the peculiarity of the verb **dō**?

Remembering that the Impf. Subj. may be formed from the Pres. Inf. Act. by adding the personal endings, write the inflection of the Imp. Subj. Act. and Pass. of **condidērunt, dēcrēvērunt, adhibēre, sufficere, interfēcit,** and **trānsiliet.**

Give all the participles, active and passive, of **daret, vīdit, dēcrēvērunt,** and **trānsiliet.**

Decline **alius** and **sōlus** in the singular.

How may the relative at the beginning of a Latin sentence often be translated?

Decline together **novae urbis** in both numbers.

What construction follows verbs of *naming, calling,* etc.?

What construction follows **potior**? Give the other verbs that take the same construction.

Give the Dat. and Acc. sing. and plu. of **prior.**

Write the Gen. and Acc. plu. of **urbem.**

What case or cases may follow **in**? **inter**? **ad**?

Notice that **saltū trāicere** and **trānsilīre** are equivalent expressions.

Give rule for gender of **urbem, nōmen, auguriō, verbīs.**

Observe the following English derivatives: *expose, educate, contention, nomenclature, imperial, priority, duodecimals, sufficient, irate, sole.*

EXERCISE

160. 1. Romulus founded the city Rome. 2. A strife arising between the brothers (as to) which-of-the-two should rule the new city, they straightway consulted the auspices. 3. Romulus gave to the city the name Rome. 4. Romulus saw twelve vultures, but Remus six. 5. Thus Romulus was
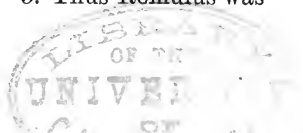
the victor.   6. Remus laughed at the walls of the new city, and Romulus killed him.   7. Romulus alone was called king. 8. Romulus, who had determined to call the city Rome, up-braided his brother Remus with these words.

———◦○✦○◦———

LESSON XLIII

Nouns of the Third Declension — i-stems

161. **Hostis** (st. **hosti-**), m.
and f., *an enemy.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	hóstis	hóstēs
Gen.	hóstis	hóstium
Dat.	hóstī	hóstibus
Acc.	hóstem	hóstēs, -īs
Abl.	hóste	hóstibus

Mare (st. **mari-**), n.,
the sea.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	máre	mária
Gen.	máris	márium
Dat.	márī	máribus
Acc.	máre	mária
Abl.	márī	máribus

Urbs (st. **urbi-**), f.,
a city.

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	úrbs	úrbēs
Gen.	úrbis	úrbium
Dat.	úrbī	úrbibus
Acc.	úrbem	úrbēs, -īs
Abl.	úrbe	úrbibus

Cliēns (st. **clienti-**), m.
and f., *a client.*

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	clíēns	cliéntēs
Gen.	cliéntis	cliéntium
Dat.	cliéntī	cliéntibus
Acc.	cliéntem	cliéntēs, -īs
Abl.	cliénte	cliéntibus

The four nouns given above represent the four classes of **i** nouns.   Any nouns hereafter met with in these lessons that belong to these classes and vary in any of their forms from the ones here given, will be specially noticed; and their variation from these forms will be pointed out.

(*a*) Nouns formed from **i** stems may be divided into the following classes : —

1. Nouns in -**ēs** and -**is** not increasing in the Genitive singular, *i.e.* having no more syllables in the Genitive than in the Nominative.

2. Neuters in -**e**, -**al**, and -**ar**.

3. Monosyllables in **s** and **x** preceded by a consonant.

4. Most nouns in -**ns** and -**rs**.[1]

An examination of the forms of **i** nouns of the 3d Declension will show the following statements to be true : —

(*b*)   *In the Singular*

1st Class. — Some nouns of this class are declined in the sing. like consonant stems, and some retain **i** in the Accusative or Ablative, or in both.   These will be noticed as they occur.

2d Class. — These nouns have **ī** in the Ablative sing.

3d and 4th Classes. — These are declined in the sing. like consonant stems.

(*c*)   *In the Plural*

In nouns of all the four classes the **i** is retained in the Genitive plural, which has -**ium** instead of -**um** ; in the Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative plural neuter, which have -**ia** ; and in the Accusative plural masculine and feminine, which has -**īs** as well as -**ēs**.

Of the nouns already given, study and classify : **subolēs, Tiberim, īnfantēs, adulēscentis, indolem, urbem.**

---

[1] In the declension of these four classes of nouns, the **i** of the stem often disappears or is changed to **e**.

LESSON XLIV

Romulus, the First King of the Romans

162. Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant. Erat in proximō lūcus; hunc asȳlum fēcit. Et statim eō mīra vīs latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit.

imāgō, -inis, f., *image, likeness.*
  Cf. **multitūdō (63).**

magis quam, *rather than.*

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *to make, do.*

deerant, *were wanting.*

in proximō, *near by.*

lūcus, -ī, m., *a grove.*

asȳlum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, an asylum.*

eō, *thither, to that place.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., *wonderful, extraordinary.*

cōnfugiō, -ere, cōnfūgī, ——, *to flee, take refuge.*

NOTES

163. fēcerat: what tense? Cf. **rēxerat.**

deerant, Impf. 3d plu. of **dēsum = dē + sum.** It is inflected like **sum** with the syllable **dē** prefixed.

hunc asȳlum: Rule XVII. **hunc** refers to **lūcus.** Romulus made his new city a place of refuge for criminals and outlaws and runaway slaves from the region round about; therefore it came to consist chiefly of men without wives and families. The neighbors very naturally looked upon the settlement on the Tiber as a nest of thieves and robbers, and refused to allow their daughters to intermarry with them.

vīs latrōnum, *force of robbers = number of robbers.* Decline together **mīra vīs.**

cōnfūgit, Perf. Ind. Act. 3d singular. How does this form differ from the Present?

Verbs in **-iō** of the Third Conjugation, like **fugiō, faciō, iaciō,** are inflected as follows: —

(a)   **Capiō** (pres. stems[1] **cape-** and **capi-**), *to take.*

Present Tense

ACTIVE VOICE		PASSIVE VOICE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1. cápiō	cápimus	1. cápior	cápimur
2. cápis	cápitis	2. cáperis *or* -re	capímini
3. cápit	cápiunt	3. cápitur	capiántur

The Impf. **capiēbam** and the Fut. **capiam** are inflected like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. Cf. **audiēbam (35)** and **audiam (51)**.

Like **capio** inflect **iacio**.

164. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmulō rēge, Rōma imāgō urbis erat magis quam urbs.
2. Rōmulus imāginem urbis faciet. 3. Erat in proximō asylum. 4. Rōmulus urbem asylum faciēbat. 5. Statim eō latrōnēs pāstōrēsque cōnfūgērunt. 6. Frūmentum deerat.
7. Mīra vīs latrōnum in urbe erat. 8. Lūcum asylum fēcit.
9. Mīra vīs hostium in urbem properāvit. 10. Hostēs in mare cōnfūgērunt.

1. Romulus made the likeness of a city in this place.
2. The city which he founded on the Tiber[2] he called Rome.
3. He made an asylum, rather than a city. 4. Straightway there came thither a wonderful number of men. 5. When Romulus was king,[3] a city was founded on the Tiber. 6. The robbers and shepherds fled to the asylum. 7. He called the robbers enemies.

---

[1] A part of the forms are to be referred to one of these stems, and a part to the other.

[2] **ad Tiberim.**   [3] Ablative Absolute.

LESSON XLV

165. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgā-
tōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque
novō populō peterent. Nūsquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est.

cum, *since.*
vērō, adv., *in truth, however.*
  Never first in a sentence.
uxor, -ōris, f., *a wife.*
ipse, -a, -um, *he himself,* i.e.
  Romulus.
lēgātus, -ī, m., *an ambassador,*
  envoy.
circā, prep., *around, round about.*
  Always with the Acc.

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the*
  neighborhood, neighboring.
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe, people.*
societās, -tātis, f., *alliance.*
cōnūbium, -ī, n., *the right of*
  intermarriage, marriage.
petō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *to seek.*
nūsquam, adv., *nowhere.*
benīgnē, adv., *in a friendly man-*
  ner, kindly.
lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *embassy.*

NOTES

166. uxōrēs, object of **habērent.**
  mīsit: the subject is a pronoun understood, referring to Romulus.
The clause, **quī . . . peterent,** expresses purpose, — *who should
seek.* Better expressed in English by the Infin. *to seek,* etc.
  populō is the Dat. modifying **peterent.** *For the new people.*
 **ipse** is thus declined : —

(a)	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	ípse	ípsa	ípsum	ípsī	ípsae	ípsa
Gen.	ipsíus	ipsíus	ipsíus	ipsṓrum	ipsā́rum	ipsṓrum
Dat.	ípsī	ípsī	ípsī	ípsīs	ípsīs	ípsīs
Acc.	ípsum	ípsam	ípsum	ípsōs	ípsās	ípsa
Abl.	ípsō	ípsā	ípsō	ípsīs	ípsīs	ípsīs

Give the Participles, both voices, of **mīsit** and **peterent.**

167. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmulus ipse uxōrem nōn habuit. 2. Populus vērō Rōmulum in rēgnum restituit. 3. Lēgātiōnem circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsērunt. 4. Gentēs ad quās lēgātī missī sunt societātem petēbant. 5. Prīncipēs, quī uxōrēs nōn habēbant, cōnūbium sibi petiērunt. 6. Lēgātī, quī ā Rōmulō circā vīcīnās gentēs missī sunt, nūsquam benīgnē audītī sunt. 7. Incolae asȳlum sibi petunt. 8. Rōmulus lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīserat, quī societātem novō populō peterent.

1. Romulus sought for the right-of-intermarriage for the new people. 2. The envoys, whom he sent around the neighboring tribes, were not heard kindly. 3. Romulus himself and the people did not have wives. 4. Wives are wanting — were wanting — will be wanting. 5. The neighboring tribes did not send envoys. 6. They sought intermarriage, rather than an alliance. 7. The embassy which was sent by Romulus was not heard kindly by the neighboring tribes.
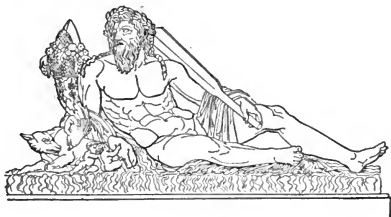
LESSON XLVI

168. Nūsquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est : lūdibrium
etiam additum : "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperu-
istis ? Id enim compār foret cōnūbium." Rōmulus, aegri-
tūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat ; indīcī deinde
fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet.

lūdibrium, -ī, n., *mockery, de-
    rision.*
etiam, adv., *even, and also.*
addō, -ere, addidī, additum,
    to add.
cūr, adv., *why.*
quoque, conj., *also.*
aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertum, *to open.*
enim, conj., *for.* Never first in
    a sentence.
compār, adj., *equal, suitable.*
foret, *would be.*
aegritūdō, -inis, f., *anxiety, vexa-
    tion.*

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to
    hide, conceal.*
lūdus, -ī, m., *a play, game.* In
    the plu., *games, spectacles.*
parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to pre-
    pare.*
indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *to
    proclaim, announce.*
fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj., *neighbor-
    ing.* As a noun in the plu.,
    neighbors.
spectāculum, -ī, n., *a show,
    spectacle.*

NOTES

169. additum, the neuter of the Perf. Pass. Part., to agree with
lūdibrium. Supply **est.** *Derision even was added.* This derision
is shown by the following speech. They had opened an asylum
for worthless men : why didn't they open a similar asylum, or
refuge, for women also? Then they would have women suitable
for such men.

    quoque always emphasizes the word immediately preceding —
here **fēminīs.** *For women also,* as well as for men.

    compār, -paris, has **e** or **ī** in the Ablative. It agrees with
cōnūbium.

foret is an old form for **esset**.

aegritūdinem animī, *vexation of spirit.*

indīcī is the Pres. Pass. Inf. of **indīcō**.   The subject is **spectāculum**.   *He orders a spectacle to be announced to the neighbors.*

(*a*) The Pres. Pass. Inf. of the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations is formed by adding -**rī** to the verb stem; of the Third Conjugation, by adding -**ī** to the verb stem.   For example, —

amō,	stem	**amā-,**	Pres. Pass. Inf.	**amārī,**	*to be loved.*
laudō,	"	**laudā-,**	"	"	**laudārī,**	*to be praised.*
moneō,	"	**monē-,**	"	"	**monērī,**	*to be warned.*
habeō,	"	**habē-,**	"	"	**habērī,**	*to be had.*
dūcō,	"	**dūc-,**	"	"	**dūcī,**	*to be led.*
mittō,	"	**mitt-,**	"	"	**mittī,**	*to be sent.*
faciō,	"	**fac-,**	"	"	**facī,**	*to be done.*
audiō,	"	**audī-,**	"	"	**audīrī,**	*to be heard.*
vinciō,	"	**vincī-,**	"	"	**vincīrī,**	*to be bound.*

It will be noticed that the only difference between the Pres. Act. Inf. and the Pres. Pass. Inf., in the First, Second, and Fourth Conjugations, is that in the Act. voice the ending is **e** and in the Pass. voice **ī**; as, **amāre, amarī**; **monēre, monērī**; **audīre, audīrī**. Verbs in -**iō** of the Third Conjugation form the Pres. Pass. Inf. in -**ī**; as, **capiō, capī**; **iaciō, iacī**; **rapiō, rapī**.

170. *Translate at sight : —*

1. Fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperiētur.   2. Asȳlum quoque fēminīs aperiētur.   3. Asȳlum aperīrī iubet.   4. Lūdī ā Rōmulō parātī sunt.   5. Cūr fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperīrī iūssit ?   6. Spectāculum fīnitimīs indictum est.   7. Rōmulus deinde aegritūdinem animī dissimulābat.   8. Lūdōs quoque parārī iūssit.   9. Cūr Rōmulus spectāculum indīcī iubēbat ?   10. Quod vērō ipse populusque uxōrēs nōn habēbant.

1. Wives were wanting. 2. So Romulus sent envoys round about the neighboring tribes. 3. They were nowhere heard kindly. 4. They upbraided Romulus with these words: "Why do you not order an asylum to be opened for women too? Why do you seek the right-of-intermarriage for the new people?" 5. Romulus concealed (his) vexation of spirit. 6. He ordered games to be prepared, and the show to be proclaimed to the neighbors. 7. Straightway a wonderful number of people came to the new city.

LESSON XLVII

171. Multī convēnēre studiō etiam videndae novae urbis, māximē Sabīnī cum līberīs et cōniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque conversae mentēs cum oculīs erant, tum sīgnō datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come together, assemble.*
studium, -ī, n., *zeal, desire.*
māximē, adv., *especially.*
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Sabines.*
cum, prep., *with.*
convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum, *to turn, direct.*
mēns, mentis, f., *the mind.*

sīgnum, -ī, n., *sign, signal.*
iuvenis, -is, m. and f., *a youth, a young person.*
Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman.*
discurrō, -ere, -currī or **-cucurrī, -cursum,** *to run different ways, to run to and fro.*
rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to carry off by force, to hurry away, seize.*

NOTES

172. Multī, the Nom. plu. masc. of the adj. **multus,** *much, many,* used substantively. Adjectives are often used as nouns,

especially in the plural; as, **bonī**, *good men;* **multī**, *many men;* **multa**, *many things;* **bona**, *goods.*

convēnēre, the second form of the Perf. Ind. 3d plural, — **convēnērunt** *or* **-ēre**. A compound of **cum**, *with*, and **veniō**, *to come;* but **cum** in compounds takes the form **com** or **con**, and has the force of *together.*

studiō: cf. Rule XIX.

etiam may here be translated *besides.* They came not only to see the **spectāculum**, but to see, besides that, the new city.

videndae is the Gerundive, — a word having the construction of an adjective or participle, — and agrees with **urbis**. Cf. **116**, n. on **ēducandōs**, and Lesson XXXIII. The English idiom here differs entirely from the Latin idiom. We should express the same thought in English by translating **videndae** as a verbal noun, with **novae urbis** for its object, — thus, *of seeing the new city;* or better still, in this instance, by the use of an Infinitive, — *from a desire to see the new city.*

Sabīnī: the Sabines were a people of central Italy, dwelling between the Apennines, the river Anio, and the Tiber, northeast of Rome. They were curious to see what their new neighbors were doing.

cum, a preposition that takes the Abl. only. Not to be confounded with **cum** meaning *when* or *since.*

eō, *thither, i.e.* towards the show. Cf. **eō**, Lesson XLIV.

mentēs belongs to the **i** stems, Third Declension. Cf. Lesson XLIII. It is declined in the sing. like the consonant stems, and in the plu. has **-ium** in the Gen. and **-ēs** or **-īs** in the Acc. Decline it in full.

conversae erant: what tense? Why **conversae** rather than **conversī**? Give synopsis of the Ind. Pass.

eōque conversae mentēs cum oculīs erant, *their minds had been directed to it together with their eyes, i.e.* they were wholly absorbed in the spectacle before them; their thoughts and their eyes were directed towards it.

sīgnō datō, *at a given signal.* Cf. Lesson XXXIV., note on **armātīs**. Rule XXVIII.

discurrunt (dis, *apart*, + currō, *to run*): the Perf. of the sim-
ple verb currō is formed by reduplication; cf. 74 (*a*). This
reduplication is sometimes retained and sometimes omitted in
compounds.

Observe the tense of discurrunt and rapiunt. The Present
is used to give vividness to the narrative. The Present tense thus
used is called the Historical Present.

Inflect the Pres. Tense, Act. and Pass., of rapiō. Cf. capiō,
Lesson XLIV., notes. Give the synopsis of the Ind. Act. and
Pass. of rapiō.

173. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Multī convēnēre studiō videndī spectāculī.   2. Rō-
mulus haud procul erat quīn imāginem urbis faceret.
3. Sabīnī māximē convēnēre studiō videndī novī populī.
4. Sīgnum ā Rōmānīs datum est.   5. Līberōs et cōniu-
gēs Sabīnōrum rapiēbant.   6. Rōmulus societātem novō
populō petīvit.   7. Sabīnī ā Rōmulō Rōmānīs ad suppli-
cium trāditī sunt.   8. Līberī et cōniugēs Sabīnōrum ā
iuvenibus Rōmānīs raptī sunt.   9. Multī ad spectāculum
mentēs convertēbant.   10. Vīcīnae gentēs convēnērunt etiam
studiō videndōrum Rōmānōrum.

1. At a given signal, the Roman youth carry-off-by-force
the wives and daughters of the Sabines.   2. When Romulus
was king,[1] the Sabines especially came together from a desire
to see the spectacle.   3. They came to the new city with
(their) wives and children.   4. Their minds, together with
their eyes, were turned towards the games.   5. He ordered
the daughters of the Sabines to be carried-off-by-force.
6. The wives and children of the Sabines ran-to-and-

---

[1] Ablative Absolute.

fro.   7. After Remus was killed,[1] Romulus prepared games.   8. Thus Romulus and the new people had wives.

174.

adulēscēns, a person that is growing up; a person from fifteen to thirty years of age.

iuvenis, a young man up to about forty-five years of age; older than **adulescēns**, and younger than **senior** or **senex**, *an old man*.

fīnitimus, near in the sense of *bordering upon, adjoining*.

vīcīnus, near in the sense of *neighboring, in the vicinity*.

mēns, the mind considered as the seat of *thought,* — *the intellect*.

animus, the mind considered as the seat of *feeling* or *desire*.

———o○o———

LESSON XLVIII

175. Haec fuit statim causa bellī.   Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt, quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ierat.   Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī.

causa, -ae, f., *cause.*

ob, prep. with the Acc., *on account of.*

adversus, prep. with the Acc., *against.*

sūmō, -ere, -psī, -ptum, to *take, undertake, begin,*

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to *come near to, approach.*

Tarpēia, -ae, *Tarpēia.*

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus sum, to *meet with, fall in with.*

extrā, prep. with the Acc., *outside of, beyond.*

petītum, to *seek, ask for.*

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** to *go.*

praeerat, *was set over, had charge of, commanded.*

arx, -cis, f., *a citadel.*

---

[1] Cf. **interēmptō Amūliō,** Lesson XXXVII.

NOTES

176. ob virginēs raptās, literally, *on account of the maidens
carried off;* = *on account of the seizing and carrying off of the maidens.*
The Perf. Part. agreeing with a noun is often best translated by a
verbal noun having the noun with which it agrees depending upon it.

sūmpsērunt: the letter *p* is inserted before the endings of the
perfect and supine stems for euphony. Inflect the tense; give the
synopsis of the Ind., both voices, and give the participles.

Rōmae, Dat. after **appropinquārent**.

nactī sunt, a deponent verb. Cf. **113**, n. on **reverterētur**.

The *principal parts* of the Passive Voice consist of the Pres.
Ind., the Pres. Inf., and the Perf. Ind.; for example, **amor, amārī,
amātus sum; moneor, monērī, monitus sum; regor, regī, rēctus sum; audior, audīrī, audītus sum.**

What is the gender and number of **quae,** and why? Decline it.
aquam: object of **petītum**.

petītum is the Supine of **petō, petere, petīvī, petītum**, depend-
ing upon **ierat**, and denoting the purpose of her going, *viz. to seek
water.*

Rule. — *The Supine in* **-um** *is used with verbs of Motion to
express* PURPOSE.

Besides the Supine in -um, a form in -ū is occasionally found.
The Supine in -um is called the *former* Supine; that in -ū, the
latter. The Supine is formed from the supine stem of the verb by
adding -um and -ū.

ierat is for **īverat**, thē Plupf. Ind. Act. from the irregular verb
eō. It is inflected as follows : —

(a)   **Eō** (st. **ī-**), *to go.*

	Present		*Imperfect*
SINGULAR	PLURAL		**ī́bam, ī́bās, ī́bat**, etc.
1. **ḗ-ō**, *I go.*	**ī́-mus**, *we go.*		
2. **ī-s**, *you go.*	**ī́-tis**, *you go.*		*Future*
3. **i-t**, *he* etc. *goes.*	**ḗ-unt**, *they go.*		**ī́bo, ī́bis, ī́bit**, etc.

Perfect	*Pluperfect*
īvī (iī), īvīstī, īvit, etc.	īveram (ieram), īverās, īverat, etc.

Future Perfect	*Imperfect Subjunctive*
īverō, īveris, īverit, etc.	īrem, īrēs, īret, etc.

It will be observed that these forms resemble the forms of the Fourth Conjugation, but the **ī** of the stem becomes **e** before **a, o,** and **u**; the **ē** before the tense-sign **-ba** of the Impf. is wanting, and the Future is formed after the analogy of the First and Second Conjugations. Moreover, as will be seen hereafter, the **i** of the supine stem is short. In other respects, the verb is regular.

hūius refers to Tarpeia, and limits **pater.**

praeerat = prae, *before,* + **sum,** *I am.* It is inflected like **sum** with the prep. **prae** prefixed.

arcī is an **i** noun of the Third Declension, declined like **urbs.**

177. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmānī statim virginēs Sabīnōrum rapuērunt.   2. Bellum adversus Rōmānōs ā Sabīnīs sūmptum est.   3. Cum Rōmānī iuvenēs virginēs raperent, Sabīnī bellum sūmpsērunt.   4. Mīlitēs quī urbī appropinquābant, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt.   5. Aquam forte extrā moenia petierat.   6. Tarpēia cum extrā moenia īret, Sabīnōs nacta est.   7. Rōmulus urbī praeerat.   8. Multī novam urbem vīsum īvērunt.

1. He informed them what was the cause of the war.[1]
2. The Sabines will begin war against the Romans.
3. Romulus ordered that the maidens be seized.   4. When they approached the city, the signal was given.   5. They

---

[1] Cf. **quis esset,** etc., Lesson XXXIV.

fell-in-with the wives and children of the Sabines.   6. She will go outside the city to seek water.   7. She went to the new city with her father.   8. Romulus will-be-set-over the city which he founded.   9. They came to the show to seek wives.

———∘∘⦂⊙⦂∘∘———

LESSON XLIX

Review

178. *Read and translate:* —

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae deerant.   Erat in proximō lūcus; hunc asȳlum fēcit.   Et statim eō mīra vīs latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit.   Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent, lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent.   Nūsquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est; lūdibrium etiam additum: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperuistis?   Id enim compār foret cōnūbium."   Rōmulus, aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns, lūdōs parat; indīcī deinde fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet.   Multī convēnēre studiō etiam videndae novae urbis, māximē Sabīnī cum līberīs et cōniugibus.   Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque conversae mentēs cum oculīs erant, tum, sīgnō datō, iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt.   Haec fuit statim causa bellī.   Sabīnī enim ob virginēs raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt, et cum Rōmae appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt, quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ierat.   Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī.

NOTES

179. Tell where each of the following verbs is found, and give the principal parts : —

1st Conj.	*3d Conj.*	*3d Conj.*	*Irregular Verbs*
dissimulāns	conversae erant	peterent	deerant
parat	discurrunt	additum	erat
appropinquārent	rapiunt	indīcī	fuit
datō	sūmpsērunt		ierat
	nactī sunt	*4th Conj.*	praeerat
2d Conj.	petītum	audīta est	
habērent	fēcerat	aperuistis	
iubeō	cōnfūgit	convēnēre	
videndae	mīsit	vēnit	

For what word is **foret** used?

How is the Pres. Pass. Inf. formed?

Inflect the Pres. Act. and Pass. of **rapiō**; the Impf.; the Future.

Give the meanings of **cum**.

What case or cases are used with the following prepositions? —

in	ā *or* ab	ob
ad	circā	adversus
inter	cum	extrā

Write the Gen. sing. of **is, hīc, ipse, īdem, quī, quis, ūnus, alius, sōlus**. Write the Dat. sing. of the same words.

Write the Gen. plu. of **urbs, vīs, gentēs, mentēs, arcī**.

Give the classes of **i** nouns. What ones are declined like consonant nouns in the sing. ? In what case is the **i** of the stem always found?

Give the synopsis of **eō** in the Ind. Act.

The Pres. Inf. Act. being given, how may the Impf. Subj. be formed?

Give the synopsis of the Indic. of **dēsum** and **praesum**.

Write the former and latter Supines of **parō, habeō, mīsit, audiō**.

<div style="text-align:center">EXERCISE</div>

180. When Romulus founded[1] a city on the Tiber, inhabitants were wanting. So he made a grove, which was near by, an asylum. Many robbers and shepherds came thither. Then they had inhabitants, but wives were wanting. The envoys, whom he sent round about the neighboring tribes, were nowhere heard kindly. So Romulus prepared games, and ordered them to be proclaimed to the neighbors. Many Sabines came to the new city with (their) wives and children. At a given signal the Roman youth seized the maidens.

———o·o;o;o·o———

LESSON L

181. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī exercitum suum in Capitōlium perdūxisset. Illa petiit, quod Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent, vidēlicet et aureōs ānulōs et armillās.

Titus Tatius, a proper name.
optiō, -ōnis, f., *a choice.*
mūnus, mūneris, n., *a present, gift.*
sī, conj., *if.*
exercitus, -ūs, m., *an army.*
suus, -a, -um, *his, hers, its, theirs.* Here it means *his.*
Capitōlium, -ī, n., *the Capitol.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *lead, conduct.*
illa, *she.*
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left.*
manus, -ūs, f., *a hand.*
vidēlicet, adv., *to wit, namely.*
ānulus, -ī, m., *a ring.*
armilla, -ae, f., *a bracelet.*
aureus, -a, -um, adj., *golden.*

---

[1] Impf. Subj.

NOTES

182. **Tarpēiae** is the indirect object of **dedit**; **optiōnem**, the direct object.

dedit: give the principal parts and the synopsis.

exercitum: decline like **vāgītus (107** (a)).

suum is a poss. pron., from **suus, -a, -um**, declined like **bonus. Suus** and the reflexive **suī** generally refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand; sometimes, when in a subordinate clause, they refer to the subject of the principal clause.   Here **suum** refers to **Titus Tatius**, the subject of the principal clause. **exercitum suum** may mean *his army* or *her army* or *their army*, according as the subject referred to is masculine or feminine, singular or plural.   Thus, —

Rex exercitum suum perdūxit, *the king conducted* HIS *army*.

Regīna exercitum suum perdūxit, *the queen conducted* HER *army*.

Ducēs exercitum suum perdūxērunt, *the leaders conducted* THEIR *army*.

Capitōlium, the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill.

perdūxisset, Plupf. Subj. Its subject is a pronoun referring to Tarpeia. *If she would lead*, etc. Cf. **perdūxērunt**, Lesson XXXV.

Illa is a demons. pron., from **ille**. It is thus declined : —

(a)

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	ĭlle	ĭlla	ĭllud	ĭllī	ĭllae	ĭlla
Gen.	illīus	illīus	illīus	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	ĭllī	ĭllī	ĭllī	ĭllīs	ĭllīs	ĭllīs
Acc.	ĭllum	ĭllam	ĭllud	ĭllōs	ĭllās	ĭlla
Abl.	ĭllō	ĭllā	ĭllō	ĭllīs	ĭllīs	ĭllīs

As **hīc** refers to that which is nearer the speaker, and hence is called the demonstrative of the first person, so **ille** refers to that which is more remote from the speaker, and hence is called the demonstrative of the third person.

LAT. LES. — 9

petiit, a shortened form for **petīvit**. Inflect **petiit**. **Id** may be supplied as the object of **petiit** and the antecedent of **quod**.

sinistrīs is an adjective of the First and Second Declensions. It is declined in the masculine like **ager (44)**, in the feminine like a noun of the First Declension, and in the neuter like **bellum (38)**.

(b)

SINGULAR

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	siníster	sinístra	sinístrum
Gen.	sinístrī	sinístrae	sinístrī
Dat.	sinístrō	sinístrae	sinístrō
Acc.	sinístrum	sinístram	sinístrum
Abl.	sinístrō	sinístrā	sinístrō

PLURAL

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	sinístrī	sinístrae	sinístra
Gen.	sinistrōrum	sinistrārum	sinistrōrum
Dat.	sinístrīs	sinístrīs	sinístrīs
Acc.	sinístrōs	sinístrās	sinístra
Abl.	sinístrīs	sinístrīs	sinístrīs

Most adjectives in -**er** of the First and Second Declensions are declined like **sinister**. A few retain the **e** throughout, like **puer (44)**; as, **miser, misera, miserum,** *wretched*.

manibus, Abl. plu., from **manus**. Decline like **vāgītus (107 (a))**.

et ... et, *both ... and.*

183. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Titus Tatius exercitum suum in Capitōlium perdūxit.   2. Optiō mūneris Tarpēiae ā Sabīnōrum duce est data.   3. Rōmānī exercitum suum in urbem perdūxērunt. 4. Tarpēia ānulōs, quōs Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gererent, petiit.   5. Dux Sabīnōrum ānulōs in sinistrā manū gerēbat.   6. Armillās, quās in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant, Tarpēiae dedērunt.   7. Dux ānulōs Tarpēiae darī iūssit.

1. Titus Tatius commanded the army of the Sabines.
2. He gave the choice of a present to the maiden who
was going outside of the city to seek water.   3. He will
lead his army into the Capitolium.   4. Titus Tatius began
to conduct his army to the city.   5. They gave many gifts
to the maiden who had gone to seek water.   6. The father of
the maiden Tarpeia, whom the Sabines fell-in-with when they
approached the city, was-in-charge-of the Roman citadel.

———oo꞉ꙮ꞉oo———

LESSON LI

DEATH OF TARPEIA

184. Quibus dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia
Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit, ubi Tatius scū-
tīs eam obruī iussit; nam et ea in laevīs
habuerant. Sīc impia prōditiō celerī poenā
vindicāta est.   Deinde Rōmulus ad certā-
men prōcessit, et in eō locō, ubi nunc
Forum Rōmānum est, pūgnam cōnseruit.

dolōsē, adv., *craftily, deceitfully.*
prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum,
   to promise.
scūtum, -ī, n., *a shield.*
obruō, -ere, -ruī, -rutum, *to
   overwhelm, bury.*
laeva, -ae, f., *the left hand.*
impius, -a, -um, adj., *wicked,
   impious.*
prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *betrayal,
   treachery.*

celerī, *swift, speedy.*
poena, -ae, f., *punishment.*
vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to
   avenge, punish.*
certāmen, -inis, n., *a contest, a
   combat.*
prōcēdō, -ere, -cessī, ——, *to
   advance, go forth.*
nunc, adv., *now.*
cōnserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to join.*
   With **pūgnam,** *to join battle.*

NOTES

185. Quibus prōmissīs, Ablative Absolute.   For the force of
a rel. pron. beginning a sentence, cf. **quod, 156.**

  scūtīs : Rule XIX.

  et is here emphatic, — *also ;* **et ea =** *these also.*

  celerī is an adj. of the Third Declension, of three terminations.

(*a*) Adjectives of the Third Declension may be divided into
three classes, —

              1. Adjectives of three endings.
              2. Adjectives of two endings.
              3. Adjectives of one ending.

Those of the 1st class have a different form for each gender in
the Nom. sing.   Those of the 2d class have one form for the mas-
culine and feminine, and one for the neuter.   Those of the 3d class
have but one form for all three genders.

Ācer, *keen, eager,* will illustrate the more common form of adjec-
tives of the 1st class, *i.e.* those having three endings.

<h4 align="center">Ācer (st. ācrī-), keen, eager.</h4>

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	ácer	ácris	ácre	ácrēs	ácrēs	ácria
Gen.	ácris	ácris	ácris	ácrium	ácrium	ácrium
Dat.	ácrī	ácrī	ácrī	ácribus	ácribus	ácribus
Acc.	ácrem	ácrem	ácre	ácrēs (-īs)	ácrēs (-īs)	ácria
Abl.	ácrī	ácrī	ácrī	ácribus	ácribus	ácribus

celer is the only adjective of this class that keeps the **e** of the
Nom. through all the forms; thus, —

N. V.	céler	céleris	célere
Gen.	céleris	céleris	céleris
	etc.	etc.	etc.

Prior (153 (*a*)) is an illustration of a class of adjectives of *two*
endings; and **īnfāns (110** (*a*)), of a class of adjectives of *one* ending.

186. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Haec dolōsē prōmissa sunt.   2. Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem dēcrēvit perdūcere.   3. Tatius Sabīnōs in arcem perdūcī iūssit.   4. Tarpēia scūtīs, quae mīlitēs in sinistrīs manibus gessērunt, obruta est.   5. Mūnera Tarpēiae prōmīsērunt sī eōs in Capitōlium perdūxisset.   6. Et scūta in laevīs habuērunt.   7. Forum Rōmānum est in locō ubi Rōmulus pūgnam cōnseruit.

1. Having promised these things deceitfully, they overwhelmed Tarpeia with their shields.   2. He ordered this impious treachery to be avenged with a speedy punishment.   3. At a given signal, they overwhelmed her with their shields.   4. Romulus joined battle where the Roman Forum now is.   5. The Sabines did not give Tarpeia the rings and bracelets which she asked for.

LESSON LII

187. Prīmō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Hostīlius, fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit; cūius interitū cōnsternātī Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hospitēs, imbellēs hostēs. Nunc sciunt, longē aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pūgnāre cum virīs."

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *attack, onset.*

īnsīgnis, -e, adj., *distinguished, prominent.*

fortissimē, adv., *very bravely.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight, contend.*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, *to fall.*

interitus, -ūs, m., *overthrow, downfall, death.*

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to confound, dismay, terrify.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, ——, *to flee, take to flight.*

iam, adv., *now, already.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to cry aloud, bawl.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *to conquer, subdue.*

perfidus, -a, -um, adj., *faithless, treacherous.*

hospes, -itis, m., *entertainer, host.*

imbellis, -e, adj., *unwarlike.*

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to know.*

longē, adv., *by far, greatly.*

esse, *to be.* Pres. Inf. of **sum.**

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight.*

NOTES

188. Prīmus is the superlative of the comparative **prior (153** *(a)).* It has no positive.

Īnsīgnis is an adj. of the Third Declension, belonging to the class having two endings **(185 *(a)*)**. It is thus declined : —

(a) **Īnsīgnis (st. īnsīgni-).**

| | SINGULAR | | PLURAL | |
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	īnsīgnis	īnsīgne	īnsīgnēs	īnsīgnia
Gen.	īnsīgnis	īnsīgnis	īnsīgnium	īnsīgnium
Dat.	īnsīgnī	īnsīgnī	īnsīgnibus	īnsīgnibus
Acc.	īnsīgnem	īnsīgne	īnsīgnīs (-ēs)	īnsīgnia
Abl.	īnsīgnī	īnsīgnī	īnsīgnibus	īnsīgnibus

Notice that the Abl. sing. ends in **-ī**, the Gen. plu. in **-ium**, and the neut. plu. Nom. and Acc. in **-ia**.

In the same way decline **imbellis**; also **servīlis**.

nōmine: Rule XXIV.

cūius interitū, *at his downfall.* Rule XIX.

clāmitō is a *frequentative* or *intensive* verb, derived from **clāmō,** *to cry, to shout.* These verbs end in **-tō** or **-itō,** and denote *repeated* or *intensive* action. They are usually formed from the supine stem, with some vowel changes, as of **ā** to **i**; as, **clāmō,** *to cry, shout,*

clāmitō, *to cry aloud;* **volō,** *to fly,* **volitō,** *to flit.*   All verbs of this class are of the First Conjugation.

hostēs, in apposition with **hospitēs.**

longē aliud esse ... aliud pūgnāre, *that it is one thing ... a far different thing,* etc.   Notice that the Latin places **longē** in the first clause, while in English the emphatic adverb *far* is placed in the second clause.

esse is an infinitive depending upon **sciunt,** with **rapere** for a subject.

pūgnāre is the subject of **esse** to be supplied.

Decline **impetū** and **interitū.**

Give the synopsis of **fugere** and **rapere** in the Ind. Act.

Give the Imperfect Subjunctive of **fugere, rapere, esse, pūgnāre** (**141** (*a*)).

Decline **cūius, aliud,** and **virīs.**

The Infinitive

The Infinitive may be used as an appositive, or as the subject, object, or complement of a verb.

Rule. — *After verbs of* THINKING, SAYING, KNOWING, BELIEVING, PERCEIVING, *and the like, the Infinitive is used with a Subject Accusative;* as, —

Dīxit sē audīre, *he said that he heard.*

Putat hostēs esse pūgnātūrōs, *he thinks that the enemy will fight.*

Audīvit Caesarem in Galliam vēnisse, *he heard that Cæsar had come into Gaul.*

In Latin, just as in English, the Infinitive is used, without any subject, after many verbs to complete their meaning; as, —

Rōmānī fugere coepērunt, *the Romans began to flee.*

Auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre, *they determined to consult the auspices.*

The tenses of the Infinitive represent the time as *present, past,* or *future,* relatively to the time of the principal verb.

189. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Multī Rōmānī fortissimē dīmicantēs cecidērunt. 2. Vir inter Sabīnōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Tatius, Tarpēiam scūtīs obruī iūssit. 3. Prīmō impetū imbellēs hostēs fugere coepērunt. 4. Nunc sciunt Rōmānōs fortissimē pūgnāre. 5. Longē aliud est ad certāmen prōcēdere, aliud hostēs vincere. 6. Hostīlī interitū, in arcem fugērunt. 7. Fortissimē Sabīnī cum Rōmā-nīs pūgnābant.

1. Romulus joined battle with the Sabines. 2. Having armed the men, he cried out, "We will conquer the faithless Sabines." 3. At the first onset, a man renowned among the Romans defended himself by force. 4. Hostilius, who fell at the first onset, was a man renowned among the Romans. 5. The Romans, terrified at the downfall of their leader, began to flee into the place where the Roman Forum now is.

———oo✦o✦oo———

LESSON LIII

190. Tunc Rōmulus arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit et exercitus seu forte seu dīvīnitus restitit. Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs crīnibus passīs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia īnferre et hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs pācem conciliārunt.

arma, -ōrum, n., *arms, weapons.*
   Sing. wanting.
caelum, -ī, n., *heaven.* Plu.
   wanting.
tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum,
   to *lift, raise.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter,
   Jove.*
aedis or aedēs, -is, f., *a tem-
   ple.*
voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *to
   vow, promise solemnly.*

seu . . . seu, *whether . . . or.*

dīvīnitus, adv., *by divine influence, providentially.*

resistō, -ere, restitī, ——, *to stand back, halt, stop.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to restore, renew.*

mulier, -eris, f., *a woman.*

crīnis, -is, m., *the hair.*

passus, -a, -um, adj., *outspread, disheveled.*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *to venture, dare.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *a missile, javelin, dart.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fly.*

īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātum, *to bring in* or *against.* Sē īnferre = *to betake themselves, present themselves.* Sē means *himself, herself, itself,* or *themselves,* according to the number and person of the subject.

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence.* hinc . . . hinc, *on this side . . . on that side; on one side . . . on the other.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to plead, entreat.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to procure, bring about.*

NOTES

191. (*a*) **Iuppiter** is declined as follows: —

N. V.	Iúppiter
Gen.	Ióvis
Dat.	Ióvī
Acc.	Ióvem
Abl.	Ióve

aedem is declined like **hostis (161).** In the sing., *temple;* in the plu., *house, palace.*

exercitus, subject of **restitit.** Decline in full.

raptae: translate by a relative clause, — *the women who had been carried off.*

crīnibus passīs, Ablative Absolute. **crīnis** is masc. by exception to **67.** 2. Used mostly in the plural.

ausae sunt: cf. **solitus esset (136).** Such verbs as these that have the parts from the pres. stem regular, and have no perf.

stem, but appear as deponent verbs in the parts usually formed from the perfect stem, are called *semi-deponent* verbs.

īnferre is compounded of the prep. **in** and the irregular verb **ferō**, *to bear*. The principal parts of **ferō** are, —

> *Active.* **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum.**
> *Passive.* **feror, ferrī, lātus sum.**

It is inflected in the Present as follows : —

(*b*)	ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
1.	fér-ō	fér-imus	1. fér-or	fér-imur
2.	fer-s	fér-tis	2. fér-ris	fer-íminī
3.	fer-t	fér-unt	3. fér-tur	fer-úntur

It will be observed that the endings beginning with **t, s,** and **r** are added directly to the root **fer-.** **fers** is for **feris**; **fert** and **fertis** are for **ferit** and **feritis**; **ferris** and **fertur** are for **fereris** and **feritur**. The Inf. **ferre** is for **ferere**, and **ferrī** for **ferī**. The other parts of the Indicative are regular.

Impf.	ferēbam, -bās, -bat, etc.	ferēbar, -bāris, -bātur, etc.
Fut.	feram, -ēs, -et, etc.	ferar, -ēris, -ētur, etc.
Perf.	tulī, -istī, -it, etc.	lātus, -a, -um, sum, es, est, etc.
Plupf.	tuleram, -erās, -erat, etc.	lātus, -a, -um, eram, erās, erat, etc.
Fut. Perf.	tulerō, -eris, -erit, etc.	lātus, -a, -um, erō, eris, erit, etc.

The Impf. Subj. is **ferrem, ferrēs, ferret,** etc.

ōrantēs agrees with **mulierēs**, and has for its objects **patrēs** and **virōs.** **virōs** here means *husbands*.

pāx, like many other monosyllabic nouns of the Third Declension, has no Gen. plural.

conciliārunt, for **conciliāvērunt.** Cf. **ierat (175).** Perfects in **-āvī, -ēvī,** and **-īvī,** and the tenses derived from them, often omit **v,** and contract the two vowels into **ā, ē,** and **ī** respectively.

Give all the participles of **tollēns.** Synopsis of **vōvit.**

Synopsis of **restitit** in the Act. voice.

Decline **mulierēs, crīnibus,** and **virōs** in full.

192. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Tunc Rōmulus, proeliō redintegrātō, arma ad caelum sustulit. 2. Rōmulus Iovī aedem vovēre dēcrēvit. 3. Rōmānī proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. 4. Virginēs sē inter tēla volantia īnferēbant. 5. Exercitus, quī seu forte seu dīvīnitus restiterat, proelium redintegrābat. 6. Sē inter tēla volantia īnferentēs, hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrāvērunt. 7. Mulierēs crīnibus passīs ausae sunt patrēs ōrāre. 8. Mulierēs, quae ā iuvenibus raptae erant, pācem conciliārunt.

1. When the Sabines were conquering[1] the Romans, Romulus vowed a temple to Jove. 2. The women, with dishevelled hair, betook themselves among the enemy. 3. The women who had been carried off entreated their fathers and husbands. 4. The women, whom the Roman youths had carried off, brought about peace. 5. When Romulus raised[1] his arms towards heaven, the army providentially halted.

————∞∘⚫∘∞————

LESSON LIV

Review

193. Read in review the Latin given in Lessons L.– LIII.

NOTES

To whom do **suus** and **suī** usually refer? — Difference between **hīc** and **ille**? — Give the Dat. and Acc. sing. and plu. of **sinister**

---

[1] Cf. **cum . . . comparāret (140)** and **cum . . . appropinquārent (175).**

and **ille.** — Give the classes of adjectives in the 3d Decl. — Write the Gen. and Acc. sing. and plu. of **īnsīgnis, ācer, celer.** — Decline **crīnibus** in the sing. — Give the synopsis of **ferō** in the Ind. Act. and Pass. Inflect the Pres. Tense, Ind. Mode, and the Impf. Tense, Subj. Mode.

Principal parts of **dedit, gererent, obruī, prōcessit, cōnseruit, cecidit, fugere, vīcimus, rapere, tollēns, vōvit, restitit, ausae sunt.** — Give the Gen. and Voc. sing. of **Hostīlius.** — Decline together **impia prōditiō; celerī poenā.** — What kind of a verb is **clāmitō**? In what conjugation are such verbs? — What kind of a verb is **ausae sunt**? What are the peculiarities of these verbs? — Write in Latin, in two ways, "*on the left hands.*" — Give two Latin words for *to fight;* two words for *temple;* two words for *army.*

———∘∘⟡∘∘———

LESSON LV

194. Rōmulus foedere cum Tatiō īctō et Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērum nōn ita multō post occīsō Tatiō ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis reccidit. Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem.

foedus, -eris, n., *a league, treaty.*

īcō, -ere, īcī, īctum, to *strike.* With **foedus,** *to enter into a league* or *treaty.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to receive.*

sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to hold in common, to share.*

vērum, adv., *but.*

post, adv., *after, afterwards.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, *to kill, slay.*

potentātus, -ūs, m., *power, dominion.*

omnis, adj., *every, all.*

recidō, -ere, -reccidī, -recāsum, *to fall back, to return.*

centum, numeral adj., *one hundred.*

ē or **ex,** prep., *from, out of.*

senior, -ōris, adj., *older, elder.*

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *to choose, to elect, to select.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *counsel, advice.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *to do, perform, conduct.*

senātor, -ōris, m., *a senator.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to name.*

propter, prep., *on account of.* With the Acc. only.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., *age, old age.*

NOTES

195. What is the construction of **foedere īctō**? — **nōn ita multō post** = *not by so much afterwards, not very long afterwards.* Compare **aliquot ante annīs,** *before by several years,* and **ūnō diē longior,** *longer by one day.* These expressions illustrate the following

Rule. — *The* DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE *is expressed by the Ablative.*

potentātus: decline like **vāgītus (107** (*a*)). — **omnis,** an adj. of the 3d Decl., with two terminations. Decline like **īnsīgnis (188** (*a*)), —

Nom.	ómnis	ómne
Gen.	ómnis	ómnis
	etc.	etc.

Centum is indeclinable, as are all numerals from *four* to *one hundred* inclusive. It is here used as a noun, the object of **ēlēgit.** — **seniōribus,** an adj. in the comparative degree, used as a noun, *the elders.* — The clause, **quōrum . . . ageret,** expresses purpose; *in order that he might do everything with their advice.* **quōrum** = **ut eōrum.**

(*a*) Examine the following clauses : —

Ut eum subole prīvāret.   Lesson XX.

Haud procul erat quīn nepōtem āgnōsceret.   Lesson XXXVI.

Timēbam nē hostis venīret, *I feared lest the enemy would come.*

Nōn recūsābam quōminus dīceret, *I did not object to his saying.*

Castella commūnīvit, quō facilius eōs prohibēre posset, *he fortified the strongholds in order that he might the more easily be able to prevent them.*

Observe that the subjunctives in these sentences are in clauses denoting purpose or result. Hence the following

Rule. — *Clauses denoting* PURPOSE *or* RESULT *take the Subjunctive after* **ut, nē, quō, quīn, quōminus,** *or a Relative.*[1]

quōs and **senātōrēs** are Accusatives, after **nōmināvit.** Cf. Rule XVII. — Give the Participles, both voices, of **īctō** and **occīsō.** — Give the synopsis, in the Ind. Act. and Pass. Voices, of **recēpit, sociāvit, ēlēgit, ageret, nōmināvit.** — Decline **foedere** and **senectūtem.**

196. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmulus Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit ut rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāret. 2. Nōn ita multō post omnēs Sabīnī in urbem receptī sunt. 3. Titus Tatius, rēx Sabīnōrum, ā Rōmānīs occīsus est. 4. Cum Sabīnī rēgnum cum Rōmānīs sociārent, ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis reccidit. 5. Virōs, quōs ex seniōribus ēlēgit, senātōrēs nōmināvit. 6. Rōmulus virōs ēlēgit quī foedus cum Sabīnīs īcerent. 7. Centum, quōs Rōmulus ēlēgerat, senātōrēs nōminātī sunt propter senectūtem.

1. Why did Romulus choose a hundred from the elders? 2. He did everything with the advice of the men whom he had chosen from the elders. 3. After the league with the

---

[1] Clauses of Purpose and Result readily pass into substantive clauses, and may be used as subject or object of the sentences in which they are found, or may serve as appositives. These uses may best be learned by a study of them in the sentences as they occur in reading.

Sabines was entered into,[1] all the power returned to Romulus.   4. He chose a hundred senators, who were-to-do[2] everything with his (*suus*) advice.   5. Then he named those whom he had chosen senators.   6. The Sabines, having been received into the city, entered into a league with the Romans.

———ooｺｏｺoo———

LESSON LVI

197.   Trēs equitum centuriās cōnstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit.   Hīs ita ōrdinātīs, cum ad exercitum lūstrandum cōntiōnem in campō ad Caprae palūdem habēret, subitō coorta est tempestās cum māgnō fragōre tonitribusque et Rōmulus ē cōnspectū ablātus est.

trēs, tria, numeral adj., *three*.

centuria, -ae, f., *a division of a hundred, a century*.

cōnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *to form, establish, build.*

trīgintā, numeral adj., *thirty*.

cūria, -ae, f., *a curia*.

distribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *to distribute, apportion, divide*.

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to set in order, arrange*.

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to review*.

cōntiō, -ōnis, f., *a meeting, assembly*.

campus, -ī, m., *a plain, field*.

capra, -ae, f., *a she-goat*.   **Caprae palūs**, *the Goat's Pool*.

palūs, -ūdis, f., *a swamp, marsh, pool*.

subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

coorior, -īrī, -ortus sum, *to come forth, arise, break forth*.

tempestās, -ātis, f., *a storm, tempest*.

fragor, -ōris, m., *a crashing, din, noise*.

tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder*.   Sometimes neut. in the plu.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight, view*.

auferō, -erre, abstulī, ablātum, *to take away, carry off.*

---

[1] Ablative Absolute.   [2] Subjunctive.

NOTES

198. The following are the first twelve cardinal numbers : —

ūnus, -a, -um, *one.*	**septem,** *seven.*
duo, duae, duo, *two.*	**octō,** *eight.*
trēs, tria, *three.*	**novem,** *nine.*
quattuor, *four.*	**decem,** *ten.*
quīnque, *five.*	**ūndecim,** *eleven.*
sex, *six.*	**duodecim,** *twelve.*

(*a*) The first three are declined. For the declension of **ūnus**, cf. **156** (*a*). — **duo** and **trēs** are thus declined : —

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
N. V.	dúo	dúae	dúo	trēs	tría
Gen.	duórum	duárum	duórum	tríum	tríum
Dat.	duóbus	duábus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus
Acc.	dúōs (duo)	dúās	dúo	trēs (-īs)	tría
Abl.	duóbus	duábus	duóbus	tríbus	tríbus

Observe that **trēs** is declined like the plu. of **īnsīgnis (188** (*a*)).

centuriās : a century was a division of the Roman people, consisting originally of one hundred men selected from the wealthier class. They served in the army on horseback, and hence were called **equitēs.** — **cūriās** : each of the three tribes of the Roman people — Ramnes, Tities, and Luceres — was divided into ten **cūriae**, or divisions, making thirty in all. — **cōnstituit** and **distribuit** are Perfects, although the forms would be the same were they Presents. — **ad exercitum lūstrandum,** *for the purpose of reviewing the army.* Cf. **172**, n. on **videndae.** **lūstrandum** is a Gerundive, agreeing with **exercitum.**

campō, *i.e.* the *Campus Martius,* or field of Mars, a plain between the hills upon which Rome was built and the Tiber. — **coorta = con** or **cum + orior.** Cf. **ortā,** Lesson XXXIX. A deponent verb. — **ablātus est** : Perf. Pass. from **auferō = ab + ferō.** **Ab** becomes **au** before **f,** **abs** before **t,** and retains the form **ab** before **l.** — Decline **exercitum, palūdem, fragōre, tonitribus,** and **cōnspectū.**

199. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Trēs equitum centuriae ā Rōmulō cōnstitūtae sunt.
2. Cūr nōn in quattuor cūriās Rōmulus populum distri-
buit? 3. Haec ita ōrdināta sunt et deinde cōntiōnem in
campō ad Caprae palūdem habuit. 4. Quīnque Sabīnī ā
septem Rōmānīs victī sunt. 5. Māgnus fragor tonitrusque
sunt audītī. 6. Ūnus Rōmānus mīles cum tribus Sabīnīs
pūgnābat. 7. Subitō omnēs ex cōnspectū sunt ablātī.
8. Novem senātōrēs cum līberīs occīsī sunt. 9. Populus
fragōrem tonitrumque audīvit.

1. Romulus held an assembly in the plain to review the
horsemen. 2. A great storm having arisen, suddenly Romu-
lus was taken away out of sight. 3. He reviewed the army
near the Goat's Pool. 4. He determined to establish eight
centuries of horsemen. 5. We shall divide the people into
eleven curiae. 6. Four Sabines will not fight with eight
Romans. 7. The soldiers, whom he was reviewing in the
plain, suddenly began to flee. 8. Why did he not divide
the horsemen into two centuries? 9. The Goat's Pool was
in the field of Mars.

200.

statim, *on the spot, immediately, without first doing something else.*

repente, *suddenly, contrary to expectation.*

subitō, *suddenly, but having no element of surprise, as* **repente** *has.*

contentiō, *a contest or struggle, involving exertion.*

certāmen, *a contest, with special reference to the rivalry between the
parties engaged in it.*

pūgna (allied to **pūgnus,** *a fist*), *a fight, whether with fists, or between
two armies considered as two great bodies.*

proelium, *a battle, an engagement in a military sense.*

LESSON LVII

201. Ad deōs trānsisse vulgō crēditus est; cuī reī fidem
fēcit Iūlius Proculus, vir nōbilis. Ortā enim inter patrēs et
plēbem sēditiōne, in cōntiōnem prōcēssit iūreiūrandō adfīr-
māns vīsum ā sē Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā.

deus, deī, m., *a god.*
trānseō (trāns, *across, over,* and
    eō, *to go*), *to pass over, cross
    over.*
vulgō, adv., *commonly, gener-
    ally.*
crēdō, -ere, -crēdidī, -itum, *to
    believe.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, faith, belief.*
nōbilis, -e, adj., *high-born, noble,
    famous.*

plēbēs, -ēī, or **plēbs, plēbis,** f.,
    the common people, plebeians.
sēditiō, -ōnis, f., *dissension,
    strife, quarrel.*
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, n.,
    an oath.
adfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to
    assert, declare.*
augustior, -ōris, adj., *more ma-
    jestic, more noble.*
fōrma, -ae, f., *form, figure.*

NOTES

202. trānsisse, for **transīvisse,** is the Perf. Inf. of **trānseō.**
The Perf. Inf. Act. is always formed by adding **-isse** to the perf.
stem of the verb; thus, —

(a) { amāv-,
     { amāvisse, *to have loved.*

{ monu-,
{ monuisse, *to have warned.*

{ rēx-,
{ rēxisse, *to have ruled.*

{ audīv-,
{ audīvisse, *to have heard.*

{ īv- (perf. stem of **eō**),
{ īvisse, *to have gone.*

{ fu- (perf. stem of **sum**),
{ fuisse, *to have been.*

{ tul- (perf. stem of **ferō**),
{ tulisse, *to have borne.*

The Plupf. Subj. Act. may be formed from the Perf. Inf. Act.,
just as the Impf. Subj. is formed from the Pres. Inf. Act. (cf.

141 (*a*)). By adding the personal endings of the Act. Voice to the Perf. Inf. Act., we shall have the Plupf. Subj.; thus, —

(*b*)
1.	amāvíssem	amāvissḗmus
2.	amāvíssēs	amāvissḗtis
3.	amāvísset	amāvíssent

monuisse-
rēxisse-
audīvisse- } -m, -s, -t. } -mus, -tis, -nt.

Give the Perf. Inf. and the Plupf. Subj. Act. of **dūcō, trānseō, faciō, pūgnō, habeō,** and **veniō, eō, sum,** and **ferō.**

crēditus est, *he was believed;* the personal construction, instead of the impersonal, which would be more natural in English, *it was believed that he,* etc. — **cui reī fidem fēcit,** *made belief for this thing = caused this to be believed.* **fidēs** has no plural. — **vir :** decline (**44**). — **nōbilis :** decline like **īnsīgnis (188** (*a*)). — **plēbem** comes either from **plēbs,** of the 3d Decl., or from **plēbēs,** of the 5th Decl. It has no plural in either declension. — **iūreiūrandō** is compounded of **iūs, iūris,** and **iūrandum, -ī,** the former of the 3d Decl., and the latter of the 2d Decl. Both parts are inflected, and both parts are neuter. **iūraiūranda** is the only form found in the plural. — **vīsum,** sc. **esse** ; **vīsum esse** is the Perf. Pass. Inf. of **videō.** **Rōmulum** is here the subject. For the use of the Inf., cf. Rule XXXI.

(*c*) The Perf. Pass. Inf. of verbs is regularly formed by joining **esse,** the Pres. Inf. of **sum,** to the Perf. Pass. Part.; as, —

amātus esse, *to have been loved.* **rēctus esse,** *to have been ruled.*
monitus esse, *to have been warned.* **audītus esse,** *to have been heard.*

The Participles in these forms must, of course, agree with the subject in gender, number, and case. Cf. Rule IV. Thus **vīsum,** in **vīsum esse,** agrees with the subject **Rōmulum.** We have seen (**202** (*b*)) that the Plupf. Subj. Act. may be formed from the Perf. Inf. Act. by the addition of the personal endings. In a somewhat similar manner, the Plupf. Subj. Pass. may be formed from the Perf. Inf. Pass. : —

amắtus, -a, -um ⎤   amắtī, -ae, -a ⎤
mónitus, -a, -um ⎮ éssem, éssēs,   mónitī, -ae, -a ⎮ essḗmus, essḗtis,
rḗctus, -a, -um ⎮   ésset.   rḗctī, -ae, -a ⎮   éssent.
audītus, -a, -um ⎦   audītī, -ae, -a ⎦

sē : decline (110 (*b*)). To whom does sē refer? — augustiōre :
decline like prior (153 (*a*)) ; m. and f., augustior, n. augustius.
— augustiōre fōrmā, *in more majestic form.*

203. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Rōmulus ad deōs trānsiit.   2. Dī[1] omnia regunt.
3. Sēditiō enim inter Sabīnōs et Rōmānōs orta est.
4. Proculus, vir nōbilis, quī Rōmulum vīderat, in cōn-
tiōnem prōcessit.   5. Iūreiūrandō adfīrmāvit ā sē Rōmu-
lum vīsum esse.   6. Rōmānī Rōmulum ad deōs trānsīsse
crēdidērunt.   7. Cum in cōntiōnem prōcessisset, adfīrmā-
vit sē vīdisse Rōmulum.   8. Rōmulus vīsus esse ā Proculō,
virō nōbilī, crēditus est.

1. A strife arose between the husbands and their wives.
2. Romulus, in more majestic form, was seen by the fathers.
3. Proculus, a noble man, declared that he had seen Romu-
lus.   4. When Romulus had passed to the gods, a strife
arose among the common people.   5. They caused this to
be believed.[2]   6. He declared with an oath that Romulus
had been taken away out of sight.

---

[1] Nom. plu.   [2] Cf. cuī reī, etc.

ROMULUS AS QUIRINUS

LESSON LVIII

204. In cōntiōnem prōcēssit iūreiūrandō adfīrmāns
vīsum ā sē Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā, eundemque prae-
cipere ut sēditiōnibus abstinērent et rem mīlitārem cole-
rent; futūrum ut omnium gentium dominī exsisterent.
Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō cōnstitūta, ipse prō deō
cultus et Quirīnus est appellātus.

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,
    to enjoin, direct, order.
ut, conj., that.
abstineō, -ēre, -uī -tentum, to
    keep from, refrain from.
mīlitāris, -e, adj., military, war-
    like.
colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, to cher-
    ish, cultivate, worship.

futūrum, sc. **esse,** to be about to
    be, would be, would come to
    pass.
exsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, to
    stand forth, become.
collis, -is, m., a hill.
Quirīnālis, -e, adj., Quirinal.
prō, prep. with Abl. only, for,
    in the place of.

NOTES

205. eundem, Acc. sing. masc., from **īdem.** Write out the
declension in full (**150**). It refers to **Rōmulum,** and is the subject
of the Inf. **praecipere.** And that the same directed, etc.

Rule. — *The subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.*

Write the Pres. and Perf. Inf., Act. and Pass., of **praecipere.** —
sēditiōnibus : Rule XX. — Give the synopsis of the Ind. Act. and
Pass. of **abstinērent.** Write the Plupf. Subj. Act., and the Perf.
Inf. Act. — Rule for the mode of **abstinērent** and **colerent?** Rule
XXXII.— Decline **rem mīlitārem** = *the art of war.*— Give the Perf.
Inf. Act. and the Plupf. Subj. Act. of **colerent.**—**futūrum,** sc. **esse.**
futūrum esse is the Fut. Inf. of **sum.** It is used impersonally, and
depends upon **adfīrmāns.** *Declaring that it would come to pass that,*
etc.   Instead of **futūrum esse, fore** is often used.

(*a*) The Fut. Inf. Act. is formed by joining **esse** to the Fut. Act. Part. Cf. **128**. For example : —

> **amātūrus esse**, *to be about to love* (would love).
> **monitūrus esse**, *to be about to warn*, etc.
> **rēctūrus esse**, *to be about to rule*, etc.
> **audītūrus esse**, *to be about to hear*, etc.

The Fut. Inf. Pass. is formed by joining **īrī**, the Pres. Inf. Pass. of **eō**, to the Supine in **-um**; thus, —

> **amātum īrī**, *to be about to be loved* (would be loved).
> **monitum īrī**, *to be about to be warned*, etc.
> **rēctum īrī**, *to be about to be ruled*, etc.
> **audītum īrī**, *to be about to be heard*, etc.

dominī, predicate Nom. after **exsisterent**, a neuter verb. Rule III. — The clause **ut . . . exsisterent** is the subject of **futūrum esse**. — **collis** is masc. by exception to **67.** 2. It has rarely **ī** in the Abl. sing. — Decline together **colle Quirīnālī**. Rome was built on seven hills, — the Palatine, the Capitoline, the Aventine, the Coelian, the Esquiline, the Viminal, and the Quirinal. The Quirinal was in the northern part of the city. — **Rōmulō** is Dat., depending upon **cōnstitūta**; *was built to Romulus.* — **cōnstitūta**, sc. **est**; also sc. **et** before **ipse**. — Decline **ipse** (**166** (*a*)).

prō deō = *as a god.* **deus** is declined as follows : —

(*b*)

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	déus	(déī) díī *or* dī
Gen.	déī	deōrum *or* déūm
Dat.	déō	(déīs) díīs, dīs
Acc.	déum	déōs
Abl.	déō	(déīs) díīs, dīs

Observe that the Voc. of **deus** is the same as the Nom. The forms **diī**, **dī**, and **diīs**, **dīs**, are preferable to **deī** and **deīs**.

cultus, sc. **est**, *and he himself was worshipped*, etc. — **Quirīnus**, predicate Nom. — Write all the Infinitives, Act. and Pass., of **colō**, **appellō**, and **cōnstituō**.

(c) The regular verb has three Infinitives in the Active and three in the Passive Voice, viz. the Present, the Future, and the Perfect. We have now had all of these. The Infinitives of **amō, moneō, regō**, and **audiō** are as follows: —

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
Pres.	amā́re	amā́rī	régere	régī
Perf.	amāvísse	amā́tus esse	rēxísse	réctus esse
Fut.	amātū́rus esse	amā́tum īrī	rēctū́rus esse	réctum īrī
Pres.	monḗre	monḗrī	audī́re	audī́rī
Perf.	monuísse	mónitus esse	audīvísse	audī́tus esse
Fut.	monitū́rus esse	mónitum īrī	audītū́rus esse	audī́tum īrī

Of **sum** the Infinitives are: Pres. **esse**, Perf. **fuisse**, Fut. **futūrum esse**.

206. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Īdem praecḗpit ut Rōmānī sēditiōnibus abstinḗrent.
2. Adfīrmāvit futūrum ut rem mīlitārem colerent.   3. Omnium gentium dominī exsistent.   4. Aedem in colle Quirīnālī Rōmulō cōnstituērunt.   5. Adfīrmāvit Rōmulum prō deō cultum īrī.   6. Incolae urbis, quam Rōmulus condiderat, rem mīlitārem colent.   7. Plēbēs Rōmāna clāmitābat sē Rōmulum Quirīnum appellātūram esse.

1. They built a temple to the gods in the city.   2. By the advice of Romulus, the people will keep from strife.   3. He declared with an oath that he would build a temple to Romulus.   4. He said that Romulus had been worshipped as a god.[1]   5. They said that they had built a temple to Romulus.[2]
6. To have called; to have been called; to be about to refrain from.   7. To be worshipped; to be about to be worshipped.

---

[1] Literally, *He said Romulus to have been worshipped*, etc.
[2] *They said themselves to have built*, etc.

LESSON LIX

207. Read in review the Latin given in Lessons LV.-
LVIII.

NOTES

Give two Latin words meaning *not;* three meaning *to kill.* —
What is the difference in meaning between **pūgna** and **proelium**?
— Give the Latin for *not very long after.* — Give the cardinal num-
bers from one to twelve. What ones are declined? What word
means *thirty?* what *one hundred?* — What two ways of expressing
purpose can you give? — What was the Campus Martius, and where
was it situated? — Difference between **statim** and **repente**?

Principal parts of **ablātus est**? — Give all the Participles and
Infinitives, Act. and Pass., of **ageret, nōmināvit, distribuit, recē-
pit.** — Give the Pres. and Perf. Inf. Act., and the Impf. and Plupf.
Subj., of **ferō, cōnstituit, habeō, faciō, prōcēdō,** and **sum.**

What construction follows such words as **nōminō** and **appellō**?

What two words (conjunctions) have we had meaning *for?*

Decline **īdem.**

Give the Infinitives, Act. Voice, of **eō** (Lesson XLVIII.), **ferō**
(Lesson LIII.).

————⚬⚬⚬————

LESSON LX

Numa Pompilius, the Second King of the Romans

208. Succēssit Rōmulō Numa Pompilius, vir inclitā iūsti-
tiā et religiōne. Is Curibus, ex oppidō Sabīnōrum, accītus
est. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, ut populum ferum religiōne
mītigāret, sacra plūrima īnstituit. Āram Vestae cōnsecrāvit,
et īgnem in ārā perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit.

succēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum,
to follow, succeed.

inclitus, -a, -um, adj., celebrated,
renowned.

iūstitia, -ae, f., justice.

religiō, -ōnis, f., religion.

Curēs, -ium, m. and f., Cures,
the chief town of the Sabines.

acciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, to call,
summon, invite.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, rude,
barbarous.

mītigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
make mild, soften, tame.

sacrum, -ī, n., a sacred rite.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj., very
many.

īnstituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, to
found, establish.

āra, -ae, f., an altar.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to
consecrate.

īgnis, -is, m., fire.

perpetuō, adv., constantly, with-
out interruption.

alō, -ere, -uī, altum or alitum,
to nourish, maintain.

NOTES

209. **Rōmulō** : Rule X. — **iūstitiā** and **religiōne** are Ablatives
of *Description* or *Characteristic*, limiting **vir**: *a man of renowned jus-
tice and piety.* Cf. **augustiōre fōrmā**, Lesson LVII. — Examine also
the following examples : —

Caesar trāditur fuisse excelsā statūrā, *Caesar is said to have been*
(a man) *of lofty stature.*

Ūrī sunt figūrā taurī, *the uri are of the form of the bull = have the
form of the bull.*

It will be seen that **iūstitiā, religiōne, fōrmā, statūrā**, and
figūrā are all in the Abl., modifying respectively **vir, Rōmulum,
Caesar**, and **ūrī**, and denoting some quality or characteristic of
these nouns. **figūrā** is accompanied by a limiting Gen.; and the
other Ablatives have adjectives agreeing with them.

Rule. — *A noun with an adjective or a limiting Genitive is
in the Ablative after the verb* **sum** *or another noun, to denote
the* CHARACTER *or* QUALITY *of a person or thing.*

This is called the *Ablative of Description or Characteristic.*

NOTE. — Instead of the Ablative, the Genitive is sometimes used.

Curibus, the Abl., according to Rule XXX.— **Quī cum** = *when he;* the relative at the beginning of a sentence often being equivalent to a personal or demonstrative.— Give the rule for the case of **Rōmam.**— **ut** introduces a purpose clause, hence the Subjunctive **mītigāret.** Rule XXXII.— **īgnem,** masc. by exception to **67.** 2. Cf. **collis (205,** n. on **collis). īgnis** is declined like **hostis (161),** except that the Abl. sing. has usually **ī.**— **alendum** is the Gerundive. *Gave the fire to the virgins to be maintained,* etc. Cf. **ēducandōs (116).** These Gerundives are used to express Purpose.

Rule. — *After verbs of* Giving, Sending, Undertaking, Contracting, *and the like, the Accusative of the Gerundive in agreement with the object is used to express Purpose.*[1]

210. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Numā Pompiliō rēge, vir minimē servīlī indole Rōmam vēnit. 2. Vir inter Sabīnōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Numa, Curibus vēnit. 3. Multī inclitī studiō Rōmā, ex urbe Ītaliae, vēnērunt. 4. Populus Rōmam Numam Pompilium, virum inclitā religiōne, accīvit. Quī cum Rōmam vēnisset, Rōmulō succēssit. 5. Populus ferus religiōne mītigābātur. 6. Dēcrēvit aedem diīs cōnsecrāre ut sacra plūrima īnstitueret. 7. Cum āram Vestae cōnsecrāvisset, īgnem in ārā perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit.

1. Numa Pompilius came from Cures to Rome. 2. When Romulus had been taken away,[2] the people summoned a man of renowned justice from Cures. 3. They said[3] that he had come to Rome in order that he might succeed Romulus. 4. Now they know that Numa has been summoned from a

---

[1] This rule must not be understood to exclude or contradict the rule on p. 142.

[2] Ablative Absolute.   [3] Rule XXXI.

town of the Sabines. 5. He came to Rome in order to establish sacred rites. 6. The altar of Vesta having been consecrated, he gave the fire to the virgins to be constantly maintained upon the altar. 7. He said that he[1] had given the fire to the virgins.

Observe the following English derivatives: —

success	*religion*	*institution*
succeed	*popular*	*consecration*
justice	*populace*	*ailment*
	mitigate	

——∘o⦂⦂o∘——

LESSON LXI

211. Flāminem Iovis sacerdōtem creāvit eumque īnsīgnī veste et curūlī sellā adōrnāvit. Dīcitur quondam ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicuisse. Hīc ingentibus fulminibus in urbem dēmissīs dēscendit in nemus Aventīnum, ubi Numam docuit quibus sacrīs fulmina essent prōcūranda, et praetereā imperī certa pīgnora populō Rōmānō datūrum sē esse prōmīsit.

SELLA CURULIS

flāmen, -inis, m., *a flamen,* — a name given to a priest of one particular deity.
creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to create, choose, make.*
īnsīgnis, -e, adj., *distinguished.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothing, garment, garb.*
curūlis, -e, adj., *curule.*
sella, -ae, f., *seat, chair.*
adōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to furnish, adorn.*

---

[1] Sē.

dīcō, -ere, -xī, dictum, *to say.*

quondam, adv., *once, formerly.*

ēliciō, -ere, -uī, ——, *to draw forth, call down.*

ingēns, -entis, adj., *great.*

fulmen, -inis, n., *lightning, thunderbolt.*

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *to send down, let down.*

dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum, *to come down, descend.*

nemus, -oris, m., *a grove.*

Aventīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Aventine.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *to teach.*

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to take care of, avert.*

praetereā, adv., *moreover.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *certain, definite.*

pīgnus, -oris and -eris, n., *pledge, guaranty.*

NOTES

212. Iovis limits **sacerdōtem.**—**Flāminem** and **sacerdōtem**: Rule XVII.— **īnsīgnī veste** = *with a distinguishing dress.* Decline together. The characteristic garb of the flamen was a pointed cap called the *apex,* a woolen cloak called *laena,* and a laurel wreath.

sella curūlis = *the curule chair,* — the official chair of consuls, praetors, curule aediles, and some other officers, as well as of the flamen of Jupiter. It was ornamented with ivory, and sometimes overlaid with gold. Its form was very simple, closely resembling a common folding camp-stool with curved legs. — **fulminibus dēmissīs**: Ablative Absolute. — **quibus sacrīs,** *by what sacred rites.* Abl. of means.

essent prōcūranda, *were to be averted.* **prōcūranda essent** is in the Pass. Periphrastic Conjugation, which is formed by joining the different parts of the verb **sum** to the Gerundive. It is used to denote *necessity* or *propriety.* The Active Periphrastic Conjugation is formed by joining the different parts of the verb **sum** to the Fut. Act. Participle. It is used to denote *intention* or simple *futurity.* The parts of **sum** are inflected just as they are in forming the Passive Voice of the verb, with the Perf. Pass. Participle. Cf. **138** (*a*).

Active Voice

(a)   *Indicative*

Pres.   **amātūrus, -a, -um sum,** *I am about to love.*
Impf.   **amātūrus, -a, -um eram,** *I was about to love.*
Fut.   **amātūrus, -a, -um erō,** *I shall be about to love.*
Perf.   **amātūrus, -a, -um fuī,** *I have been about to love.*
Plupf.   **amātūrus, -a, -um fueram,** *I had been about to love.*
Fut. Perf. **amātūrus, -a, -um fuerō,** *I shall have been about to love.*

(b)   *Subjunctive*

Pres.   **amātūrus, -a, -um sim, sīs, sit; amātūrī, -ae, -a sīmus, sītis, sint.**
Impf.   **amātūrus, -a, -um essem.**
Perf.   **amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim, fueris, fuerit,** etc.
Plupf.   **amātūrus, -a, -um fuissem.**

Observe, above, the inflection of **sim,** the Pres. Subj. of **sum.** Observe also that **fuerim,** the Perf. Subj. of **sum,** has the same forms as the Fut. Perf. Ind., except in the 1st sing., where it has **fuerim** instead of **fuerō.** Cf. **86.**

214.   Passive Voice

(a)   *Indicative*

Pres.   **amandus, -a, -um sum,** *I am to be loved.*
Impf.   **amandus, -a, -um eram,** *I was to be loved.*
Fut.   **amandus, -a, -um erō,** *I shall have to be loved.*
Perf.   **amandus, -a, -um fuī,** *I have to be loved.*
Plupf.   **amandus, -a, -um fueram,** *I had to be loved.*

(b)   *Subjunctive*

Pres.   **amandus, -a, -um sim.**
Impf.   **amandus, -a, -um essem.**
Perf.   **amandus, -a, -um fuerim.**
Plupf.   **amandus, -a, -um fuissem.**

The Fut. Perf. Ind. of the Passive Periphrastic (**amandus fuerō**) is seldom used.

populō Rōmānō, indirect object of **datūrum esse**. Rule IX. **populus Rōmānus**, like **rēs pūblica** and some other expressions, became a fixed form, and is never found with the words in the reverse order. Give all the Infinitives of **dō**.

215. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Populus Rōmānus Numam Pompilium rēgem creāvit. 2. Numa Iovis sacerdōtem īnsīgnī veste adōrnāvit. 3. Iuppiter ipse in nemus Aventīnum dēscendit. 4. Dīcitur ipsum Iovem in nemus Aventīnum dēscendisse. 5. Dīcitur ipsum Iovem in nemus Aventīnum dēscēnsūrum esse. 6. Fulmina hīs sacrīs sunt prōcūranda. 7. Dīcitur eum docuisse Numam hīs sacrīs fulmina esse prōcūranda. 8. Prōmīsit sē Numam doctūrum esse quibus sacrīs fulmina essent prōcūranda. 9. Dīcitur ingentia fulmina in urbem esse dēmissa. 10. Prōmīsit sē Iovis sacerdōtī curūlem sellam esse datūrum.

1. He promised to give[1] certain pledges of power to the Roman people. 2. He said that he would furnish the flamen of Jupiter with a distinguishing garb. 3. Once Jupiter descended into the grove of the Aventine with a loud noise.[2] 4. The Roman people chose Numa, a man of renowned justice, (as) king. 5. It is said that he promised to teach Numa certain sacred rites. 6. He said, "I will give to ~~you~~ *them* certain pledges of power." 7. He once called down the god himself from heaven. 8. It is said that Numa himself had been taught by what sacred rites thunderbolts were to be averted.

---

[1] Literally, *he promised himself to be about to give.*
[2] Compare **cum māgnō fragōre (197).**

nemus is the common name for a grove or woodland.
lūcus, a sacred grove, a wood consecrated to a deity.
flāmen, a priest of some particular deity.
sacerdōs, the general name for a priest.

———oo⦂o⦂oo———

LESSON LXII

Subjunctive

216. Review the Subjunctive of **sum.** Appendix, **6.**

The Subjunctive has four tenses, — Present, Imperfect, Perfect, and Pluperfect. The Imperfect and Pluperfect have already been given. Cf. **141** (*a*), **202** (*b*) and (*c*).

(*a*) In the *Present Subjunctive* of the 1st Conjugation the final **a** of the verb stem disappears, and the vowel **e** takes its place.

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
1. ámem	amḗmus	1. ámer	amḗmur
2. ámēs	amḗtis	2. amḗris (-re)	amḗminī
3. ámet	áment	3. amḗtur	améntur

In the *Present Subjunctive* of the 2d, 3d, and 4th Conjugations the vowel **a** is added to the *verb stem.* Hence **a** may be called the sign of the Present Subjunctive in these conjugations.

(*b*) *Present Subjunctive*

ACTIVE

mone-
reg- } -am, -ās, -at. } -āmus, -ātis, -ant.
audi-

PASSIVE

mone- ⎫
reg-   ⎬ -ar, -āris (-re), -ātur. ⎫ -āmur, -āminī, -antur.
audi- ⎭   ⎬

Of **eō**: **eam, eās, eat,** etc.   Of **ferō**: Act., **feram, ferās, ferat,** etc.; Pass., **ferar, ferāris (-re), ferātur,** etc.

The *Perfect Subjunctive Active* has the same form as the Future Perfect Indicative, except that the 1st pers. sing. ends in **-erim** instead of **-erō** (**83** and **86**).

The *Perfect Subjunctive Passive* is formed by joining the Present Subjunctive of **sum** to the Perfect Passive Participle of the verb.

(c)   *Perfect Subjunctive*

ACTIVE

amāv-   ⎫
monu-   ⎬ -erim, -eris, -erit. ⎫ -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
rēx-   ⎬   ⎬
audīv- ⎭

Of **eō**: **īverim, īveris, īverit,** etc.   Of **ferō**: **tulerim, tuleris, tulerit,** etc.

(d)   PASSIVE

amātus, -a, -um   ⎫   amātī, -ae, -a   ⎫
monitus, -a, -um ⎬ sim, sīs, sit.   monitī, -ae, -a ⎬ sīmus, sītis, sint.
rēctus, -a, -um   ⎬   rēctī, -ae, -a   ⎬
audītus, -a, -um ⎭   audītī, -ae, -a ⎭

Of **ferō**: **lātus, -a, -um sim, sīs, sit; lātī, -ae, -a sīmus, sītis, sint.**

Give the synopsis of the Indicative and Subjunctive, Active and Passive, of **succēssit, īnstituit, abstinērent, recēpit, iūssit, aperuistī, pūgnāre, ferō,** in the 3d sing. and the 1st plu. Inflect **sum** and **eō** in the Pres. and Perf. Subj. Inflect each of the other verbs given above in the Fut. Perf. Ind. and the Perf. Subj. Act.; in the Fut. Ind. and the Pres. Subj. Pass.

LESSON LXIII

Sequence of Tenses

217. Study the following sentences: —

(*a*)

Rogat, *he asks*	**quid faciant**, *what they are doing,*
Rogābit, *he will ask*	or
Rogāvit, *he has asked*	**quid fēcerint**, *what they did or have*
Rogāverit, *he will have asked*	*done.*

(*b*)

Rogābat, *he was asking*	**quid facerent**, *what they were doing,*
Rogāvit, *he asked*	or
Rogāverat, *he had asked*	**quid fēcissent**, *what they had done.*

(*c*)

Ad urbem venit, *he comes to the city*	
Ad urbem veniet, *he will come to the city*	**ut frūmentum emat**,
Ad urbem vēnit, *he has come to the city*	*in order to buy corn,*
Ad urbem vēnerit, *he will have come to the city*	*to buy corn.*

(*d*)

Ad urbem veniēbat, *he was coming to the city*	**ut frūmentum eme-**
Ad urbem vēnit, *he came to the city*	**ret**, *in order to buy*
Ad urbem vēnerat, *he had come to the city*	*corn, to buy corn.*

(*e*) Notice that the Present and Perfect Subjunctive in the dependent clauses follow one group of tenses, and the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive follow another group of tenses. Observe also that the Perfect Indicative is used in two senses, — one with *have*, called the Pure Perfect or the Perfect Definite, and one without *have*, called the Historical Perfect or the Perfect Indefinite.

(*f*) The tenses of the first group in these examples (those in (*a*) and (*c*)) are called *Principal Tenses,* and the tenses of the second group (those in (*b*) and (*d*)) are called *Historical Tenses.*

PRINCIPAL TENSES	HISTORICAL TENSES
Present,	*Imperfect,*
Future,	*Perfect Indefinite,*
Perfect Definite,	*Pluperfect.*
Future Perfect.	

Rule. — *A Principal Tense in the main clause of a complex sentence is followed by a Principal Tense in the dependent clause; and a Historical Tense in the main clause is followed by a Historical Tense in the dependent clause.*

The Present and Imperfect Tenses in the dependent clause are used for incomplete action; the Perfect and Pluperfect, for completed action.

It should, however, be noted that the Perfect Definite, though classed with the Principal Tenses, often takes the sequence of the Historical Tenses; *i.e.* is followed, in the dependent clause, by the Imperfect or Pluperfect.

Construction with **Cum**

218. Study the following sentences : —

1. **Librōs, cum est ōtium, legere soleō,** *when there is leisure, I am wont to read books.*
2. **Cum vēneris, cōgnōscēs,** *when you come* (shall have come), *you will find out.*
3. **Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ad eum rūmōrēs adferēbantur,** *when Caesar was in hither Gaul, reports were brought to him.*
4. **Cum Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnisset, adversus eum profectī sunt duo cōnsulēs,** *when Hannibal had advanced into Apulia, two consuls set out against him.*

5. **Cum ea ita sint, perge,** *this being the case* (these things being
so), *proceed.*
6. **Cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium concidissent, tamen ācerrimē
reliquī resistēbant,** *although the first ranks of the enemy had
fallen, nevertheless the rest resisted most vigorously.*

Notice that, in the above sentences, some of the clauses
introduced by **cum** are time clauses, — **cum** meaning *when;*
and some are clauses denoting cause or concession, — **cum**
meaning *since* or *although.* Notice also that, in some of
these clauses, the Indicative is used; and in others, the
Subjunctive.

Rule. — *Cum* *Causal (since) or Concessive (although) takes
the Subjunctive;* *Cum* *Temporal (when) generally takes the
Subjunctive of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses, and the
Indicative of the other tenses.*

(*a*) Note. — **Cum** may be followed by the Indicative of any
tense when it is used to "denote the bare time when a thing
occurred, without grammatically implying any sort of connection
between the principal event and that which marks the date of its
occurrence." But the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses will be
found much more frequently in the Subjunctive after **cum** than
in the Indicative.

(*b*) Give the rule for the mode and tense of the verb in
the subordinate clause of each of the following sentences : —

1. Ut eum subole prīvāret, Rheam Silviam, ēius fīliam,
Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit. 2. Cum lupa saepius ad parvulōs
reverterētur, Faustulus eōs tulit in casam. 3. Cum iīs īn-
sidiātī essent latrōnēs, Remus captus est. 4. Faustulus
indicāvit Rōmulō quis esset eōrum avus. 5. Quod inrī-
dēns cum Remus saltū trāiēcisset, eum īrātus Rōmulus
interfēcit. 6. Cum vērō uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habē-

·rent, lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsit. 7. Cum Rōmae
appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt. 8. Ut
populum ferum religiōne mītigāret, sacra plūrima īnsti-
tuit. 9. Numam docuit, quibus sacrīs fulmina essent prō-
cūranda.

———∞∘❍∘∞———

LESSON LXIV

SALII

219. Numa laetus rem populō nūntiāvit.
Postrīdiē omnēs ad aedēs rēgiās convēnērunt
silentēsque exspectābant, quid futūrum esset.
Atque sōle ortō dēlābitur ē caelō scissō scū-
tum, quod ancīle appellāvit Numa. Id nē
fūrtō auferrī posset, Māmurium fabrum ūn-
decim scūta eādem fōrmā fabricāre iussit.

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful,
glad.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to an-
nounce, report.*

postrīdiē, adv., *on the day after,
the next day.*

silēns, -entis, adj., *silent, still.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to
wait for, wait to see.*

atque, conj., *and.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.*

dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, dep.,
to fall, descend, glide down.

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablā-
tum, *to take away, carry off.*

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, *to*

split, rend. The part. **scissus,**
-a, -um, is used as an adj., *rent,
cleft.*

scūtum, -ī, n., *a shield.*

ancīle, -is, n., *an oval shield.*

nē, conj., *lest, that not.*

fūrtum, -ī, n., *theft, stealth, strata-
gem.*

possum, posse, potuī, *to be able,
can.*

Māmurius, -ī, m., *Mamurius,* a
proper name.

faber, -brī, m., *a workman, a
maker.*

fabricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to
make, construct.*

NOTES

220. laetus, an adj. used for an adv., *joyfully.* — **rem,** *the matter, the news.* It refers to what is said in the preceding sentence. — **aedēs : 191** (*a*).

futūrum esset, *what would happen.* Cf. **amātūrus essem (213** (*b*)). What is the rule for the tense? **futūrum esset** is in the Subj., because it is an indirect or dependent question. In the direct form it would be, **Quid futūrum erat?** *what was going to happen?* When this is made dependent upon **exspectābant,** the mode of **futūrum erat** is changed to the Subj. Observe also the Subjunctives in indirect question in the clauses following the different forms of **rogō (217).** In direct questions, **faciant, fēcerint, facerent,** and **fēcissent** would all have been in the Indicative. Compare **quis esset eōrum avus,** Lesson XXXIV.; **uter nōmen novae urbī daret,** Lesson XXXIX.; **quibus sacrīs fulmina essent prōcūranda,** Lesson LXI.

Rule. — *The Indirect Question has its verb in the Sub-junctive.*

sōle ortō, Ablative Absolute, *at sunrise.* Gen. plu. is wanting to **sōl.** — **ancīle,** the name given to the small oval shield said to have fallen from heaven in the reign of Numa, and on the preservation of which the prosperity of Rome was declared to depend. — **quod** and **ancīle :** Rule XVII. — **nē** introduces a negative purpose limiting **iūssit :** *lest this might be carried off,* etc. Rule XXXII. — **auferrī :** cf. **ablātus est,** Lesson LVI. Notice that the Pres. Inf. Pass. of **ferō** is **ferrī.** Give the principal parts, and all of the Infinitives. Inflect the Pres. Tense, Act. and Pass., and give the synopsis of the Ind., both voices.

(*a*) **posset** is the Impf. Subj. of **possum,** which is compounded of **pot** (for **potis** or **pote,** *able*) and **sum.** The **t** becomes **s** before **s;** the **f** at the beginning of the perf. stem **fu-** is lost; the Pres. Inf. **posse** is for **potesse,** and the Impf. Subj. **possem** is for **potessem.**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
Present		*Present*	
1. **póssum**	**póssumus**	1. **póssim**	**possímus**
2. **pótes**	**potéstis**	2. **póssīs**	**possítis**
3. **pótest**	**póssunt**	3. **póssit**	**póssint**

Impf.	póteram		**póssem**
Fut.	póterō		——
Perf.	pótuī		potúerim
Plupf.	potúeram		potuíssem
Fut. Perf.	potúerō		——
Pres. Inf.	pósse	*Perf. Inf.*	potuísse

For the full inflection of **possum**, see Appendix, **8**.

eādem fōrmā, *of the same form.* Rule XXIII.

221. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Numa dīxit sē populō rem esse nūntiātūrum.   2. Numa populō quid futūrum esset nūntiāvit.   3. Numa populō quid futūrum sit nūntiat.   4. Scūtum, quod ē caelō dēlāpsum est, ancīle appellāvērunt.   5. Ancīle fūrtō auferre potuērunt. 6. Numa iīs sacrīs ipsum Iovem ē caelō ēlicere potuit. 7. Māmurius faber ūndecim scūta eādem fōrmā fabricāre poterat.   8. Dīcit scūtum fūrtō auferrī posse.   9. Omnēs laetī sōle ortō exspectābant quid Numa populō nūntiātūrus esset.   10. Nē Numa ē cōnspectū auferrētur, omnēs ad aedēs rēgiās convenīre iūssit.

1. The people joyfully[1] assembled at the palace of the king.   2. They wait in silence to see what is going to happen.   3. The next day all assembled who were able to defend themselves.   4. Mamurius was able to make eight shields of the same form.   5. Mamurius makes

---

[1] Cf. **Numa laetus.**

these, lest the shield which had fallen from the rent sky may be taken away by stealth. 6. At sunrise a shield will fall from the rent sky. 7. They called this shield *ancīle*.

Decline **aedēs rēgiās** and **eādem fōrmā**.

———◦◦⦂◦⦂◦◦———

LESSON LXV

222. Duodecim autem Saliōs Mārtis sacerdōtēs lēgit, quī ancīlia, sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora, custōdīrent et Kalendīs Mārtiīs per urbem canentēs et rīte saltantēs ferrent. Annum in duodecim mēnsēs ad cursum lūnae dēscrīpsit; nefāstōs fāstōsque diēs fēcit; portās Iānō geminō aedificāvit, ut esset index pācis et bellī.

autem, conj., *but, however, more-over.*

Saliī, -ōrum, m., *the Saliī,* a college of priests for the service of Mars.

Mārs, -tis, m., *Mars,* the god of war.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum, *to choose, select, appoint.*

sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj., *hidden, concealed, secret.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to watch, keep, guard.*

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *the Calends,* the first day of the month.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., *of the month of March.*

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, *to sing.*

rīte, adv., *with proper ceremonies, solemnly.*

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to dance.*

annus, -ī, m., *a year.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *a month.*

cursus, -ūs, m., *course.*

lūna, -ae, f., *the moon.*

dēscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *to describe, mark off, divide.*

nefāstus, -a, -um, adj., *unhallowed, unlucky.*

fāstus, -a, -um, adj., *hallowed, lucky.*

porta, -ae, f., *a gate, door.*

Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus.*

geminus, -a, -um, adj., *double, twofold.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to build, construct.*

index, -dicis, m. and f., *sign, mark, index.*

NOTES

223. autem means either *but, however,* or *moreover.* If the sentence in which it stands is in contrast with what has gone before, or in opposition to it, **autem** then is best translated by *but* or *however;* but if the sentence is a continuation of the preceding thought, or an addition to it of another circumstance, then **autem** is best translated by *moreover.* Here it means *moreover.* It never stands first in the sentence; one, and sometimes two, words must precede it. So also **enim** and **vērō.** Cf. Lessons XLV. and XLVI.

Saliōs: derived from **saliō,** *to leap,* because they danced in procession through the city every March, carrying the *ancilia* in their left hands, or suspended from their shoulders. For construction of **Saliōs** and **sacerdōtēs,** cf. Rule XVII. — **quī . . . custōdīrent,** a relative clause of purpose, *to guard the ancilia,* or *who were to guard,* etc. For the mode of **custōdīrent** and **ferrent,** cf. Rule XXXII. Give the rule for the tense of these two verbs.

Kalendīs Mārtiīs: the name of the month is an adj., agreeing with **Kalendīs. Kalendīs** is in the Abl., denoting time.

Rule. — TIME WHEN *or* WITHIN WHICH *is expressed by the Ablative.*

ferrent: principal parts; synopsis of the Subj., both voices; inflection of the tense. Appendix, **10.** — **in duodecim mēnsēs:** before the time of Numa, the Roman year had consisted of ten months, beginning with March. Numa added January and February, and made a year of 355 days. He corrected the deficiency by inserting a short month every second year. — **ad** = *according to.* — **diēs nefāstī** were the days on which the courts and public assemblies could not meet. **diēs fāstī** were the days

on which these bodies could meet and transact business. — The god *Janus* was represented as having two faces, on opposite sides of his head; hence **geminus**. His temple in the Roman Forum had two doors, opposite to each other, which were shut in time of peace, but open in time of war. They were generally open, because Rome was engaged in almost incessant war. — Why is **esset** in the Impf. Subj.? Decline **index**.

224. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Quattuor fabrōs lēgit quī portās Iānō geminō aedificā-rent.   2. Quīnque fabrōs legit quī portās Iānō geminō aedificent.   3. Saliī sēcrēta illa imperī pīgnora custōdīre poterunt.   4. Sacerdōtēs ad aedem Iānī convēnērunt ut ancīlia per urbem canentēs ferrent.   5. Kalendīs Mārtiīs per urbem canunt et saltant.   6. Scūta per urbem rīte saltantēs ferent.   7. Annum in duodecim mēnsēs dēscrī-bere potest.   8. Iānus erat index pācis et bellī.   9. Portās autem Iānō geminō aedificāre potuerat.

1. He could make lucky and unlucky days.   2. The twelve Salii, priests of Mars, were able to guard the shields.   3. Singing, they had borne them through the city. 4. On the Kalends of March he chose priests who were to divide the year into ten months, according to the course of the moon.   5. He builds doors to the two-faced Janus, in order that he may be an index of peace and war.   6. The priests had been able to guard these secret pledges of empire.

LESSON LXVI

225. Portās Iānō geminō aedificāvit, ut esset index pācis et bellī; nam apertus, in armīs esse cīvitātem, clausus, pācātōs circā omnēs populōs sīgnificābat. Lēgēs quoque plūrimās et ūtilēs tulit Numa. Ut vērō māiōrem īnstitūtīs suīs auctōritātem conciliāret, simulāvit sibi cum deā Ēgeriā esse conloquia nocturna, eiusque monitū sē omnia,

TEMPLE OF JANUS

quae ageret, facere. Lūcus erat, quem medium fōns perennī rigābat aquā; eō saepe Numa sine arbitrīs sē īnferēbat, velut ad congressum deae.

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *open.*

clausus, -a, -um, adj., *closed, shut.*

pācātus, -a, -um, adj., *peaceful.*

circā, adv., *around.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to show, indicate, signify.*

ūtilis, -e, adj., *useful.*

māior, -us, adj., *greater.*

īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *an institution.*

auctōritās, -tātis, f., *power, authority.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to pretend.*

conloquium, -ī, n., *a conversation, conference.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *by night, nocturnal.*

monitus, -ūs, m., *admonition, advice.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *middle, in the middle.*

fōns, fontis, m., *a spring, fountain.*

perennis, -e, adj., *never-failing, perennial.*

rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to wet, moisten, water.*

saepe, adv., *often.*

sine, prep., *without.* Always with the Abl.

arbiter, -trī, m., *a witness, spectator.*

velut, adv., *just as, just as if.*

congressus, -ūs, m., *a meeting, interview.*

NOTES

226. **apertus** agrees with **Iānus** understood, which is used for the temple of Janus. Cf. **aperuistis (168).** — **esse** depends upon **sīgnificābat.** — Supply **esse** with **pācātōs.** **populōs** is the subject of **esse** understood. — **circā** was a prep. in Lesson XLV. Here it is an adverb. — **quoque:** cf. **169.** — **plūrimās:** cf. **plūrima,** Lesson LX. It is the superlative of **multus,** and is compared irregularly. — Decline **ūtilēs** like **īnsīgnis (188 (a)).**

tulit: give the principal parts, and the synopsis of the Ind., both voices. In connection with **lēgēs** it means *passed.* — **māiōrem** is the comparative of **māgnus.** — **Īnstitūtīs** is a Dative. — **suīs:** cf. **suum (182).** To whom does **suīs** refer? — What does the clause **Ut . . . conciliāret** denote? Why is **conciliāret** in the Impf.? — **sibi** is in the Dative, to denote possession. *He pretended that conferences by night were to him with the goddess Egeria* = *that he had conferences by night with the goddess Egeria.*

(*a*) Study the following sentences: —

    Mihi est pater, *a father is to me* = *I have a father.*
    Puerō est liber, *a book is to the boy* = *the boy has a book.*

Mihi and **puerō** are Datives, like **sibi** above, and denote possession. The object possessed, in all of these instances, is the subject of the verb. The sentences are best translated by making the Dative the subject of *have,* and making the noun in the Nominative the object of the verb.

Rule. — *After* **sum** *and similar verbs, the* POSSESSOR *is expressed by the Dative, the* THING POSSESSED *being the subject.*

ēius refers to **Ēgeriā.** Compare **quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret (195).** — Why is **sē** used here rather than **eum** or **illum**? — **quem medium,** *the middle of which.* — **fōns** is masc. by exception to **67.** 2. Four monosyllables ending in **s** preceded by a consonant are masc.; viz. **dēns,** *a tooth,* **fōns,** *a fountain,* **mōns,** *a mountain,* and **pōns,** *a bridge.* — Decline **perennī aquā.** — **sē īnferēbat:** cf. **sē īnferre (190).** — Decline **congressum.**

227. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Cum apertus esset, in armīs erat cīvitās. 2. Lēgēs quoque ūtilēs ā Numā lātae sunt. 3. Cum lēgēs plūrimās et ūtilēs tulisset, ē cōnspectū ablātus est. 4. Ut lēgēs ūtilēs ferret, sibi cum deā Ēgeriā erant conloquia nocturna. 5. Omnia, quae ēgit, monitū Ēgeriae fēcit. 6. Numa crēditus est saepe ad lūcum sē īnferre ut māiōrem īnstitūtīs suīs auctōritātem conciliāret. 7. Fōns lūcum medium perennī rigābat aquā. 8. Omnēs populī circā erant pācātī.

1. Numa pretended to betake himself often to the grove without witnesses. 2. Numa is said to have passed very many (and) useful laws. 3. Numa had very many interviews by night with the goddess Egeria. (In two ways.) 4. He did everything by the advice of the goddess Egeria. 5. The grove, which was near by,[1] was moistened by never-failing water. 6. They will be able to gain greater authority for their institutions.

LESSON LXVII

228. Ita omnium animōs eā pietāte imbuit, ut fidēs āc iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēret. Bellum quidem nūllum gessit, sed nōn minus cīvitātī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. Morbō exstinctus in Iāniculō monte sepultus est. Ita duo deinceps rēgēs, ille bellō, hīc pāce, cīvitātem auxērunt. Rōmulus septem et trīgintā rēgnāvit annōs, Numa trēs et quadrāgintā.

---

[1] Cf. Lesson XLIV.

pietās, -ātis, f., *piety, loyalty.*

imbuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to fill, imbue.*

āc, conj., *and.* Same as atque, but used only before consonants.

minus, adv., *less.*

metus, -ūs, m., *fear.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *a citizen.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *to restrain, hold in check.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *to help, benefit.*

morbus, -ī, m., *disease.*

exstinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *to deprive of life, destroy.*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., *the Janiculum.*

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, *to bury.*

deinceps, adv., *one after another, in succession.*

quadrāgintā, num. adj., *forty.*

NOTES

229. The clause with **ut** expresses result. **Ita ... ut,** *he so imbues their minds with,* etc., *that.* — **fidēs, iūsiūrandum,** and **metus** are all subjects of **continēret,** but the verb agrees with the nearest, **metus.** — Give the rule for the tense of **continēret** (XXXIX.). — **quidem** never stands first in its clause (**223,** n. on **autem**). It immediately follows the emphatic word. *War, it is true, none did he carry on.* — Decline **nūllum.**

prōfuit is the Perf. of **prōsum.** It is inflected like **sum** with **prō** prefixed, the **prō** becoming **prōd** everywhere before **e;** as, **prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.**

cīvitātī is in the Dat., after **prōfuit.** Compounds of **sum,** except **absum** and **possum,** take the Dative. — **Morbō,** Abl. of means, after **exstinctus,** which agrees with **Numa** understood, the subject of **sepultus est.** — **Iāniculō monte:** Mount Janiculum was across the Tiber from the seven hills of Rome. According to the legend, Janus built a fortress here in early times, and hence the hill was called from him Janiculum. — **ille ... hīc,** *the former ... the latter.* **ille** refers to the more remote, Romulus; **hīc,** to the nearer, Numa.

(*a*) From twenty to one hundred, the numerals are expressed in Latin just as they are in English: **septem et trīgintā,** *seven and thirty,* or **trīgintā septem,** *thirty-seven.* The smaller number precedes *with* **et,** or the larger number *without* **et.** — **annōs**

is in the Accusative, to denote duration of time, and modifies **rēgnāvit.**

Rule. — DURATION OF TIME *and* EXTENT OF SPACE *are expressed by the Accusative.*

230. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Omnium animī eā pietāte imbūtī sunt. 2. Nōn minus lēgum et poenārum metū quam iūreiūrandō cīvēs continē-bantur. 3. Bellum quidem nūllum Numa gessit, sed pāce cīvitātem auxit. 4. Rōmulus bella multa gessit ut cīvitātī prōdesset. 5. Nōn minus Rōmulus bellō cīvitātī prōfuit quam Numa pāce. 6. Rōmulus quīnque et vīgintī annōs bella gessit. 7. Rōmulus ad deōs trānsīsse vulgō crēditus est; Numa in Iāniculō monte sepultus est. 8. Numa nōn bellō cīvitātī prōfuit, nam bellum nūllum gessit.

1. So two kings reigned in succession, the former twenty-seven years, the latter thirty-two. 2. When Romulus had reigned thirty-seven years, he was taken away out of sight; when Numa had reigned forty-three years, he was cut off by disease and was buried on Mount Janiculum. 3. Romulus so reigned that he benefited the state by war. 4. Romulus kept the citizens in check by the fear of the laws; Numa, by his piety. 5. The citizens were held in check without fear of punishment.

Give ten English words derived from Latin words in this lesson.

(*a*) Study the following groups of allied words : —

regō, *to rule;* **rēx,** *a king;* **rēgīna,** *a queen;* **rēgius, -a, -um,** *belonging to a king, royal;* **rēctor,** *one who rules;* **rēgnō,** *to reign;* **rēgula,** *a rule.*

faciō, *to do, make;* **facilis, -e,** *easy* (to do); **difficilis, -e,** *not easy*
(to do); **facultās,** *ability to do;* **fabricō,** *to construct;* **factum,**
a deed; **facinus,** *a thing done;* **factiō,** *a doing, making;* **factitō,**
to do frequently; **faber,** *one who makes, a workman.*

doceō, *to teach;* **docilis, -e,** *teachable;* **indocilis, -e,** *un-teachable;*
docilitās, *teachableness;* **doctrīna,** *teaching;* **doctor,** *one who
teaches;* **doctus,** *taught;* **indoctus,** *untaught;* **documentum,**
that which teaches.

Observe that the nouns ending in **-tor** designate the agent
or doer, and that those in **-tās** are abstract nouns.

———○○‡○‡○○———

LESSON LXVIII

Comparison of Adjectives

231. Adjectives in Latin, as in English, have three
degrees of comparison, — Positive, Comparative, and Su-
perlative.

(a) POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
altus, -a, -um, *high.*	altior, -ius.	altissimus, -a, -um.
longus, -a, -um, *long.*	longior, -ius.	longissimus, -a, -um.
nōbilis, -e, *noble.*	nōbilior, -ius.	nōbilissimus, -a, -um.
sapiēns, *wise.*	sapientior, -ius.	sapientissimus, -a, -um.
fēlīx, *fortunate.*	fēlīcior, -ius.	fēlīcissimus, -a, -um.

This is the regular form of comparison. It will be ob-
served that the Comparative is formed by adding to the
stem of the positive the ending **-ior, -ius,** and the Superlative
by adding **-issimus, -issima, -issimum.** If the stem ends in a
vowel, that vowel is dropped before these endings.

(b) POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
pulcher, -chra, -chrum, *beautiful.*	pulchrior, -ius, *more beautiful.*	pulcherrimus, -a, -um, *most beautiful.*
celer, -eris, -ere, *swift.*	celerior, -ius, *swifter.*	celerrimus, -a, -um, *swiftest.*
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched.*	miserior, -ius, *more wretched.*	miserrimus, -a, -um, *most wretched.*
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp.*	ācrior, -ius, *sharper.*	ācerrimus, -a, -um, *sharpest.*

Adjectives in **-er** form the Comparative regularly, but they form the Superlative by adding **-rimus, -a, -um** to the nominative singular masculine of the Positive.

(c) Six adjectives in **-lis** form the Superlative by dropping the final i of the stem and adding **-limus, -a, -um.**

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, -e, *easy.*	facilior, -ius.	facillimus, -a, -um.
difficilis, -e, *difficult.*	difficilior, -ius.	difficillimus, -a, -um.
similis, -e, *like.*	similior, -ius.	simillimus, -a, -um.
dissimilis, -e, *unlike.*	dissimilior, -ius.	dissimillimus, -a, -um.
gracilis, -e, *slender.*	gracilior, -ius.	gracillimus, -a, -um.
humilis, -e, *low.*	humilior, -ius.	humillimus, -a, -um.

All Comparatives except **plūs** are declined like **prior** (**153** (a)); all Superlatives like **bonus.**

(d) The Comparative is sometimes best translated by *too* or *somewhat,* instead of *more,* and the Superlative by *very;* as, **senectūs est loquācior,** *old age is somewhat talkative;* **māximus numerus,** *a very great number.*

Compare the following adjectives: **augustus, vāstus, certus, laetus, ūtilis, iūcundus.**

232. In expressing a comparison between two objects the adjective in the Comparative is followed by **quam**

(than); or **quam** may be omitted and the following noun be put in the *Ablative*. If **quam** is used, the following noun takes the same case as the noun with which it is compared. **Quam** can be omitted only when it would be followed by the nominative or accusative. With relative pronouns, **quam** is rarely expressed.

Study the following sentences: —

1. **Iāniculum est altius** $\begin{cases} \text{quam mōns Aventīnus.} \\ \text{monte Aventīnō.} \end{cases}$

2. **Albānī nōn erant sapientiōrēs** $\begin{cases} \text{quam Rōmānī.} \\ \text{Rōmānīs.} \end{cases}$

3. **Rōmulus nōn fuit nōbilior** $\begin{cases} \text{quam Remus.} \\ \text{Remō.} \end{cases}$

4. **Numitor erat nātū māior** $\begin{cases} \text{quam Amūlius.} \\ \text{Amūliō.} \end{cases}$

Rule. — *The Comparative is followed by the Ablative when* **quam** *is not expressed.*

———oo⚫oo———

LESSON LXIX

Comparison of Adjectives — *Continued*

233. (*a*) Five adjectives in common use are compared irregularly.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, -a, -um, *good*.	melior, -ius.	optimus, -a, -um.
malus, -a, -um, *bad*.	pēior, -ius.	pessimus, -a, -um.
māgnus, -a, -um, *great*.	māior, -ius.	māximus, -a, -um.
parvus, -a, -um, *small*.	minor, minus.	minimus, -a, -um.
multus, -a, -um, *much*.	plūs (n.).	plūrimus, -a, -um.

(*b*) The Positive of the following are rarely used except as nouns.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
[exterus]	exterior, -ius, *outer.*	extrēmus or extimus, *outermost.*
[superus]	superior, -ius, *higher.*	suprēmus or summus, *highest.*
[īnferus]	īnferior, -ius, *lower.*	īnfimus or īmus, *lowest.*
[posterus]	posterior, -ius, *later.*	postrēmus or postumus, *last.*

(*c*) The following want the positive: —

COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
citerior, -ius, *hither.*	citimus, -a, -um, *hithermost.*
ūlterior, -ius, *further.*	ūltimus, -a, -um, *furthest.*
interior, -ius, *inner.*	intimus, -a, -um, *inmost.*
prior, -ius, *former.*	prīmus, -a, -um, *first.*
propior, -ius, *nearer.*	proximus, -a, -um, *nearest.*

(*d*) Some adjectives have no terminational comparison. These must be learned by observation. Such adjectives may be compared by prefixing to the positive **magis**, *more*, to form the comparative, and **māximē**, *most*, to form the Superlative; as, **mīrus**, *wonderful*, **magis mīrus**, *more wonderful*, **māximē mīrus**, *most wonderful*.

EXERCISE

234. 1. Aquila est māior quam vultur.   2. Caesar in Galliam ūlteriōrem properāvit.   3. Remus prior sex vulturēs vīdit.   4. Impia prōditiō celerrimā poenā vindicāta est. 5. Prīmō impetū vir inter Rōmānōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Hostilius, fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit.   6. Numa sacra plūrima īnstituit.   7. Lēgēs quoque ūtilissimās tulit Numa.   8. Māiōrem īnstitūtīs suīs auctōritātem conciliābat.   9. Rōmānī plūrēs virōs quam mulierēs habuērunt.   10. Quis Rōmānōrum rēgum erat optimus?

REVIEW QUESTIONS

Give three ways of expressing purpose in Latin. — In the sentence *she came to the city to seek water*, express *to seek water* in three ways in Latin.—How are the two Periphrastic Conjugations formed? Give illustrations with **doceō** and **mittō**. — Inflect the Present and Perfect Subjunctive of **sum, īnstituō, eō, ferō, contineō.** — Give the rule for Sequence of Tenses. Which tenses are called Principal Tenses and which Historical? — What tenses are usually in the Subjunctive after **cum**? What ones usually in the Indicative? When may any or all of these tenses be in the Indicative after **cum**? — How is a negative purpose expressed? Give an example. Give a synopsis of **possum** in the Indicative and Subjunctive. How is possession expressed in Latin? Write in Latin, in two ways, *I have a shield.* — Write the four monosyllabic nouns of the Third Declension that are masculine by exception. — Make a list of the words that have been used which never stand first in the sentence or clause. — What case follows the compounds of **sum**? What compounds of **sum** are exceptions to this rule? — Express the following numbers in Latin in two ways: 24, 35, 47.—How is duration of time expressed in Latin? How is time *at* or *within which* expressed? Give an example of each.— Name the six adjectives that have -**limus** in the Superlative.

———o○⚬○○———

LESSON LXX

The Story of Horatius Cocles

235. Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, ad restituendōs in rēgnum Tarquiniōs īnfēstō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Prīmō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsit; adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat māgnumque Porsenae nōmen. Ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant; urbem

ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia urbis pars mūrīs, alia
Tiberī obiectō tūta vidēbātur.

NOTES[1]

236. After Tarquinius Superbus, the last king of Rome, with
his family, had been expelled from the city, he made several attempts
to regain his lost sovereignty. The one referred to in this story is
the third of these attempts, in which he was aided by King Porsena.
The story of Horatius Cocles has always been a favorite one among
the old Roman legends. It has been made familiar to English
readers by the poetical version of it in Macaulay's "Lays of Ancient
Rome."— **Cocles** means *one-eyed.*— **rēx Etrūscōrum :** the Etrus-
cans were the inhabitants of Etruria, a country adjoining Rome on
the north. — **ad restituendōs Tarquiniōs :** cf. **198** (*a*), n. on **ad
exercitum lūstrandum.** — **Rōmam :** Rule XXVIII. — **Prīmō im-
petū :** cf. the same (**187**). Compare **prīmō.**

Nōn umquam aliās ante, *not ever at any other time before;* an
emphatic way of saying, *never before.* — **adeō** modifies **valida,** and
is also to be taken with **māgnum.** — **rēs Clūsīna** = *the commonwealth
of Clusium.* The city of Clusium was north of Rome, in the central
part of Etruria. To-day it is *Chiusi.* — **dēmigrant,** the subject
refers to the Romans. — **Alia pars . . . alia** (pars), *the one part . . .
the other part.* — **mūrīs** and **Tiberī** are Ablatives of means with
tūta (esse). — **Tiberī obiectō,** *by the Tiber thrown before* = *by the
intervention of the Tiber.* — **vidēbātur** is a passive form from **videō,**
used as a deponent, meaning *to seem.* — Give all the participles of
restituō. — Synopsis of **cēpit** in the Ind. and Subj., both voices. —
Decline **Tiberī** in the singular.

237. *Translate at sight : —*

1. Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, Tarquiniōs in rēgnum resti-
tuere nōn potuit. 2. Porsenae exercitus māior erat quam[2]

---

[1] The vocabularies for the following lessons will be found on p. 280 foll.

[2] *Than that of the Romans.* **Exercitus** is to be supplied from the first
part of the sentence.

Rōmānōrum.   3. Ut in rēgnum Tarquiniōs restitueret, Rō-
mam vēnit.   4. Nōn umquam aliās ante Iāniculum erat cap-
tum.   5. Cum Iāniculum captum esset, māgnus terror
Rōmānōs invāsit.   6. Nōmen Porsenae māiōrem reī Clūsīnae
auctōritātem conciliāvit.   7. Plūrimī[1] ex agrīs in urbem
dēmigrābant.   8. Alia urbis pars praesidiīs, alia mūrīs
saepiēbātur.

1. Porsena led the Etruscans to Rome.   2. He determined
to restore the Tarquins to the throne (*rēgnum*).   3. Having
taken the Janiculum, he hastened to Rome.   4. The Ro-
mans, dismayed, began to protect the city itself with garri-
sons.   5. So great terror fell upon the Romans that[2] they
fled into the city.   6. Many also came from the fields into
the city.

———oo‰oo———

LESSON LXXI

238. Pōns sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit, nisi ūnus
vir fuisset Horātius Coclēs, illō cōgnōmine appellātus, quod
in aliō proeliō oculum āmīserat. Is extrēmā pontis parte
occupātā aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit, dōnec pōns ā tergō
interrumperētur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostēs; ponte
rescissō armātus in Tiberim dēsiluit et multīs superinci-
dentibus tēlīs incolumis ad suōs trānāvit.

NOTES

239. Pōns sublicius, a bridge resting on piles. This is the
oldest bridge across the Tiber of which we have any account. It

---

[1] *Very many.*   [2] ut.

crossed the river near the Palatine Hill. It is said to have been
built by Ancus Marcius, the fourth king of Rome.

iter is an irregular neuter noun of the 3d Declension, declined
as follows : —

		SINGULAR	PLURAL
(a)	N. Acc. V.	íter	itínera
	Gen.	itíneris	itínerum
	Dat.	itínerī	itinéribus
	Abl.	itínere	itinéribus

dedit has the force of a Plupf. Subj. = *would have given if
there had not been*, etc. The Indic. is used for greater vividness. —
Decline **ūnus vir; aliō proeliō; sōlus.** Compare **extrēmā.** —
Decline **aciem. — interrumperētur** is in the Subj., after **dōnec,**
because it implies purpose or design. — **ponte rescissō** is an Abla-
tive Absolute denoting time, but **multīs superincidentibus tēlīs**
denotes concession; *although the weapons were falling thick around.*
Compare **multīs.**

(b) **suōs** = *his friends.* The plural of **suus** is often used alone
to mean *his, her,* or *their friends, possessions,* etc., always refe:ring to
the subject, or to some emphatic word that is the real subject of
thought.

240. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Hostēs ā Porsenā rēge ductī ad pontem sublicium
vēnerant. 2. Hīc pōns iter paene hostibus dedit; sed vir
inter Rōmānōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Horātius, aciem hostium
sōlus sustinuit. Is enim extrēmam pontis partem occupāvit.
3. Cum pōns ā tergō interrumperētur, Horātius armātus in
Tiberim dēsiluit et ad suōs trānāvit. 4. Cum pontem resci-
dissent, Horātius, multīs superincidentibus tēlīs, incolumis
ad suōs properāvit. 5. Etrūscī Horātium capere nōn potuē-
runt. 6. Rōmam capere, ponte rescissō, facillimum vidē-
bātur.

1. There was a man, Horatius Cocles, who had lost an eye in another battle. 2. He, taking possession of the furthest part of the pile-bridge, was able to hold in check the line of the enemy. 3. He alone could not conquer the enemy, but his friends broke down the bridge from behind. 4. Then he leaped into the river with his armor on and swam to his (friends). 5. The Romans were wiser than King Porsena.

> **exercitus,** *an army considered as a trained body of men.*
> **āgmen,** *an army on the march.*
> **aciēs,** *an army in line of battle.*

—◦◦;◦;◦◦—

LESSON LXXII

241. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit; eī tantum agrī pūblicē datum est, quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit. Statua quoque eī in comitiō posita.

NOTES

242. Grāta is an adjective in the predicate after **fuit.** Compare it. — **tantum agrī,** *so much of land* = *so much land.* — **pūblicē**: in the name of the state. — **tantum . . . quantum** are correlatives = *so much as.* — **diē**: Rule XXII. — What does **quoque** render emphatic? Cf. **169.** — **eī,** Dative after **posita** (est). Nearly equivalent to a Genitive (eius), limiting **statua.** — The *Comitium* was an open space adjoining the Forum.

243. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Horātius agrum circumarāvit quem Rōmānī eī dederat.
2. Ager Horātiō pūblicē datus est. 3. Agrum quoque Rō-

mānī eī dedit. 4. Grātus populus statuam eī posuit. 5. Unō diē Porsena, rēx Etrūscōrum, īnfēstō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. 6. Horātius Cocles, vir inclitā audaciā, aciem hostium sōlus sustinuit. 7. Porsenae nōmen erat māximum. 8. Horātius est appellātus Cocles, quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmīserat. 9. Rēx Etrūscōrum in rēgnum Tarquiniōs restituere dē-crēvit.

1. When the Tarquins had come to Rome with a hostile army, great fear fell upon the Romans. They would have taken[1] the city at the first attack if it had not been for one man, Horatius Cocles. He was called by this name because he had lost an eye in another battle. He took possession of the furthest part of the bridge and fought with the enemy alone. Although the javelins fell thick about him, he swam across in safety to his friends. The name of Horatius was then greater at Rome than the name of king.

(*a*) The following is a list of the Prepositions used in the preceding lessons, arranged according to the case or cases that are used with them : —

With the Acc.:   **ad, circā, ergā, extrā, inter, ob, per, propter.**
With the Abl.:   **ā** or **ab, cum, ē** or **ex, prō, sine.**
With the Acc. or Abl.:   **in, super.**

---

[1] Plupf. Subj.

LESSON LXXIII

244. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs

(a) ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
lātus, -a, -um, *wide*.	lāto-	lātē, *widely*.
benīgnus, -a, -um, *kind*.	benīgno-	benīgnē, *kindly*.
miser, -era, -erum, *wretched*.	misero-	miserē, *wretchedly*.

From adjectives of the first and second declensions with stems in -o, adverbs are regularly formed by changing the final o of the stem to ē.

Form adverbs from **grātus, laetus, pulcher, longus, altus, iūcundus.**

(b) ADJECTIVE	STEM	ADVERB
similis, -e, *like*.	simili-	similiter, *in like manner*.
fortis, -e, *brave*.	forti-	fortiter, *bravely*.
sapiēns, *wise*.	sapienti-	sapienter, *wisely*.

From adjectives with stems in i adverbs are formed by adding **ter** to the stem. Stems in -nti, like **sapienti-**, drop the -ti before the adverbial ending -ter.

Form adverbs from **fēlīx,** *fortunate;* **ūtilis,** *useful;* **brevis,** *short;* **prūdēns,** *prudent.*

(c) The Accusative singular neuter of many adjectives is used as an adverb: as, **multum (multus)**; **facile (facilis)**; **prīmum (prīmus)**.

The Ablative singular of some adjectives is used as an adverb: as, **falsō (falsus)**; **perpetuō (perpetuus)**; **prīmō (prīmus)**; **multō (multus)**.

Adverbs are also formed in several other ways, which may best be learned by observation.

(d) POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
benīgnē	benīgnius	benīgnissimē
miserē	miserius	miserrimē
similiter	similius	simillimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
sapienter	sapientius	sapientissimē

It will be observed that the Comparative of the adverb has the same form as the Accusative neuter singular of the Comparative of the adjective, and that the Superlative of the adverb is the same as the Accusative neuter plural of the Superlative of the adjective, except that it ends in **ē** instead of **a**.

(e) If the adjective is irregular in its Comparison, the adverb will in like manner be irregular.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bene	melius	optimē
male	pēius	pessimē
parum	minus	minimē
multum or multō	plūs	plūrimum
——	magis	māximē

(f) There are many adverbs not derived from adjectives, some of which do not admit of Comparison. Some of these, however, are compared ; as, for example, **saepe**, *often*, **saepius**, *oftener*, **saepissimē**, *oftenest;* **diū**, *long* (of time), **diūtius**, *longer*, **diūtissimē**, *very long time.*

EXERCISE

245. 1. Īgnem in arā perpetuō alendum virginibus dedit. 2. Fidēs āc iūsiūrandum nōn minus quam lēgum et poenārum metus cīvēs continēbant. 3. Numa nōn minus cīvitātī prōfuit quam Rōmulus. 4. Nūsquam benīgnē audīta lēgātiō est. 5. Māximē Sabīnī cum līberīs et cōniugibus convēnēre.

6. Hostīlius fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit. 7. Nunc sciunt longē aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pūgnāre cum virīs. 8. Vērum haud ita multō post occīsō Tatiō ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis reccidit. 9. Minimē servīlis erat adulēscentis indolēs.

1. The soldiers fell fighting bravely. 2. The road was most difficult. 3. The Romans carried on many wars most successfully (*fēlīciter*). 4. Strife very often arose between them (as to) which of the two should give a name to the new city. 5. The eagle flies more swiftly than the vulture. 6. For a very long time Romulus defended himself by force.

Give English words suggested by the following Latin words : **restituendōs, impetū, invāsit, valida, obiectō, extrēmā, sustinuit, interrumperētur, posita, quantum.**

Study the following allied words : —

capiō, *to take;* **captō (-āre),** *to lay hold of;* **capessō (-ere),** *to seize eagerly;* **accipiō (-ere),** *to receive;* **recipiō (-ere),** *to take back;* **excipiō (-ere),** *to take out;* **praecipiō (-ere),** *to take beforehand;* **captus (-ūs),** *a taking;* **captiō (-ōnis),** *a taking, deceiving;* **captīvus,** *captive;* **capāx,** *able to take* or *hold;* **capācitās,** *space for taking* or *holding;* **particeps,** *taking a share, partaking;* **prīnceps (primus + capiō),** *taking the first, foremost.*

LESSON LXXIV

The Story of Lœvinus and Pyrrhus, King of Epirus

246. Tarentīnīs, quod Rōmānōrum lēgātīs iniūriam fēcis-
sent, bellum indictum est. Hī Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, contrā
Rōmānōs auxilium popōscērunt, quī ex genere Achillis orīgi-
nem trahēbat. Is paulō post in Ītaliam vēnit tumque prīmum
Rōmānī cum trānsmarīnō hoste dīmicāvērunt. Missus est
contrā eum cōnsul Pūblius Valerius Laevīnus, quī cum
explōrātōrēs Pyrrhī cēpisset, iūssit eōs per castra dūcī,
ostendī omnem exercitum tumque dīmittī, ut renūntiārent
Pyrrhō quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agerentur.

NOTES

247. Tarentīnīs, Dat. after **indictum est.** Rule X. *Tarentum*
was a Greek city of Southern Italy, now *Taranto*. — **Pyrrhum** and
auxilium, two Accusatives after **popōscērunt;** *asked Pyrrhus
for aid.*

Rule. — *Verbs of* ASKING, TEACHING, *and* CONCEALING
take two Accusatives — one of a person, the other of a thing.

ex genere Achillis: there was a legend that Pyrrhus, son of
Achilles, settled in Epirus, after the fall of Troy; and from him
Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, claimed descent. — **prīmum,** *for the first
time.* Cf. **prīmō,** *at first,* Lesson XXVIII. — **quī cum,** etc., *and
when he.* Cf. **quī cum (209).** — Note the change of subject with
dūcī, ostendī, and **dīmittī. eōs** is the subject of **dūcī; exerci-
tum,** of **ostendī;** and **eōs** understood, of **dīmittī.** — **quaecum-
que**: cf. **156,** n. on **quīcumque;** *everything which,* etc.

(a)   INDIRECT DISCOURSE

The expression of thoughts in the exact words of the writer or
speaker is called *Direct Discourse* (**Ōrātiō Rēcta**).

The expression of thoughts not in the exact words of the writer or speaker, but depending upon some verb of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, etc., and containing the substance of what has been said, is called *Indirect Discourse* (**Ōrātiō Oblīqua**).

Examples

DIRECT DISCOURSE	INDIRECT DISCOURSE
Iī quī bonī **sunt beātī sunt**, *those who are good are happy.*	Dīcit **eōs** quī bonī **sint beātōs esse**, *he says that those who are good are happy.*
Caesar dīxit: " Pūblium Cōnsidium, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus **habēbātur**, **praemīsī**," *Cæsar said: " I sent forward Publius Considius, who was considered most skilled in military science."*	Caesar dīxit **sē** Pūblium Cōnsidium, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus **habērētur**, **praemīsisse**, *Cæsar said that he sent forward Publius Considius, who was considered most skilled in military science.*

It will be seen that, in changing the sentence from Direct to Indirect Discourse, the verb of the principal clause (**sunt, praemīsī**) is changed to the Infinitive, and the verb of the subordinate clause (**sunt, habēbātur**) to the Subjunctive.

Rule. — *In* INDIRECT DISCOURSE *the verb of the principal clause is in the* INFINITIVE, *and the verbs of the subordinate clauses are in the* SUBJUNCTIVE.

(*b*) Subordinate clauses, even though not introduced by any word of *saying, thinking, perceiving*, etc., have their verbs in the Subjunctive if these clauses express the thought of some other person than the writer or speaker. This is sometimes called *Implied Indirect Discourse*.

fēcissent, in the above lesson, is in the Subjunctive for this reason. The cause clause introduced by **quod** gives the reason, not of the writer, but of those who declared war, viz. the Romans. This may be expressed in translation thus : *because* (as was alleged, *or* as was claimed) *they had done an injury to the envoys*

*of the Romans.* If the writer had wished to give this reason as his own, he would have used **fēcerant.**

248. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmānī Tarentīnīs, quod eōrum lēgātīs iniūriam fēcissent, bellum indīxērunt. 2. Tarentīnī ad Pyrrhum, Ēpīrī rēgem, lēgātōs mīsit, quī contrā Rōmānōs auxilium peterent. 3. Pyrrhus dīxit sē ex genere Achillis orīginem trahere. 4. Haud ita multō post Pyrrhus in Ītaliam vēnit. 5. Dīcitur Rōmānōs, quī nōn umquam ante trānsmarīnum hostem vīdissent, cum Ēpīrī rēge dīmicāre. 6. Populus Rōmānus Pūblium Valerium Laevīnum, quod cōnsul esset, mittī contrā eum iūssit. 7. Laevīnus iūssit Pyrrhī explōrātōrēs, quī ā Rōmānīs essent captī, per castra dūcī. 8. Lēgātī renūntiāvērunt Pyrrhō quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agēbantur.

1. The inhabitants of Tarentum had insulted the envoys of the Romans. 2. When the Romans had declared war upon them, they asked aid of Pyrrhus, king of Epirus. 3. Pyrrhus said that he would immediately come into Italy. 4. It is said that the Romans then for the first time fought with an enemy from across the sea. 5. He said that the scouts, who had been led through the camp, were dismissed. 6. They announced that the consul, who had been sent against the Tarentines, had captured the scouts of Pyrrhus.

LESSON LXXV
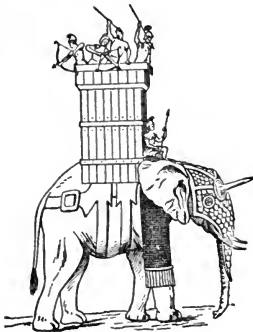
ELEPHANT

249. Commissā mox pūgnā cum iam Pyrrhī exercitus pedem referret, rēx elephantōs in Rōmānōrum aciem agī iussit; tumque mūtāta est proelī fortūna, Rōmānōs vāstōrum corporum mōlēs terribilisque superāstantium armātōrum speciēs turbāvit. Equī etiam, cōnspectū et odōre bēluārum exterritī sessōrēs vel excutiēbant vel sēcum in fugam abripiēbant. Nox proeliō fīnem dedit. Pyrrhus captīvōs Rōmānōs summō honōre habuit; occīsōs sepelīvit.

NOTES

250. The battle here described was fought near Heraclea, on the river Siris. — **Commissā pūgnā**: cf. **pūgnam cōnseruit**, Lesson LI. — **pedem referret**, *began to give way.* — **vāstōrum corporum mōlēs**, *the bulk of their huge bodies* = *the huge bulk of their bodies.* — **turbāvit** has for subjects **mōlēs** and **speciēs**, but it agrees in number with the nearest subject, as is often the case in Latin. — **sessōrēs**, *those seated* (on the horses) = *the riders.* It is the object of **excutiēbant**, of which **equī** is the subject. — **fīnem dare**, *to give an end* = *to put an end to.* — **summō**: compare. — **occīsōs**, *the slain.* Observe the omission of the connective **et**. — Compare **vāstus**. Give the comparative of **terribilis**.

251. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Pūgna mox cum Pyrrhī exercitū commissa est.
2. Prīmō impetū Pyrrhī exercitus pedem referre coepit.

·3. Dīcitur Rōmānōs, quī nōn umquam ante elephantōs vīdissent, cōnspectū bēluārum exterritōs esse. 4. Elephantōrum corpora sunt vāstiōra quam equōrum. 5. Rōmānīs elephantī terribiliōrēs vidēbantur quam Pyrrhī mīlitēs. 6. Cum Pyrrhus elephantōs in Rōmānōrum aciem ageret, proelī fortūna mūtāta est.

When presently battle was joined, the army of Pyrrhus began to retreat. Then in order to change the fortune of the battle, the king led the elephants against the line of the Romans. The Romans were thrown into confusion by the terrible appearance of their huge bodies. The horses, also, terrified at the sight of the elephants and of the armed men standing upon (them), hurried away in flight with their riders. They say that Pyrrhus came into Italy because the inhabitants of Tarentum asked him for aid against the Romans.

(*a*) Observe the following words and expressions: **pūgnam committere, pūgnam cōnserere, dīmicāre, pūgnāre, bellum gerere, bellum sūmere.**

Also the following: **interimere, interficere, occīdere, exstinguere.**

———◦◦⋮●⋮◦◦———

LESSON LXXVI

252. Quōs cum adversō vulnere et trucī vultū etiam mortuōs iacentēs vīdisset, tulisse ad caelum manūs dīcitur cum hāc vōce: sē tōtīus orbis dominum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi mīlitēs contigissent. Amīcīs grātulantibus, "Quid mihi cum tālī victōriā," inquit, "ubi exercitūs rōbur āmit-

tam? Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcerō, sine ūllō mīlite in Ēpīrum revertar." Deinde ad urbem Rōmam māgnīs itineribus contendit; omnia ferrō īgnīque vāstāvit; ad vīcēsimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit.

NOTES

253. **Quōs** refers to those slain in the battle, who are mentioned in the preceding sentence. Cf. **quī cum**, Lesson LXXIII. *When he had seen them*, etc. — **adversō vulnere**, *with wounds in front.* — **trucī** is an adj. of the 3d Decl., of one ending (**185** (*a*)). It is thus declined: —

(*a*) **Trux** (st. **truci-**), *fierce.*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
N. V.	trux		trúcēs	trúcia
Gen.	trúcis		(trúcium)	
Dat.	trúcī		trúcibus	
Acc.	trúcem	trux	trúcēs	trúcia
Abl.	trúcī (-e)		trúcibus	

The Gen. plu. of **trux** is not found. — In like manner decline **simplex, -icis,** *simple;* **fēlīx, -īcis,** *fortunate;* **audāx, -ācis,** *bold.* — **etiam mortuōs,** *even in death.* Decline **vultus** and **manus.** Notice the gender of **manus.** — **iacentēs** agrees with **quōs.** — **hāc vōce,** *this exclamation, these words.* — To whom do **sē** and **sibi** refer? What is the rule for the use of **suī** and **suus** (**182**)? — What is the Dat. of **tōtīus**? What other adjectives form the Gen. and Dat. sing. in the same way (**156** (*a*))? — The sentence, **sē ... contigissent,** in Direct Discourse, would be "**Ego tōtīus orbis dominus esse potuī, sī tālēs mihi mīlitēs contigissent.**" — **orbis** is declined like **hostis** (**161**), but it has **e** or **ī** in the Ablative. Notice the gender of **orbis.** — **tālēs:** decline like **īnsīgnis** (**188** (*a*)). — **Amīcīs,** Dat. after **inquit.**

mihi is the Dat. sing. of the personal pronoun of the 1st pers., **ego.** Learn inflection, Appendix, **13.**

Quid mihi cum tālī victōriā, etc., *what is there to me with such
a victory* (**ubi,** *whereby*) *that by it I lose,* etc. = *what do I gain by a
victory of such a nature that I lose by it the flower of my army?* —
mihi may be referred to the Dat. of Possessor, with **est** understood.
Rule XI. — **āmittam** is in the Subj., in a relative clause of result
introduced by the relative adverb **ubi.** Rule XXXII. — **inquit** is
a defective verb, from **inquam, inquis, inquit,** etc. It has the
same form, **inquit,** for the Pres. and the Perf. 3d sing. — **Sī . . .
vīcerō . . . revertar,** *if I conquer, I shall return.* **vīcerō** is a
Fut. Perf., but in English we should say, *if I conquer,* rather than
if I shall have conquered. — **māgnīs itineribus,** *by forced marches.*
Abl. of means. — Notice the inversion of the usual English order
in **ferrō īgnīque.** — **vīcēsimum** is the ordinal number correspond-
ing to the cardinal **vīgintī.** Cf. the table of numerals, Appen-
dix, **12.** — **vīcēsimum ab urbe lapidem,** *the twentieth* (stone) *mile-
stone from the city.* Milestones were set up along the highways in
all directions from the city. — **castra :** difference in meaning of
the sing. and the plu.?

(*A*)   Conditional Sentences

A Conditional Sentence consists of two parts, — a *Condition* and
a *Conclusion.* The Condition is called the *Protasis*, and the Con-
clusion is called the *Apodosis.*

The conjunctions **sī,** *if,* and **nisi,** *unless,* are the particles most
frequently used in introducing conditions.

Conditional Sentences may be divided into three general classes, —

1. Conditions relating to the present or past, in which nothing is
implied as to the truth or falsity of the supposition. These may be
called *Simple Conditions.*

2. Conditions relating to the future, in which, because they relate
to the future, it is implied that the truth or falsity of the supposition
is uncertain. These may be called *Future Conditions.*

3. Conditions relating to the present or past, in which it is implied
that the supposition is not true. These may be called *Conditions
Contrary to Fact.*

I. In *Simple Conditions* a Present or Past Tense of the Indicative is used in both Condition and Conclusion.

1. *Present:* **Sī epistulam scrībit, mittit,** *if he writes a letter, he sends it.*

2. *Past:* **Sī epistulam scrīpsit, mīsit,** *if he has written a letter, he has sent it.*

II. *Future Conditions* are divided into two classes, —

(*a*) Conditions in which the reference to the future is *distinct* and *vivid*. These take the Future Indicative in both Condition and Conclusion.

(*b*) Conditions in which the reference to the future is *less distinct* and *vivid*. These take the Present Subjunctive in both Condition and Conclusion for incomplete action, and the Perfect Subjunctive for completed action.

(*a*) *Distinct and Vivid:* **Sī epistulam scrībet,[1] mittet,** *if he writes* (shall write) *a letter, he will send it.*

(*b*) *Less Distinct and Vivid:* **Sī epistulam scrībat,[2] mittat,** *if he should write a letter, he would send it.*

III. *Conditions Contrary to Fact.* These may be either *Present* or *Past.*

Present Conditions Contrary to Fact take the Imperfect Subjunctive in both Condition and Conclusion.

Past Conditions Contrary to Fact take the Pluperfect Subjunctive in both Condition and Conclusion.

(*a*) *Present:* **Sī epistulam scrīberet, mitteret,** *if he wrote a letter, he would send it* (but he has not written a letter, and therefore he will not send it).

(*b*) *Past:* **Sī epistulam scrīpsisset, mīsisset,** *if he had written a letter, he would have sent it.*

---

[1] If the action in the Condition is completed before the time of the action in the Conclusion, then the Future Perfect is used.

[2] For completed action, the Perfect Subjunctive is used.

Study with care the forms of the English sentences corresponding to the different forms of the conditional sentences in Latin.

254. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmānōrum mortuōrum iacentium vulnera erant adversa.   2. Tulit ad caelum manūs et dīxit "Cum tālibus mīlitibus tōtīus orbis dominus esse potuī."   3. Sī tālēs mihi mīlites contingant, tōtīus orbis sim dominus.   4. Sī iterum mihi sit tālis victōria, omnem exercitum āmittam.   5. Sī iterum eōdem modō vīcisset, sine ūllō mīlite in Ēpīrum revertisset.   6. "Exercitūs rōbur āmīsī," inquit Pyrrhus, "et omnia ferrō īgnīque vāstābō."   7. Omnibus rēbus ferrō īgnīque vāstātīs, ad ūndecimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuit.

1. Pyrrhus saw the slain lying with a fierce countenance even in death.   2. He raised his hands to heaven and cried out, "If I had[1] such soldiers, I would immediately hasten by forced marches to Rome.   3. Now I know that it is one thing to lead my soldiers into battle, and a very different thing to conquer the Romans."[2]   4. If Pyrrhus had asked aid of the gods, he would have conquered the Romans.   5. If he hastens to Rome by forced marches, he will lose the flower of his army.

(a) **omnis,** *all, the whole,* considered as made up of parts.
    tōtus, *the whole* considered as a unit without regard to parts.

    vincō, *to conquer;* **victor,** *a conqueror;* **victrīx,** *she who conquers;* **victōria,** *victory;* **invictus,** *unconquerable.*

    vāstō, *to lay waste;* **vāstus,** *waste, desert;* **vāstitās,** *a waste, desert;* **vāstātiō,** *a laying waste;* **dēvāstō,** *to devastate.*
    vāstātor, *one who lays waste.*

---

[1] Use the Imperfect in both clauses.   [2] Consult Lesson LII.

LESSON LXXVII

255. Pyrrhō obviam vēnit Laevīnus cum novō exercitū.
Quō vīsō rēx ait sibi eandem adversus Rōmānōs esse for-
tūnam quam Herculī adversus hydram, cuī tot capita renā-
scēbantur, quot praecīsa erant; deinde in Campāniam sē
recēpit; missōs ā senātū dē redimendīs captīvīs lēgātōs
honōrificē excēpit; captīvōs sine pretiō reddidit, ut Rōmānī,
cōgnitā iam virtūte suā, cōgnōscerent etiam līberālitātem.

NOTES

256. Pyrrhō is the Dative after **obviam vēnit. obviam**
with a verb takes the Dative. — **obviam vēnit,** *came to meet.* —
Quō vīsō, *when he saw this,* or *upon seeing this.* — **ait** is from the
defective verb **āiō.** It has the same form (**ait**) for the 3d sing.
of the Pres. and the Perf. It is here in the Perfect.

sibi: Rule XI. **Herculī**: in the same construction as **sibi.**
Literally, *that the same fortune was to him against the Romans as was
to Hercules against the hydra.* **quam** is the subject of **esse** under-
stood. Hercules, son of Jupiter and Alcmene, was compelled,
through the jealousy of Juno, to perform twelve great labors.
For the second of these labors, he was required to slay a seven-
headed serpent, the Hydra, that infested the marshes of Lerna,
south of Argos. No sooner did he cut off one head of this
monster than two new ones sprung out of the bleeding stump.
Finally, by searing the necks with a flaming brand as the heads
were cut off, he prevented their growth, and so succeeded in
destroying the Hydra.

tot . . . quot, *so many . . . as.* Cf. **242, tantum . . . quantum.**
Campania is a rich country of Central Italy, south of Latium.

dē redimendīs captīvīs, *about the ransoming of the captives.*
redimendīs is a Gerundive, agreeing with **captīvīs** (**172,** n. on
videndae). — What does the clause with **ut** denote and what does

it modify? — **cōgnitā iam virtūte suā**, *as they already knew*, or *who already knew*, etc.

257. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Cum Pyrrhus ad trīcēsimum ab urbe lapidem castra posuisset, eī obviam vēnit Laevīnus cum novō exercitū. Quod cum rēx vidēret, clāmitābat: "Mihi eadem adversus Rōmānōs est fortūna quae Herculī adversus hydram." 2. Pyrrhō obviam īvit Laevīnus cum tot mīlitibus quot in priōre proeliō habuerat. 3. Senātus ad rēgem in Campāniam dē redimendīs captīvīs lēgātōs mīsit. 4. Hīs lēgātīs honōrificē exceptīs, dīxit sē sine pretiō captīvōs esse redditūrum. 5. Līberālitās Pyrrhī nōn minor virtūte erat. 6. Sī captīvōs sine pretiō reddat, Rōmānī līberālitātem cōgnōscant.

1. Night having put an end to the battle,[1] the king hastened by forced marches into Campania. 2. Then the consul, when he learned of this,[2] went to meet him with a fresh army. 3. When he saw the new army,[3] he said that his fortune against the Romans was more wretched than (that) of Hercules against the hydra. 4. He said that he had returned the captives without price, in order that the Romans might come to know his liberality.

(*a*) Observe the following words and expressions used in the foregoing lessons: —

sē recipere; sē īnferre; eō, īre; prōcēdō; dēmigrō; contendō; properō; appropinquō; veniō.

Also the following: **sciō; āgnōscō; cōgnōscō.**

---

[1] Literally, *an end having been given to the battle by night.*
[2] Cf. **98.**   [3] Ablative Absolute.

LESSON LXXVIII

258. Erat Pyrrhus mītī āc plācābilī animō; solet enim māgnī animī comes esse clēmentia. Ēius hūmānitātem expertī sunt Tarentīnī. Quī cum sērō intellēxissent sē prō sociō dominum accēpisse, sortem suam miserābantur idque aliquantō līberius, ubi vīnō incaluerant. Neque deerant, quī ad Pyrrhum dēferrent; arcessītīque nōnnūllī, quod inter convīvium parum honōrificē dē rēge locūtī essent; sed perīculum simplex cōnfessiō culpae discussit. Nam cum rēx percontātus esset, num ea, quae pervēnissent ad aurēs suās, dīxissent; "Et haec dīximus," inquiunt, "rēx, et nisi vīnum dēfēcisset, multō plūra et graviōra dictūrī fuimus." Pyrrhus, quī mālēbat vīnī quam hominum eam culpam vidērī, subrīdēns eōs dīmīsit.

NOTES

259. Decline **mītī** and **plācābilī** (**188** (*a*)). Compare **mītis**. — **animō**: Rule XXIII. — **solet**: principal parts. What kind of a verb (**191**, n. on **ausae sunt**)? Observe the inverted arrangement of words here. — **Quī cum sērō intellēxissent,** *and when too late they had found out,* etc. Compare **sērō**. — Why are **sē** and **suam** used here rather than **eōs** and **eōrum**, and why **ēius**, in the preceding sentence, rather than **suam**? — **miserābantur,** *were bewailing.* Notice the force of the Imperfect Tense here. The Imperfect is used to denote *continued, repeated,* or *customary* action. — **idque,** *and that too.* — **aliquantō līberius,** *somewhat too freely* (**231** (*d*)). — **incaluerant** is from **incalēscō,** an *Inceptive* verb. All Inceptives end in **-scō,** but the **sc** is found only in the parts formed from the present stem. They are of the 3d Conjugation, and are called *Inceptive* because they denote the beginning of an action. For example, **caleō** means *to be warm;* **calēscō,** *to grow warm.* — **vīnō incaluerant,** *had become heated with wine.*

iī understood, the antecedent of **quī**, is the subject of **deerant**.
— **dēferrent**, Subjunctive in a relative result clause, *there were not
lacking persons to report.* Principal parts, and synopsis of the mode.
— **arcessītī**: supply **sunt**. Notice that this verb forms the perfect
and supine stems after the analogy of the 4th Conjugation. Cf.
accītus est (208). — **parum honōrificē**, *with too little respect.*
Compare **parum (244 (e))**. — **locūtī essent**, Subjunctive in im-
plied indirect discourse; *they had spoken* (as was alleged) **(247 (b))**.
— **perīculum**: the danger they would be in from giving offense
to the king. — For declension of **simplex**, cf. **253 (a)**. — **ea**, object
of **dīxissent**. How does **ea** differ from the Abl. sing. fem.? —
pervēnissent, Subjunctive, because it is a part of the inquiry
of the king, and hence it is not the expression of the thought of
the writer, but of the king **(247 (b))**. — **dīxissent**, indirect ques-
tion introduced by **num**. Rule XXXIV. — To whom does **suās**
refer? Why is it feminine plural? — **et** (haec) . . . **et** (nisi), *both
. . . and.* — **nisi vīnum dēfēcisset**, *if the wine had not given out*
(253. III). — Compare **multō, plūra,** and **graviōra**. — **dictūrī
fuimus**, the Perf. Ind. of the Act. Periphrastic Conjugation **(213
(a))**; *we should have said.* Used instead of **dīxissēmus**.

plūra and **graviōra** are adjectives used alone in the plural as
nouns; *many more and severer things.* **plūs** is declined: —

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	Masc. and Fem.	*Neut.*	*Masc. and Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	——	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
Gen.	——	plūris	plūrium	
Dat.	——	——	plūribus	
Acc.	——	plūs	plūrēs (-īs)	plūra
Abl.	——	——	plūribus	

mālēbat, from **mālō**; compounded of **magis**, *rather*, and **volō**,
to wish. — **vīnī** and **hominum** limit **culpam**. **eam** is the subject of
vidērī, and **culpam** is the Predicate Accusative. — Compare **sērō,
līberius, parum, plūra, multō,** and **graviōra.** — Give the Com-
parative of **simplex** and **plācābilī.** — Form adverbs from **simplex**
and **graviōra,** and compare them.

260. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Tarentīnī, cum sērō vīdissent Pyrrhum prō sociō dominum esse, nōn aegritūdinem animī dissimulābant. 2. Pyrrhus vir inclitā clēmentiā et hūmānitāte erat. 3. Nōnnullī ad Pyrrhum dētulērunt quae dē eō Tarentīnī locūtī essent. 4. Sortem suam miserābantur quod prō sociō dominum accēpissent. 5. Nōnnullī aliquantō līberius inter convīvium dē Pyrrhō locūtī erant. 6. "Num ea, quae pervēnērunt ad aurēs meās, dīxistī?" "Vīnō incaluimus," inquiunt, "ubi haec gravissima dīximus." Cum vīnī ea culpa vidērētur, subrīdēns eōs dīmīsit.

1. Pyrrhus had[1] a more conciliatory spirit than the Romans, for he returned the captive Romans without a price. 2. They had spoken with too little respect of the king when they were heated with wine. 3. Therefore, he summoned them and inquired whether they had said these things. 4. He said that he preferred that it should seem (to be) the fault of the wine rather than of the men. 5. If the wine should give out, we should not say much more.

———∘○°◦°○∘———

LESSON LXXIX

261. Pyrrhus igitur cum putāret sibi glōriōsum fore, pācem et foedus cum Rōmānīs post victōriam facere, Rōmam mīsit lēgātum Cīneam, quī pācem aequīs condiciōnibus prōpōneret. Erat is rēgī familiāris multumque apud eum

---

[1] Literally, *was of a more conciliatory*, etc.

grātiā valēbat.   Dīcere solēbat Pyrrhus sē plūrēs urbēs
Cīneae ēloquentiā quam vī et armīs expūgnāsse.   Cīneās
tamen rēgis cupiditātem nōn adūlābātur; nam cum in ser-
mōne Pyrrhus eī cōnsilia sua aperīret dīxissetque sē velle
Ītaliam diciōnī suae subicere, Cīneās " Superātīs Rōmānīs,"
inquit, " quid agere dēstinās, ō rēx ? "

NOTES

262. The order is, **igitur cum Pyrrhus putāret,** etc. **igitur**
usually stands second in its clause. — **cum** is causal here; *since.* —
Form an adverb from **glōriōsus,** and compare both adjective and
adverb. — **fore** is an old form, equivalent to **futūrum esse.** Cf.
foret (169). The subject of **fore** is the clause **pācem . . . facere,**
and **glōriōsum** agrees with this subject. *A clause used substantively*
always takes its adjective in the neuter. — **Rōmam** : Rule XXX. —
quī . . . prōpōneret a relative purpose clause, and hence its verb
is in the Subjunctive; *sent Cineas to offer peace,* etc. What is the
rule for the tense of **prōpōneret?** — **condiciōnibus** : Rule XIX.
— **multumque . . . valēbat,** *and had much influence with him on*
account of his esteem (for him), *i.e.* the esteem of Pyrrhus for
Cineas.

rēgī is in the Dative, limiting the adjective **familiāris.**   Cf.
mātrī simillimus (143).

Rule. — *Adjectives of* NEARNESS, FRIENDLINESS, FITNESS,
LIKENESS, *or their opposites, take the Dative of the object to*
which the quality is directed.

vī et armīs, *by force of arms;* literally, *by force and arms.* This
illustrates the figure of speech called *Hendiadys,* in which two
nouns connected by a copulative conjunction are used instead
of one noun and an adjective or limiting Genitive.   Decline
vī (116 (*b*)). — **tamen** : although Cineas was an intimate friend
of the king, nevertheless he did not flatter him. — **Cīneās** (before
superātīs) is the subject of **inquit.** — Learn the inflection of **volō,**

I am willing; **nōlō** (= **nōn** + **volō**), *I am unwilling;* and **mālō** (= **magis** + **volō**), *I wish rather.*   Appendix, **9.**

(*a*) Besides interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs, there are three interrogative particles used in asking questions, — **ne**, **nōnne**, and **num**. **-ne** is an enclitic, usually affixed to the emphatic word of the sentence.

-ne asks for information; as, **venitne?** *is he coming?*
nōnne expects the answer *yes;* as, **nōnne venit?** *is he not coming?*
num expects the answer *no;* as, **num venit?** *is he coming? = he is not coming, is he?*

263. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Pyrrhusne Rōmam lēgātum mīsit quī pācem et foedus cum Rōmānīs faceret ? 2. Eī glōriōsum erit pācem aequīs condiciōnibus facere. 3. Nōnne Cīneās rēgī familiāris fuit ? 4. Num Pyrrhus sē mālle Cīneae ēloquentiam audīre dīcēbat quam Ītaliam diciōnī suae subicere ? 5. Pyrrhus dīxit sē velle plūrimās urbēs vī et armīs expūgnāre. 6. Nōnne Pyrrhus in sermōne Cīneae cōnsilia sua aperuit ?

1. Pyrrhus thought that it would be glorious for him to offer peace on equal terms. 2. Did the king send an envoy to Rome to offer peace and alliance with the Romans ? 3. Did not Cineas inquire what the king intended to do when the Romans were overcome ? 4. " I wish," said he, " to subject all Italy to my sway." 5. Did Pyrrhus capture the cities by force of arms ?

(*a*) Observe the following : —

glōria, *glory;* **glōrior, -ārī**, *to glory;* **glōriātiō, -ōnis**, *a glorying;*
    glōriōsus, *full of glory;* **glōriōsē**, *gloriously;* **glōriōla**, *a little glory.*

grātus, *pleasing;* **grātia,** *favor;* **grātē,** *with pleasure;* **grātīs,** *through favor;* **grātuitō,** *without pay, as a favor;* **grātiōsus,** *full of favor;* **grātulor, -ārī,** *to manifest joy;* **grātulātiō,** *a manifestation of joy;* **grātificor, -ārī,** *to do a favor.*

Observe that nouns in -**iō** are abstracts, and that adjectives in -**ōsus** denote fulness.

<hr/>

LESSON LXXX

264. "Ītaliae vīcīna est Sicilia," inquit Pyrrhus, "nec difficile erit eam armīs occupāre." Tunc Cīneās: "Occupātā Siciliā, quid posteā āctūrus es?" Rēx, quī nōndum Cīneae mentem perspiciēbat, "In Āfricam," inquit, "trāicere mihi in animō est." Cuī ille: "Quid deinde, ō rēx?" "Tum dēnique, mī Cīneās," inquit Pyrrhus, "nōs quiētī dabimus dulcīque ōtiō fruēmur." Tum Cīneās: "At quid impedit, quōminus istō ōtiō iam nunc fruāris?"

Rōmam cum vēnisset Cīneās, domōs prīncipum cum ingentibus dōnīs circumībat. Nūsquam vērō receptus est. Nōn ā virīs sōlum, sed etiam ā mulieribus sprēta ēius mūnera.

NOTES

265. **Ītaliae,** Dat. after **vīcīna.** Rule XIV. — **nec = et nōn.** — **Cīneās, ille,** and **Cīneās** following **tum,** are subjects of **dīxit** understood. — **mentem,** *the purpose* (of Cineas). — **mihi,** Dat. of possessor; *it is to me in mind = I intend.* **In Āfricam trāicere** is the subject of **est.** Decline **mihi.** — **Quid deinde,** *what next?* — **mī,** Voc. sing. masc. of **meus, -a, -um.** It is declined like **bonus,** except that it has **mī** in the Voc. sing. masc. — **nōs** is the object of **dabimus**; *we will give ourselves,* etc. — **dulcī:** decline and compare. — **ōtiō:** Rule XXVI.

istō is a demonstrative pronoun, from **iste, ista, istud.** As **hīc** has been called the demonstrative of the 1st person (**116** (*a*)), and **ille** the demonstrative of the 3d person (**182** (*a*)), so **iste** may be called the demonstrative of the 2d person, because it refers to that which is related to the person spoken to. It means *that of yours,* or *that which you are speaking of* or *are interested in.* **istō˙ ōtiō** = *that ease which you are speaking of.* **iste** is declined like **ille** (**182** (*a*)).

fruāris: Rule XXXII.—**iam nunc,** *just now, at once.* — **domōs** is the direct object of **circumībat,** and is thus declined:—

(*a*)	SINGULAR	PLURAL
N. V.	dómus	dómūs
Gen.	dómūs (Loc. dómī *or* dómuī)	domốrum (dómuum)
Dat.	dómuī (dómō)	dómibus
Acc.	dómum	dómōs *or* dómūs
Abl.	dómō (dómū)	domíbus

A part of these forms, as will be seen, are from a stem in **-u** of the 4th Declension, and a part from a stem in **-o** of the 2d Declension.

circumībat, Impf. of **circumeō** = **circum** (*around*) + **eō** (*to go*) (**176** (*a*)). — **Nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam,** *not only . . . but even.* — **sprēta,** from **spernō. sunt** is to be supplied.

266. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Pyrrhus dīcere solēbat nōn difficile futūrum esse Siciliam armīs occupāre. 2. Multō difficilius erat Rōmānōs superāre. 3. Occupātā Siciliā, in Āfricam trāicere Pyrrhō in animō fuit. 4. Dēnique dēstinābat sē quiētī dare dulcīque ōtiō fruī. 5. "Num in Āfricam," inquit Cīneās, "trāicere tibi[1] in animō est?" 6. "At quid impedit, quōminus in Āfricam iam nunc trāiciās?" 7. Sī Pyrrhus Rōmānōs superāvisset, Siciliam occupāvisset. 8. Sī Siciliam occupet,

---

[1] Dat. of **tū,** *you.*

in Āfricam statim trāiciat.   9. Dulcius est ōtiō fruī quam
cum Rōmānīs dīmicāre.

1. Since Sicily is near Italy, it will not be difficult to take
possession of it with arms.   2. If Sicily is taken [1] possession
of, we will cross into Africa.   3. If (our) enemies should
be overcome, we should enjoy the victory.   4. Did the king
perceive the purpose of Cineas?   5. Did Cineas come to
Rome in order to visit the houses of the chief-men with
great gifts?   6. Cineas, however, was a man of great
eloquence.

Observe the following English derivatives: —

vicinity	*perspicuity*	*impede*
occupation	*dulcet*	*donor*
activity	*fruition*	*remunerate*

Form English derivatives from the following Latin
words: **clēmentia, expertī, intellegō, convīvium, dēfēcisset,
foedus, prōpōnō, cupiditās, subicere, quiēs.**

REVIEW QUESTIONS

How are adverbs formed from adjectives? How is the Com-
parative of adverbs formed? the Superlative? Explain the use
of **suus.** When is it used rather than **ēius** or **eōrum**? What
three words are used to mean army? Give the different meanings.
What construction follows verbs of *asking, teaching,* etc.? Give
an example. How is a relative pronoun to be translated when it
stands first in a sentence? What is the general rule for modes
in *Indirect Discourse?* Give different Latin expressions, meaning
to fight, to kill. Give ordinal numerals for 2, 5, 10, 20, 30. Give

---

[1] **253** (*A*) II.

the three forms of conditional sentences, and tell how each is expressed in Latin. What is a semi-deponent verb? Give an example. What is an inceptive verb? How are inceptive verbs formed? In what conjugation are they? What parts of **plūs** are wanting? What is hendiadys? Composition of **nōlō** and **mālō**? Give the principal parts and the synopsis of the Indicative and Subjunctive. Give the three interrogative particles and the use of each. What difference in the meaning of **hīc, ille** and **iste**?

LESSON LXXXI

267. Intrōductus deinde in cūriam cum rēgis virtūtem prōpēnsumque in Rōmānōs animum verbīs extolleret et dē condiciōnum aequitāte dissereret et sententia senātūs ad pācem et foedus faciendum inclīnāre vidērētur, tum Appius Claudius, ob senectūtem et caecitātem abstinēre cūriā ōlim solitus, cōnfēstim in senātum lectīcā dēferrī sē iūssit ibīque gravissimā ōrātiōne pācem dissuāsit, itaque respōnsum Pyrrhō ā senātū est, eum, dōnec Ītaliā excēssisset, pācem cum Rōmānīs habēre nōn posse.

NOTES

268. Let the student first read this long sentence through in the Latin, carrying the meaning along in his mind as he proceeds. It will thus present itself to him in about this form : —

"Conducted next into the senate-house, when the king's high character and kindly towards the Romans feeling with words he praised, and about the fairness of terms he discoursed, and the sentiment of the senate towards the making of peace and a treaty to incline seemed, then Appius Claudius on account of age and blindness to stay away from the senate-house for some time being

accustomed, immediately into the senate on a litter to be carried himself he ordered, and there in a most earnest speech, peace he advised against, and so it was replied to Pyrrhus by the senate, him, until from Italy he had withdrawn, peace with the Romans to have not to be able."

This does not give an idiomatic English sentence, it is true, but it does give an idea of the Latin mode of expression, and, if the sentence be read through in this way with proper emphasis, the meaning will be sufficiently clear. It may then undergo such modifications as may be necessary to convert it into the English idiom.

faciendum, a Gerundive to be taken with **pācem** and **foedus,** but agreeing in gender with the nearest noun, **foedus. — cūriā :** Rule XX. — **cōnfēstim,** *right away.* Used properly of something to be done with rapidity. Cf. **200.**

The **lectīca** was a kind of litter, used sometimes for carrying dead bodies to the grave, sometimes for conveying persons feeble from age or disease, or those disabled by wounds received in battle. In later times, the **lectīca** was used by the wealthy for traveling, and was often fitted up in expensive style.

respōnsum est, *reply was made to Pyrrhus by the senate.* — **Ītaliā :** Rule XX. — **excēssisset,** Plupf. Subj. (**247** (*a*)). The principal verb in the *indirect discourse* here is **posse,** depending upon **respōnsum est.**

269. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Cīneās deinde in cūriam intrōductus est.   2. Cum Cīneās putāret sententiam senātūs ad pācem et foedus faciendum inclīnāre vidērī, tum Appius Claudius pācem dissuāsit.   3. Pyrrhus, vir mītī et plācābilī animō, Rōmam mīsit Cīneam, quī pācem cum Rōmānīs faceret.   4. Pyrrhus, dōnec Ītaliā excēsserit, pācem cum Rōmānīs habēre nōn potest.   5. Num Pyrrhus Ītaliā excēssit ?   6. Respōnsum eī ā Rōmānīs est, sē pācem nōn factūrōs esse.   7. Nōnne Rōmānī pācem cum Ēpīrī rēge fēcērunt ?

In the senate Cineas was extolling with his words the high character of Pyrrhus. The sentiment of the senate inclined towards making peace and a treaty. The old age and blindness of Appius Claudius prevented him from going to the senate. And so he ordered himself to be carried to the senate at once on a litter. In a very earnest speech he said that the Romans would not make peace with Pyrrhus until he had withdrawn from Italy.

———⚬⦂⦂⦂⚬⚬———

LESSON LXXXII

270. Praetereā Rōmānī captīvōs omnēs, quōs Pyrrhus reddiderat, īnfāmēs habērī iussērunt, quod armātī capī potuissent, neque ante eōs ad veterem statum revertī quam sī bīnūm hostium occīsōrum spolia rettulissent. Ita lēgātus ad rēgem revertit; ā quō cum Pyrrhus quaereret, quālem Rōmam comperisset, Cīneās respondit urbem sibi templum, senātum vērō cōnsessum rēgum esse vīsum.

NOTES

271. **captīvōs**, subject of **habērī**. — **īnfāmēs**, predicate adj., after **habērī**. Decline **īnfāmis**. — **armātī**, an adj. agreeing with the subject of **potuissent**; *because they had allowed themselves to be captured with arms in their hands.* — **potuissent** is in the Subj. in implied Indirect Discourse. The reason given in **quod . . . potuissent** is not the reason of the writer, but of the Romans (**247** (*b*)). — **neque** = *and not.* Same as **nec.** — **revertī** depends upon **iussērunt**, like **habērī**. *And that they should not return to their former condition before they had brought back,* etc. — **ante + quam** = *before that.* — **sī** is redundant here, and may be omitted without
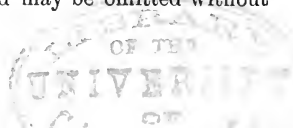
changing the sense. — **bīnūm,** contracted form for **bīnōrum.** It
is a Distributive Numeral, meaning *two each, i.e. the spoils of two
enemies slain by each.* — Synopsis of **rettulissent** in the Subj. Act.
— **ā quō cum**: Cf. **quī cum** and **quōs cum** in former passages.
When Pyrrhus inquired of him, etc. — **quālem Rōmam comperis-
set,** *what kind of a Rome he had found.* The verb is in the Subj., by
Rule XXXIV. — **sibi** depends upon **vīsum esse.** — **urbem** and
senātum are the subjects of **vīsum esse,** and **templum** and **cōn-
sessum** are predicate Accusatives.

272. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Rōmānī dīxērunt captīvōs omnēs, quōs Pyrrhus red-
didisset, īnfāmēs habērī.   2. Rōmānī sē dēfendere nōn po-
terant.   3. Ita senātus eōs ad rēgem revertī iūssit.   4. Nōn
ad veterem statum revertērunt quod armātī capī potuerant.
5. Cum ā lēgātō rēx quaereret quid Rōmānī fierī[1] iūssissent,
Cīneās respondit, senātum captīvōs bīnūm hostium occīsōrum
spolia referre iūssisse.   6. Urbs lēgātō templum, senātus vērō
cōnsessus rēgum vidēbātur.

1. They considered those whom Pyrrhus had taken with
arms in their hands, as infamous.   2. And so the reply was
made to the envoy by the senate, that the captives could
not return to their former condition.   3. They said that they
would bring back the spoils of the enemies (who had been)
slain.   4. Pyrrhus asked his envoy what kind of a senate
he had found at Rome.[2]

Observe the following: —

ōs, ōris, *the mouth;* **ōrō, -āre,** *to speak;* **ōrātor,** *one who speaks;*
    ōrātiō, *a speech;* **ōsculum,** *a little mouth, a kiss;* **adōrō, -āre,**
    to call upon, to reverence; **ōstium,** *a door, an entrance.*

---

[1] *To be done.*   [2] **Rōmae.**

LESSON LXXXIII

Paulus Æmilius and Terentius Varro

273. Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnerat. Adversus eum Rōmā profectī sunt duo cōnsulēs, Paulus Aemilius et Terentius Varrō. Paulō Fabī cunctātiō magis placēbat; Varrō autem ferōx et temerārius, ācriōra sequēbātur cōnsilia. Ambō cōnsulēs ad vīcum, quī Cannae appellābātur, castra commūnīvērunt. Ibi deinde Varrō invītō conlēgā aciem īnstrūxit et sīgnum pūgnae dedit, Hannibal autem ita cōnstituerat aciem, ut Rōmānīs et sōlis radiī et ventus ab oriente pulverem adflāns adversī essent. Victus caesusque est Rōmānus exercitus; nūsquam graviōre vulnere adflīcta est rēs pūblica.   216 B.C.

NOTES

274. Hannibal came into Italy from the north over the Alps. After defeating the Romans in several engagements, he led his army down into Apulia in southeastern Italy. Here, near the little hamlet of Cannae, on the banks of the Aufidus, he again met the Roman forces and inflicted upon them the most crushing defeat that Rome had ever experienced.

Rōmā: Rule XXX.

Paulō, Dat. after **placēbat**.

Rule. — *Many verbs signifying to* FAVOR, PLEASE, TRUST, OBEY, *and their contraries, to* COMMAND, RESIST, PERSUADE, THREATEN, *and* BE ANGRY, *and the like, are followed by the Dative.*

Fabī, Gen. of **Fabius**. Fabius Maximus was made commander of the Roman forces after the defeat at Trasumenus and before the battle of Cannae. His policy was to watch the movements of

the enemy, hang upon his flanks and rear, cut off his supplies, and harass him in all possible ways without permitting himself to be drawn into any general action. Hence he was called **cunctātor**, or the Lingerer. — **ācriōra cōnsilia**, *more vigorous counsels.* — **Ambō**, decline like **duo (198 (*a*))**. — **invītō conlēgā**, *his colleague being unwilling = against the wish of his colleague.* Paulus favored the policy of Fabius and wished to avoid a battle with Hannibal until he could choose his time and place. Varro, on the contrary, was eager for a battle. — **ita . . . ut**, *so stationed his army that*, etc. **ut** introduces a result clause.

Rōmānīs, Dat. after **adversī**: *opposed to the Romans = in the face of the Romans.* Rule XIV. — **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.* — **rēs pūblica**, sometimes written as one word, **rēspūblica**, both parts being declined; Gen. and Dat. **reīpūblicae**; Acc. **rempūblicam**, etc. — **temerārius** has no terminational comparison. How may it be compared? — Decline **ferōx** and **ācriōra**. Compare **ferōx**, **ācriōra**, and **graviōre**. Form adverbs from the positive of these adjectives and compare them. **244.** — What is the Superlative of **magis**?

275. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Cum Hannibal in Āpūliam pervēnisset, adversus eum Rōmānī duo cōnsulēs mīsērunt. 2. Dīcunt Fabī cunctātiōnem Paulō placēre. 3. Uter ācriōra cōnsilia sequēbātur? Nōnne erat Varrō ferōx et temerārius? 4. Ab ambōbus cōnsulibus commūnīta sunt castra. 5. Vīcus, ad quem castra posuerant, Cannae appellābātur. 6. Ibi deinde Varrō, invītō Paulō, pūgnam cōnseruit. 7. Tum sīgnō datō Hannibal ad certāmen prōcēssit. 8. Cum Rōmānīs sōlis radiī adversī essent, Hannibal cōnsulum exercitum facile vīcit. 9. Nūsquam rēs pūblica graviōra vulnera accēpit.

Hannibal came into Italy and joined battle with the Romans at Cannae, a hamlet in Apulia. The Romans were

led by the two consuls, Paulus and Varro. Paulus was very
similar to Fabius, and delay was pleasing to him. But
Varro was rash and wished to fight with the enemy im-
mediately. Hannibal drew up his line in such-a-way [1] that
the wind blowing the dust from the east was in the face of
the Romans. Varro was more imprudent than Paulus.

<hr />

LESSON LXXXIV

276. Paulus Aemilius tēlīs obrutus cecidit; quem cum
mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō opplētum cruōre conspexis-
set quīdam tribūnus mīlitum, "Cape," inquit, "hunc equum
et fuge, Aemilī. Etiam sine tuā morte lacrimārum satis
lūctūsque est." Ad ea cōnsul; "Tū quidem mācte virtūte
estō! Sed cavē, exiguum tempus ē manibus hostium ēvā-
dendī perdās! Abī, nūntiā patribus, ut urbem mūniant āc
priusquam hostis victor adveniat, praesidiīs fīrment. Mē
in hāc strāge meōrum mīlitum patere exspīrāre." Alter
cōnsul cum paucīs equitibus Venusiam perfūgit. Cōnsulārēs
aut praetōriī occidērunt vīgintī, senātōrēs captī aut occīsī
trīgintā, nōbilēs virī trecentī, mīlitum quadrāgintā mīlia,
equitum tria mīlia et quīngentī.

NOTES

277. obrutus: cf. **Tatius scūtīs eam obruī iūssit,** Lesson LI.
— Principal parts of **cadō** and **caedō.** — **mediā in pūgnā,** *in the
midst of the battle.* Monosyllabic prepositions are often placed
between the noun and the adjective. — **sedentem** and **opplētum**

<hr />

[1] Ita.

agree with **quem**, which is the object of **cōnspexisset**. — **quīdam** is declined like **quī, quae, quod**, except that **m** is changed to **n** before **d**; as, **quendam** for **quemdam**. The neuter sometimes has **quiddam** for **quoddam**. Write the declension. — **tribūnus mīlitum**: the Roman legion had six of these tribunes of the soldiers, or military tribunes, each of whom commanded it for two months of the year. — **Cape** and **fuge** are in the Pres. Imperative Act. 2d sing. This form of the verb is the same as the pres. stem. For example, **amā, monē, rege, audī**, are the Imperatives of **amō, moneō, regō**, and **audiō**. The Pres. Imperative Act. may be found by dropping -**re** of the Pres. Inf. Act. The Imperative has two tenses, — the Pres. and Fut. Learn the inflection of the Imperative Act. and Pass. as given in the Appendix, **1–4**.

Notice that the Pres. Imperative Pass. has the same form as the Pres. Inf. Act.

(*a*) The Imperatives of **dīcō, dūcō, faciō**, and **ferō** drop the final **e** of the stem in the 2d sing.; thus, **dīc, dūc, fac**, and **fer**. — **tuā**: decline like **bonus**. — **lacrimārum** and **lūctūs** are Genitives limiting **satis**; *there is enough of tears and grief.* — Supply **dīxit** with **cōnsul**.

(*b*) **tū** is the personal pronoun of the 2d person. Learn its inflection; Appendix, **13**.

mācte virtūte estō, is an idiomatic expression, equivalent to the English *Heaven speed thee! Good luck attend thee!* or *Well done!* **estō** is the Fut. Imperative of **sum**.

(*c*) Learn the inflection of the Imperative of **sum**; Appendix, **6**. **cavē**, inflect the Imper. — **ēvādendī**, the Gen. sing. of the Gerund limiting **tempus**; *time for escaping.* In what cases is the Gerund used? Has it any plural? See **119** n. on **vēnandō**. — **perdās**, Pres. Subj. after **nē**, lest, omitted after **cavē**. **Nē** is often omitted before an object clause after **cavē**; *beware of losing*, etc. — **Abī**, Imper. of **abeō** = **ab** + **eō**; *depart.*

(*d*) Learn the inflection of the Imperative of **eō**; Appendix, **11**. **nūntiā**, Imper. of **nūntiō**. Inflect the Pres. and Fut. of the Imper., both voices. Notice the omission of the connective be-

tween **abī** and **nūntiā**. — **ut mūniant**, literally, *that they should fortify;* better rendered, *to fortify*. — **victor**, a noun with the force of an adj. Cf. (**153** (*a*)), n. on **victor auguriō**. Translate, *before the enemy shall arrive victorious.* — **adveniat** is in the Subj. in a subordinate clause in Indirect Discourse. Rule XXXV. **nūntiā** is the verb of *saying* that introduces the Indirect Discourse. — **fīrment**, Pres. Subj., connected to **mūniant** by **et** understood. Give the synopsis of **mūniant**, **adveniat**, and **fīrment**, in the Subj. — **Mē**, subject of **exspīrāre**. Decline it (App. **13**). — **patere**, the Imper. of the deponent verb **patior**; Passive in form, but Active in meaning; *allow me*, etc. Inflect it like the Passive of **capiō**, Appendix, **5**. — **Alter** = *the other*, when two are spoken of; **alius**, *another*, when more than two are spoken of.

Venusiam: Rule, XXX. — *Ex-consuls or ex-praetors there perished twenty, senators captured or slain thirty, noblemen three hundred, of soldiers forty thousand, of knights three thousand and five hundred.* — The **equitēs** were those who served on horseback, *the knights.* — **mīlle**, *a thousand*, is indeclinable in the sing. In the plu. it has **mīlia**, **mīlium**, **mīlibus**, etc. — Prin. parts of **occidērunt** and **occīsī**.

(*e*) The first three cardinal numbers are declined, as we have seen (**198** (*a*)). From four to one hundred inclusive, they are indeclinable. From two hundred to nine hundred inclusive, they are declined in the plu., like the plu. of **bonus**. — **mīlitum** and **equitum** are Partitive Genitives after **mīlia**; the sing. **mīlle** does not usually take the Genitive.

Alter is declined as follows : —

SINGULAR

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	álter	áltera	álterum
Gen.	altérius	altérius	altérius
Dat.	álterī	álterī	álterī
Acc.	álterum	álterum	álterum
Abl.	álterō	álterā	álterō

The plural is declined like the plural of **bonus**.

278. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Haud grāta Varrōnī erat Fabī cunctātiō. 2. Multī Rō-mānī tēlīs obrutī cecidērunt. 3. Quīdam tribūnus mīlitum Paulum mediā in pūgnā sedentem in saxō cōnspexit. 4. Quī-dam Paulō dīxit, sine ēius morte lacrimārum satis lūctūs-que esse. 5. Cavēte, hostēs ē manibus cōnsulum ēvādant. 6. Priusquam hostis advēnerit, fīrmāte urbem praesidiīs. 7. Paulus fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit, sed Varrō Venusiam perfūgit. 8. Abīte, urbem mūnīte, praesidiīs fīrmāte.

1. "Take this horse, Aemilius," said a certain tribune of the soldiers, "and escape from the hands of the enemy." 2. Beware of taking refuge in the city, with a few soldiers. 3. Announce to the ex-consuls that they should flee im-mediately from the city. 4. Allow me to depart and to return to Rome. 5. The soldiers of Hannibal were fiercer than (those)[1] of the Romans. 6. Behold the victorious enemy: flee-for-refuge to Rome; draw up the line of battle.

LESSON LXXXV

ANULUS

279. Hannibal in tēstimōnium victōriae suae trēs modiōs aureōrum ānulōrum Carthā-ginem mīsit, quōs dē manibus equitum Rō-mānōrum et senātōrum dētrāxerat.

Hannibalī victōrī cum cēterī grātulārentur suādērentque ut quiētem iam ipse sūmeret et fessīs mīlitibus daret, ūnus ex ēius prae-

---

[1] Omit.

fectīs, Maharbal, minimē cēssandum ratus, Hannibalem hor-
tābātur, ut statim Rōmam pergeret, diē quīntō victor in Capi-
tōliō epulātūrus.   Cumque Hannibal illud nōn probāsset,
Maharbal "Nōn omnia nīmīrum," inquit, "eīdem diī dedēre.
Vincere scīs, Hannibal; victōriā ūtī nescīs."   Mora hūius
diēī satis crēditur salūtī fuisse urbī et imperiō.

NOTES

280. in tēstimōnium victōriae suae, *for a proof of his victory,
i.e. to show how great the victory was.* — **aureōrum ānulōrum**: cf.
aureōs ānulōs, Lesson L.   Only Romans of high rank were
allowed by law to wear gold rings. — A **modius** was equal to
nearly one peck. — **Carthāginem**: Rule XXX.   Carthage was a
city in northern Africa, near modern Tunis.   It was the bitter
enemy of Rome. — **Hannibalī** is the Dat. after **grātulārentur** and
suādērent, by Rule XII. — **victōrī**, *victorious.* — **ut . . . daret**:
read in the order of the Latin words and the meaning will be
apparent.   *That rest now he himself should take and to the weary
soldiers should give.* — **ex ēius praefectīs**, equivalent to a Gen.
limiting **ūnus**; thus, **ūnus ēius praefectōrum** = *one of his com-
manders.*   The Ablative with **ē (ex)** or **dē** is often used instead of
the Partitive Genitive,[1] especially after cardinal numbers.

   minimē cēssandum: Cf. **minimēque servīlem**, 140.   Supply
esse with **cēssandum**, making the Infinitive of the Pass. Peri-
phrastic Conj. depending upon **ratus**; *thinking that it must by no
means be delayed,* = *thinking that he must by no means delay.*   Cf. **214.**
— **Rōmam**: Cf. **Carthāginem**, above. — Supply **et** before **diē
quīntō**. — **diē**: Rule XXII. — **victor** agrees with a pronoun
understood referring to Hannibal and the subject of **epulātūrus**
(**esset**); *that he victorious,* etc. — **epulātūrus (esset)** is in the same
construction as **pergeret**; the Impf. Subj. of the Act. Periphrastic

---

[1] That is, the Gen. denoting the whole, limiting a word denoting a part,
as in **ūnus praefectōrum**, **ūnus** being a word denoting a part, and
praefectōrum a word denoting the whole of which a part is taken.

Conj. Cf. **213.** — **eīdem**, is the Dat. sing. after **dedēre** ; *truly the gods have not given to the same one*, etc. — **dedēre**, the Perf. Ind. Act., 3d plu. of **dō** ; **dedērunt** or **dedēre**. — Decline **diī (205 (b)).** — **scīs**, *you know how*, etc. — **victōriā**: Rule XXVI. — **salūtī** is the Dat. of the *end for which*, and **urbī** and **imperiō** are Datives of the *object to which*, after **satis fuisse**; *is believed to have been enough for safety to the city and empire; i.e. enough to make the city and empire safe.*

Rule. — *A few verbs admit two Datives,* — *one denoting the* OBJECT TO WHICH, *the other the* END FOR WHICH *anything is, or is done.*

Give the synopsis of **cēssandum esse** in the Ind. Mode, and of **epulātūrus esset** in the Subj.

281. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Aureōs ānulōs dē manibus equitum Rōmānōrum et senātōrum Hannibal dētrāxit et Carthāginem mīsit. 2. Ūnus ex eius mīlitibus suāsit nē quiētem fessīs hostibus daret. 3. Maharbal dīxit Hannibalem statim Rōmam pergere posse. 4. Hannibal illud minimē probāvit, sed quiētem iam ipse sūmere voluit. 5. Quid diē quīntō victor in Capitōliō nōn epulābātur ? 6. Cavē, Hannibal, quiētem sūmās nē deinde tē Rōmānī vincant. 7. Ūnus ē tribūnīs mīlitum dīxit Hannibalem vincere scīre, victōriā ūtī nescīre.

1. The gold rings, which had been taken from the hands of the Roman knights, were sent to Carthage as a proof of the victory. 2. One of his commanders urged Hannibal not to delay at all, but to hasten to Rome at once. 3. Use your victory, Hannibal; send your army to Rome. 4. Hasten to Rome. 5. He said that on the fifth day he would banquet at Rome. 6. His friends were congratulating him because

he had conquered[1] the Roman army.   7. If you knew how
to conquer, you would know how to use (your) victory.

Observe the following : —

probō, *to approve;* **probus,** *worthy of approval, honest;* **improbus,**
unworthy of approval, base; **improbitās,** *dishonesty;* **comprobō,**
to approve; **comprobātiō,** *approbation;* **probitās,** *that which is
approved, honesty;* **probātiō,** *approval;* **improbō,** *to disapprove;*
approbō, *to approve;* **approbātiō,** *approbation.*

———ooᥱᥱoo———

LESSON LXXXVI

282. Hannibal cum victōriā posset ūtī, fruī māluit, relic-
tāque Rōmā in Campāniam dēvertit, cūius dēliciīs mox
exercitūs ārdor ēlanguit; adeō ut vērē dictum sit Capuam
Hannibalī Cannās fuisse. Numquam tantum pavōris Rōmae
fuit, quantum ubi acceptae clādis nūntius advēnit. Neque
tamen ūlla pācis mentiō facta est; quīn etiam animō cīvitās
adeō magnō fuit, ut Varrōnī ex tantā clāde redeuntī obviam
īrent et grātiās agerent, quod dē rē publicā nōn dēspērāsset;
quī, sī Poenōrum dux fuisset, temeritātis poenās omnī sup-
pliciō dedisset. Dum igitur Hannibal sēgniter et ōtiōsē
agēbat, Rōmānī interim respīrāre coepērunt.

NOTES

283. victōriā : Rule XXVI. — **posset :** give the synopsis of
the Subj. and inflect this tense. — To what class of verbs do **ūtī**
and **fruī** belong ? — **māluit,** prin. parts. Inflect the Pres. Ind., and
give the synopsis of the Ind. See Appendix, **9.** What is its com-

———

[1] Subjunctive (**247** (*b*)).

position? — What is the antecedent of **cūius**? What is the
gender of **cūius**, and why? — **dēliciīs**: Rule XIX. — **adeō ut**, *to
such a degree that*, etc. — **Capuam** the subject, and **Cannās** the
predicate of **fuisse**. — **Rōmae**, *at Rome*.

Rule. — PLACE WHERE *is expressed by the* ABLATIVE WITH
ĭn ; but names of TOWNS *and* SMALL ISLANDS *are put in the*
LOCATIVE CASE, *without a preposition.*

(*a*) The Locative in the First and Second Declensions singular,
has the same form as the Genitive; as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome ;* **Corinthī**,
at Corinth. In the Third Declension and in the plural number,
the Locative has the form of the *Dative* or *Ablative;* as, **Athēnīs**,
at Athens (from **Athēnae**) ; **Cūribus**, *at Cures* (from **Cūrēs, -ium**).
— **tantum ... quantum**, *so much ... as.* — **ubi acceptae clādis
nūntius**, *when the messenger of the disaster received,* = *when the tidings
of the disaster that had befallen them*, etc. — Give the Gen. and Dat.
sing. of **ūllus**. What other words form the Gen. and Dat. in the
same way? — **animō** : Rule XXIII. Translate : *the state possessed
such greatness of soul,* etc. — **obviam īrent**: Cf. **obviam vēnit**,
256; also **176** (*a*). — Observe the construction of **Pyrrhō** in **256**,
and apply the same rule to **Varrōnī**. — Why is **īrent** Subjunctive?
— **redeuntī**, Pres. Part., from **redeō**, agreeing with **Varrōnī**. It
is inflected : —

Nom. rédiēns
Gen. redeúntis
Dat. redeúntī, etc.

(*b*) **grātiās agere** = *to express gratitude, return thanks ;* **grātiam
habēre** = *to feel gratitude;* **grātiam referre** = *to show
gratitude.*

dēspērāsset, Subj., because it is the reason, not of the writer,
but of the citizens. Shortened form for **dēspērāvisset**. — Observe
the number of **īrent** and **agerent**. They are plural, because of
the plural idea of **cīvitās** ; *the citizens of the state*. Give the
synopsis of the two verbs in the Ind. and Subj. active. — **Poenī**,
the Carthaginians, so called from their supposed Phoenician origin.

— **omnī suppliciō,** *with every kind of punishment.* — **fuisset** and **dedisset** are in the Plupf. Subj. in a conditional sentence, in which the condition is contrary to fact in past time (**253** (*A*) III). — **Dum . . . agēbat,** *while therefore Hannibal was moving slug-gishly and leisurely.*

284. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Hannibal cum victōriā posset fruī, in Campāniam dē-vertere māluit.   2. Campāniae dēliciīs exercitūs ārdor ēlan-guēscēbat.   3. Capua Hannibalī Cannae fuit.   4. Vērē dīxit Capuam Hannibalī Cannās fuisse.   5. Dīxit numquam tantum pavōris Rōmae fuisse.   6. Rōmānī nūllam pācis mentiōnem fēcērunt; quīn etiam Varrōnī ex tantā clāde redeuntī obviam iērunt.   7. Sī Hannibal in Campāniam dēvertisset, mox exercitūs ārdor ēlanguisset.   8. Eī grātiās ēgērunt quod fortissimē dīmicāvisset.   9. Sī Hannibal sēgniter et ōtiōsē ēgisset, Rōmānī interim respīrāre coepissent.

1. If he had preferred to leave Rome, there would not have been so much terror in the city.   2. Although[1] great disaster had befallen them, nevertheless they made no mention of peace.   3. They went to meet Varro (as he was) returning from the battle, and thanked him.   4. They said that they thanked him because he had made no mention of peace. 5. If Hannibal had been the leader of the Romans, they would have thanked him because he had conquered.

---

[1] **Cum.**

LESSON LXXXVII

285. Arma nōn erant; dētracta sunt templīs vetera hos-
tium spolia. Deerat iuventūs; servī manūmissī et armātī
sunt. Egēbat aerārium; opēs suās libēns senātus in medium
prōtulit, nec praeter quod in bullīs singulīsque ānulīs erat,
quicquam sibi aurī relīquērunt. Patrum exemplum secūtī
sunt equitēs imitātaeque equitēs omnēs tribūs. Dēnique
vix suffēcēre tabulae, vix scrībārum manūs, cum omnēs
prīvātae opēs in pūblicum dēferrentur.

Cum Hannibal redimendī suī cōpiam captīvīs Rōmānīs
fēcisset, decem ex ipsīs Rōmānī eā dē rē missī sunt; nec
pīgnus aliud fideī ab iīs pōstulātum est, quam ut iūrārent
sē, sī nōn impetrāssent, in castra esse reditūrōs.

<div align="center">NOTES</div>

286. templīs: Rule XX. — **vetera**; the Comparative of
vetus is wanted, and is supplied by the Comparative of **vetustus**,
old; **vetustior**. The Superlative is **veterrimus**. — **manūmissī**:
observe the composition and literal meaning; **manus**, *the hand*, and
mittō, *to let go, send;* hence, *to let go from the hand*. — **libēns** is
an adjective used with the force of an adverb; *the senate willingly.*
— **opēs** has no Nom. nor Dat. sing. — Why not **eōrum** instead of
suās? — **prōtulit**: give synopsis of the Ind. — **praeter quod**
= **praeter id** (*i.e.* **aurum**) **quod**, etc., *except the gold that was in
the amulets and rings of each.* — **quicquam** is the neut. sing. of
quisquam, which has no fem. and no plu. The first part only is
declined, and it has the same forms as simple **quis**, except in the
neut. where **quic** is usually found instead of **quid**. Decline it. —
quicquam aurī, *anything of gold*, = *any gold.* — **Patrum** = **senā-
tōrum**. For **senātōrēs** and **equitēs**, cf. Lessons LV and LVI. —
imitātæ, sc. **sunt**. The subject is **tribūs**, the object **equitēs**.
— **tribus** was a division of the Roman people for political pur-

poses. Decline it. — **suffēcēre,** Perf. Ind. Act., 3d plu., **suffēcē-
runt** or **-ēre.** The records hardly gave room for entering an
account of the contributions to the public treasury, and the force
of clerks was hardly sufficient to do the work of recording. —
manūs, *bands,* or *force of clerks.* — **in pūblicam dēferrentur,** *were
turned over to public use.* — Cf. **in medium,** above. — **suī** is the
Genitive plural of **sē,** but the Genitives **suī, vestrī,** and **nostrī**
take the Genitive singular form of the Gerundive in **-ī** without
regard to the gender or number of the pronoun. — **redimendī suī
cōpiam,** = *a chance to ransom themselves.* — **decem ex ipsīs,** = **decem
ipsōrum,** *ten of their number.* Cf. n. on **ūnus ex ēius praefectīs,**
280. — **eā dē rē,** *i.e. about ransoming themselves.* — Decline **pīgnus ;**
aliud in the sing. ; **fideī. — fideī,** *of good faith.* — **ut iūrārent,** a
purpose clause in apposition with the subject of **pōstulātum est.**
— Why is **sē** used rather than **eōs ?** — **impetrāssent,** syncopated
form for **impetrāvissent. — sē . . . reditūrōs,** is Indirect Dis-
course depending on **iūrārent.** In the direct form it would read :
Sī nōn impetrāverimus in castra redībimus.

287. *Translate at sight :* —

1. Cum Rōmānīs arma nōn essent, deōrum templīs veter-
rima hostium spolia dētrāxērunt.   2. Sī Rōmānīs arma
fuissent, nōn dētrāxissent templīs hostium spolia.   3. Cum
deesset iuventūs, servōs manūmīsērunt et armāvērunt.
4. Dīcunt opēs suās libentem senātum in medium prō-
ferre, nec quicquam sibi aurī relinquere.   5. Dīxērunt sē
equitum exemplum sequī.   6. Dīxērunt eōs equitum exem-
plum sequī.   7. Quid omnēs prīvātae opēs in pūblicum
dēferēbantur ?   8. Nōnne Hannibal redimendī suī cōpiam
captīvīs Rōmānīs fēcit ?   9. Iūrāvērunt autem sē in castra
esse reditūrōs.

Why were the slaves freed and armed by the Romans ?
Because their youth had been slain in battle and soldiers

were wanting. They had no treasury, and[1] so the senators
willingly brought forth their wealth for the public use. But
the Romans said that they would not ransom those who
had been captured with-arms-in-their-hands.[2] If Hannibal
had not exacted any other pledge of good faith from them,
they would have returned to the camp.

———oo⁘o⁘oo———

LESSON LXXXVIII

288. Eōs senātus nōn redimendōs cēnsuit responditque
eōs cīvēs nōn esse necessāriōs, quī, cum armātī essent, capī
potuissent. Ūnus ex eīs lēgātīs ē castrīs Poenōrum ēgres-
sus, velutī aliquid oblītus, paulō post in castra erat regressus,
deinde comitēs ante noctem adsecūtus erat.

Is ergō, rē nōn impetrātā, domum abiit. Reditū enim in
castra sē līberātum esse iūreiūrandō interpretābātur. Quod
ubi innōtuit, iūssit senātus illum comprehendī et vinctum
dūcī ad Hannibalem. Ea rēs Hannibalis audāciam māximē
frēgit, quod senātus populusque Rōmānus rēbus adflīctīs tam
excelsō esset animō.

NOTES

289. redimendōs, sc. **esse**; the Inf. of the 2d Periphrastic
Conj. with **eōs** for the subject depending upon **cēnsuit** (214). —
esse and **potuissent**: Rule XXXV. — **capī potuissent,** *could be
captured.* Cf. **quod armātī capī potuissent** (270). — **Ūnus ex
eīs lēgātīs**: Cf. **decem ex ipsīs** (286), and **ūnus ex ēius prae-
fectīs** (280). — **velutī,** *as if, i.e.* pretending that he had forgotten
something. — **aliquid** is an indef. pron. and is thus declined: —

———

[1] Itaque.   [2] Armātī.

SINGULAR

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	áliquis (aliquī)	áliqua	áliquid (aliquod)
Gen.	alicŭius	alicŭius	alicŭius
Dat.	álicuī	álicuī	álicuī
Acc.	áliquem	áliquam	áliquid (aliquod)
Abl.	áliquō	áliquā	áliquō

PLURAL

Nom.	áliquī	áliquae	áliquā
Gen.	aliquŏrum	aliquắrum	aliquŏrum
Dat.	alíquibus	alíquibus	alíquibus
Acc.	áliquōs	áliquās	áliqua
Abl.	alíquibus	alíquibus	alíquibus

aliquis and aliquid are adjective forms; aliquī and aliquod,
substantive. Observe the resemblance in the forms of aliquis
and quis (134). aliquis has aliqua instead of aliquae in the
fem. sing. and neut. plu. — rē nōn impetrātā, *the thing not being
gained*, *i.e.* the plan of having the prisoners ransomed not succeed-
ing. — domum: Rule XXX. — Reditū, Abl. of means, modifying
līberātum esse. Decline reditū. — iūreiūrandō: Rule XX. —
Decline it (202 (b)). — Quod ubi innōtuit, *when this became known.*
— Ea rēs, *this circumstance*, *i.e.* the return of the soldier by the
Roman senate. — māximē frēgit, *especially overcame* or *broke down.*
— rēbus adflīctīs, *when their affairs were in a wretched condition.*
An Ablative Absolute, denoting time. — excelsō animō: Rule
XXIII; *were of so noble a spirit = showed so noble a spirit.* — Why
is esset in the Subjunctive?

290. *Translate at sight:* —

1. Iī cīvēs nōn erant necessāriī, quī armātī capī potuērunt.
2. Eōs, quī armātī captī sunt Rōmānī nōn redēmērunt.
3. Ūnus ex captīvīs, cum ē castrīs Poenōrum ēgressus esset,
dīxit sē aliquid oblītum esse.   4. Sī aliquid oblītus esset, in
castra nōn esset regressus.   5. Dīxit sē domum abīre velle.

6. Domum abiit, velutī reditū in castra līberātus est iūreiū-
randō, sed senātus populusque Rōmānus tam excelsō erat
animō, ut illum dūcī ad Hannibalem iubēret.

When one of the soldiers had been captured with arms in
his hands, the senate decided that he ought not to be ran-
somed. Therefore when he said that he was freed from his
oath, the senate commanded that he be conducted to Hanni-
bal. When this became known, Hannibal said that the
Roman people showed a noble spirit. If the senate had not
ordered him to be arrested, he would not have returned to
the camp of the Carthaginians.

(*a*) Give English words suggested by the following: —

**adversus, ferōx, cōnstituō, oriēns, pulvis, dētrahō, dēspērō,
supplicium, redimō, ēgredior, frangō, adveniō, decem.**

Study the following group of allied words: —

stō(āre), *to stand;* **āstō = ad + stō**, *to stand near;* **cōnstō**, *to
stand together, agree;* **abstō**, *to stand against, oppose;* **statuō**,
to cause to stand; **statua**, *a statue;* **statiō (ōnis)**, *a standing;*
stabulum, *a standing place;* **stabilis**, *steadfast;* **stāgnum**,
standing water; **stabilitās**, *steadfastness;* **status**, *a station.*

REVIEW QUESTIONS

Give the Dative and Ablative of **ambō**; the Genitive plural of
quidam. What cardinal numbers are declined? How is *place to
which* expressed in Latin? *place where?* What cases have the same
endings as the *Locative?* What case follows **obviam īre** and **ob-
viam venīre**? Give the Comparative of **vetus**; the Superlative.
Give the Accusative singular, all genders, of **quisquam**. What
peculiarity in the use of the Gerundive with the Genitive of the
personal pronouns? What construction often takes the place of
the limiting Genitive with cardinal numbers? Give an example.

THE LIFE OF TIMOLEON

Cornelius Nepos

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

291. Timoleon was a native of Corinth, but he spent the greater part of his active life in Syracuse, which became his adopted city. He is generally recognized as one of the truly great characters of his age and race. He has sometimes been compared to Washington, and his political unselfishness, the purity of his public life, and his devotion to the interests of his country, make such a comparison most natural. He freed the Syracusans from the yoke of a cruel tyrant, reorganized the government and established it upon a firm foundation, and then laid down his power and lived for the rest of his life as a private citizen of the city he had served so well. At his death, in 336 B.C., the Syracusans mourned him with unaffected grief, and erected in their market-place a noble monument to his memory.

LESSON LXXXIX

292. Tīmoleōn Corinthius. Sine dubiō māgnus omnium iūdiciō hīc vir exstitit. Namque huīc ūnī contigit, quod nesciō an ūllī, ut et patriam, in quā erat nātus, oppressam ā tyrannō līberāret, et ā Syrācūsānīs, quibus auxiliō erat missus, iam inveterātam servitūtem dēpelleret, tōtamque Siciliam, multōs annōs bellō vēxātam ā barbarīsque oppressam, suō adventū in prīstinum restitueret. Sed in hīs rēbus nōn simplicī fortūnā cōnflīctātus est et, id quod difficilius putātur, multō sapientius tulit secundam quam adversam fortūnam. Nam cum frāter ēius Tīmophanēs dux ā Corinthiīs dēlēctus, tyrannidem per mīlites mercēnnāriōs occupās-

set particepsque rēgnī posset esse, tantum āfuit ā societāte
sceleris, ut antetulerit cīvium suōrum lībertātem frātris
salūtī, et pārēre lēgibus quam imperāre patriae satius dūxerit.

NOTES

In the following lessons the student is referred for the meaning of words to
the general vocabulary at the end of the volume.

293. Tīmoleōn Corinthius is a sort of superscription, or
announcement of the subject of the sketch. *Timoleon the Corin-
thian.* **Tīmoleōn** is declined Nom. **Tīmoleōn**, Gen. **Tīmoleon-
tis**, etc. — **exstitit**, nearly equivalent to **fuit**; *stood forth, was.* —
Namque, an emphatic **nam**; *for in fact.* — The antecedent of **quod**
is **id** understood, the subject of **contigit**. — **quod nesciō an ūllī**,
sc. **contigerit**; *I know not whether it has happened to any one.*
Decline **ūnī** and **ūllī** in the sing. — **ut**, *namely that*, etc. The
clause with **ut** extends to the end of the sentence, and is the real
subject of **contigit**, or is in apposition with **id** understood, the
subject of **contigit**. *Substantive Clauses of Result are used with
verbs signifying* IT HAPPENS, IT REMAINS, IT FOLLOWS, *etc.* — **et
. . . et (ā Syrācūsānīs)**, *both . . . and.* — **ā** shows the relation
between **Syrācūsānīs** and **dēpelleret**. — **quibus auxiliō**: Rule
XIII. — **iam inveterātam**, *already of long standing.* — **annōs**:
Rule XVI. — **in prīstinum**, *to its former condition.* Read this
sentence through from beginning to end, following the order of the
Latin, and then change it into good English. The tyrant men-
tioned in this sentence was Timophanes, a brother of Timoleon,
who had established himself as ruler of Corinth, his native city.

nōn simplicī fortūna, *not with simple fortune* = *with varying
fortune.* — **secundam fortūnam**, *prosperity;* **adversam fortūnam**,
adversity. — **tyrannidem occupāsset**, *he had seized upon the tyranny*,
= *he had made himself despotic ruler.* — **Tīmoleōn** understood is the
subject of **posset**; *and he might have been a partner in the government.*
— **ā societāte sceleris**, *from a share in the crime.* *So far was he
from sharing in the crime*, etc. — **lēgibus** and **patriae**, Rule XII. —
satius dūxerit, *he considered it better.*

294. Timoleon, the Corinthian, was undoubtedly a great man by the judgment of all. When he had freed his native country from the tyrant, he was sent to aid the Syracusans (for aid to the Syracusans). It fell to his lot to contend with varying fortune. But he always considered it better to bear adversity than to rule over his country. The Syracusans returned thanks to him because he had restored[1] their country to its former condition.

———∘∘⦂⊙⦂∘∘———

LESSON XC

295. Hāc mente per harūspicem commūnemque adfīnem, cuī soror ex īsdem parentibus nāta nūpta erat, frātrem tyrannum interficiendum cūrāvit. Ipse nōn modo manūs nōn attulit, sed nē āspicere quidem frāternum sanguinem voluit. Nam, dum rēs cōnficerētur, procul in praesidiō fuit, nē quis satelles posset succurrere. Hōc praeclārissimum ēius factum nōn parī modō probātum est ab omnibus; nōnnūllī enim laesam ab eō pietātem putābant et invidiā laudem virtūtis obterēbant. Māter vērō post id factum neque domum ad sē fīlium admīsit neque āspexit, quīn eum frātricīdam impiumque dētēstāns compellāret. Quibus rēbus ille adeō est commōtus, ut nōnnumquam vītae fīnem facere voluerit atque ex ingrātōrum hominum cōnspectū morte dēcēdere.

NOTES

296. Hāc mente, *with this mind* or *feeling;* referring to **antetulerit . . . dūxerit,** in the last sentence of the preceding lesson.

---

[1] Why should this verb be in the Subjunctive?

—**harūspicem**, a *haruspex* was a priest who examined the entrails of the sacrifices and thus foretold future events. — **cuī**, Dat. after **nūpta erat.** — **Nūbō**, meaning literally *to veil one's self*, is used only of the marriage of the woman, and regularly takes the Dat. — **interficiendum** is the Gerundive agreeing with **frātrem.** Cf. **eōs ēducandōs**, 115. Translate: *he had his brother, the tyrant, killed.* Rule XXXVIII. — **manūs nōn attulit**, *did not apply his hands* (*to the deed*) = *did not take part in killing his brother.* Plutarch says that Timoleon stepped aside and stood weeping while the two assassins drew their swords and slew his brother. Other authorities say that Timoleon slew him with his own hand. — **dum**, *until.* Observe the Subj., **cōnficerētur. Dum**, meaning *until*, regularly takes the Subj. — **in praesidiō**, *on guard.* — **nē** introduces a negative purpose; *lest any follower* or *that no follower might*, etc. Observe that **quis** following **nē** is an indefinite pronoun; so is it also after **sī, nisi, num.** — Decline **satelles**. — **nōn parī modō**, *not in like manner, not equally.* — **pietātem laesam** (**esse**), *that brotherly love had been violated.* — **invidiā**, *with hatred.* — **quīn dētēstāns compellāret**, *but that execrating him she addressed him*, etc.¹ = *without addressing him with execrations as*, etc. — **morte**, means of **dēcēdere.**

297. When his brother had seized upon absolute power at Corinth, Timoleon had him put to death. He did not take part in the deed, but he was on guard so that no one could render aid. This deed of his was not approved by many. After this his mother never admitted Timoleon to her home, and never saw him without thinking that he had violated brotherly love.

LESSON XCI

298. Interim Diōne Syrācūsīs interfectō Dionȳsius rūrsus Syrācūsārum potītus est. Cūius adversāriī opem ā Corinthiīs petiērunt ducemque, quō in bellō ūterentur, postulārunt. Hūc Tīmoleōn missus incrēdibilī fēlīcitāte Dionȳsium tōtā Siciliā dēpulit. Cum interficere posset, nōluit, tūtōque ut Corinthum pervenīret effēcit, quod utrōrumque Dionȳsiōrum opibus Corinthiī saepe adiūtī fuerant, cūius benīgnitātis memoriam volēbat exstāre, eamque praeclāram victōriam dūcēbat, in quā plūs esset clēmentiae quam crūdēlitātis, postrēmō ut nōn sōlum auribus acciperētur, sed etiam oculīs cernerētur, quem, ex quantō rēgnō, ad quam fortūnam dētrūsisset.

NOTES

299. Syrācūsīs: Rule XXIX.— **Syrācūsārum potītus est: potior,** which regularly takes the Ablative (Rule XXVI), is sometimes followed by the Genitive, as in the present instance.—What is the antecedent of **cūius?**—**quō:** Rule XXVI.—**incrēdibilī fēlīcitāte,** *with incredible good fortune;* ablative of manner modifying **dēpulit:** Rule XIX.—Why is **Siciliā** in the Ablative?— **Cum,** *although.*—**tūtō** modifies **pervenīret,** and **ut . . . pervenīret** is an object clause of purpose after **effēcit.**

There were two kings of Syracuse bearing the name Dionysius, known in history as Dionysius the Elder and Dionysius the Younger. The latter was the son of the former. Dion was the friend and adviser of the Elder, and after the death of that prince, he was assassinated. Then the Younger Dionysius, who had been driven out of the city, returned and established a most cruel and tyrannical government. It was to free the Syracusans from this tyrant that the aid of Timoleon was sought.

cūius benīgnitātis memoriam, *the memory of which kindness,* etc.—**eamque praeclārum,** etc., *and he considered that a*

famous victory. — Supply **volēbat** with **postrēmō**. Observe the two constructions following **volēbat**, viz.: **exstāre** an Inf., and **ut** with a Subj. — **nōn sōlum auribus**, etc., *not only should be heard with the ears, but even seen with the eyes.* — **quem** is interrogative; *whom, from how great a kingdom, and to what a condition, he had thrust down = whom he had thrust down, from how great a kingdom, and to what a condition.*

(*a*) **uterque** is compounded of **uter** and -**que**. See **ūnus, alius**, etc. **uter** is thus declined: —

<div align="center">

SINGULAR

	Masc.	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	úter	útra	útrum
Gen.	utrī́us	utrī́us	utrī́us
Dat.	útrī	útrī	útrī

</div>

The other forms are like those of **bonus**.

neuter, *neither*, is declined like **uter**. — **uterque**, *each, both*, is declined like **uter**, with -**que** added to it, except that the Genitive singular has -**ius** instead of -**īus**.

300. When Dion was killed at Syracuse, the opponents of Dionysius asked aid from the Corinthians. They sent Timoleon, who with great good fortune quickly freed all Sicily. He did not wish to drive the tyrant into exile, because both of the Dionysii had often aided the Corinthians. He said that he wished the memory of this kindness to be manifest. But he brought it to pass that they should see with their eyes from how great a kingdom he had thrust him down.

LECTICA

LESSON XCII

301. Post Dionȳsī dēcessum cum Hicetā bellāvit, quī
adversātus erat Dionȳsiō; quem nōn odiō tyrannidis dissēn-
sisse, sed cupiditāte, indiciō fuit, quod ipse, expulsō Dionȳsiō,
imperium dīmittere nōluit.   Hōc superātō, Tīmoleōn māxi-
mās cōpiās Carthāginiēnsium apud Crīmīssum flūmen fugā-
vit, āc satis habēre coēgit, sī licēret Āfricam obtinēre, quī
iam complūrēs annōs possessiōnem Siciliae tenēbant.   Cēpit
etiam Māmercum, Ītalicum ducem, hominem bellicōsum et
potentem, quī tyrannōs adiūtum in Siciliam vēnerat. Quibus
rēbus cōnfectīs, cum propter diuturnitātem bellī nōn sōlum
regiōnēs, sed etiam urbēs dēsertās vidēret, conquīsīvit quōs
potuit, prīmum Siculōs, deinde Corinthō arcessīvit colōnōs,
quod ab iīs initiō Syrācūsae erant conditae.

NOTES

302. dēcessum, departure from Syracuse. Hicetas was the
tyrant of Leontini, a town of Sicily, northwest of Syracuse. — The
subject of **bellāvit** is Timoleon. — **quem** is the subject of **dis-
sēnsisse,** depending upon **indiciō fuit**; literally, *it was for a proof,*
= *it was a proof that he disagreed with him not from hatred of the
tyranny, but from desire for it,* etc. — **Hōc,** *i.e. Hicetas.* — **āc satis
habēre coēgit,** *and compelled them to be satisfied.* — **quī** refers to the
Carthaginians. — **complūrēs   annōs:** Rule XVI. — **adiūtum,**
Supine of **adiūvō,** depending upon **vēnerat.** Rule XXXVII. —
regiōnēs, *the country districts,* in distinction from the **urbēs.** — **con-
quīsīvit quōs potuit,** *he collected (those) whom he could.* — Compare
the adjectives **māximās, potentem,** and **bellicōsum.** Synopsis
of **nōluit.** Give all the Infinitives of **dissēnsisse;** all the Par-
ticiples of **expulsō.** Synopsis of **licēret** in the Ind. and Subj.,
3d sing. Princ. parts of **coēgit, conquīsīvit,** and **arcessīvit.**
— Compare with **bellāre** the words and expressions in **251** (*a*).

303. For several years Timoleon made war upon the tyrants. He conquered Hicetas and put to flight the Carthaginians who had come into Sicily to drive out Dionysius. If Dionysius had been expelled, Hicetas would not have been willing to lay down the government. Having overcome the Carthaginians, he wished to capture their leader. On account of the long continuance of the war, not only the country districts, but even the cities, were deserted.

———o◦°◦o○°◦oo———

LESSON XCIII

304. Cīvibus veteribus sua restituit; novīs bellō vacuē-factās possessiōnēs dīvīsit; urbium moenia dīsiecta fānaque dētēcta refēcit; cīvitātibus lēgēs lībertātemque reddidit; ex māximō bellō tantum ōtium tōtae īnsulae conciliāvit, ut hīc conditor urbium eārum, nōn illī quī initiō dēdūxerant, vidērētur. Arcem Syrācūsīs, quam mūnierat Dionȳsius ad urbem obsidendam, ā fundāmentīs disiēcit; cētera tyrannidis prōpūgnācula dēmōlītus est deditque operam, ut quam minimē multa vestīgia servitūtis manērent. Cum tantīs esset opibus, ut etiam invītīs imperāre posset, tantum autem amōrem habēret omnium Siculōrum, ut nūllō recūsante rēgnum obtinēret, māluit sē dīligī quam metuī. Itaque, cum prīmum potuit, imperium dēposuit āc prīvātus Syrācūsīs, quod reliquum vitae fuit, vīxit.

NOTES

305. sua, *their possessions.* suus, -a, -um, refers regularly to the subject, but it may refer to the leading object of thought, as in

the present instance. — **novīs**, sc. **cīvibus**. — **tōtae** is the Dat. formed regularly, instead of the more common *tōtī*. — **illī**, subject of **vidērentur** understood. — **dēdūxerant**, *had led out* (the colonists).

ad urbem obsidendam : another instance of **ad** with the Gerundive denoting purpose. — **dedit operam**, *took care.* — **quam minimē multa vestīgia**, *as few traces as possible.* **Quam, longē,** and **multō** are used to strengthen the Superlative.

Cum, *although.* — **tantīs esset opibus**, *was of so great re-sources,* = *possessed so great resources* or *power.* For the con-struction of **opibus**, cf. Rule XXIII. — **invītīs**, *against their will.* It agrees with **iīs** understood, which is in the Dat. after **impe-rāre.** *That he might have ruled over them even against their will.* — Repeat **cum** before **tantum autem** : *although, moreover,* etc. — **nūllō recūsante**, *no one objecting* = *without objection from any one.*

cum prīmum potuit, *as soon as he could.* — **quod reliquum vītae fuit**, *what of life was left* = *the remainder of his life.* **vītae** is in Gen. limiting **quod.**

(*a*) Observe the expressions : —

operam dare, *to bestow care, take pains;* **quam minimē**, *as little as possible;* **cum prīmum**, *as soon as.*

306. For the purpose of liberating the city, he ordered the bulwarks of the tyranny to be destroyed. He said that he would restore to the old citizens their possessions. He took care that the citadel at Syracuse should be destroyed. If he should restore laws and liberty to the states, he would seem to be the founder of these cities. But he preferred to live as a private citizen at Syracuse rather than to be feared by the citizens. Therefore, as soon as he could, he set out from the city.

LESSON XCIV

307. Neque vērō id imperītē fēcit; nam quod cēterī
rēgēs imperiō potuērunt, hīc benevolentiā tenuit. Nūllus
honōs huīc dēfuit, neque posteā rēs ūlla Syrācūsīs gesta est
pūblicē, dē quā prius sit dēcrētum quam Tīmoleontis sen-
tentia cōgnita. Nūllīus umquam cōnsilium nōn modo ante-
lātum, sed' nē comparātum quidem est. Neque id magis
benevolentiā factum est quam prūdentiā.

Hīc cum aetāte iam prōvectus esset, sine ūllō morbō
lūmina oculōrum āmīsit. Quam calamitātem ita moderātē
tulit, ut neque eum querentem quisquam audierit neque eō
minus prīvātīs pūblicīsque rēbus interfuerit. Veniēbat autem
in theātrum, cum ibi concilium populī habērētur, propter
valētūdinem vectus iūmentīs iūnctīs, atque ita dē vehiculō
quae vidēbantur dīcēbat. Neque hōc illī quisquam tribuē-
bat superbiae; nihil enim umquam neque īnsolēns neque glō-
riōsum ex ōre ēius exiit.

NOTES

308. **id**, *this, i.e.* the laying down of the government and living
as a private citizen. — The antecedent of **quod** is **id** understood,
the object of **tenuit.** — **potuērunt**, sc. **tenēre.** — **imperiō**, *by their
power.* — **huīc** : cf. **229**, n. on **cīvitātī.** — **pūblicē**, *by public au-
thority.* — **prius** is separated from **quam** by tmesis. **Priusquam,**
before. — **cōgnita**, sc. **esset** ; *before learning the opinion of Timoleon.*
— **Nūllīus umquam**, etc., *not only was no one's counsel ever pre-
ferred*, etc. — Supply **est** with **antelātum.** — **factum est**, Perf. Pass.
of **faciō.** The Pass. of **faciō** is **fīō.** Learn **fīō**, Appendix, **11.**

aetāte prōvectus esset, *he was advanced in age.* — **lūmina**, *the
lights = the sight.* — **ita moderātē**, *so calmly.* — **querentem**, Pres.
Part. of the deponent verb **queror**, *to complain. Deponent verbs
have, besides the Passive forms with Active meaning, the Fut. Inf.,*

the Participles, Gerund, and Supine of the Active Voice. — **neque eō minus . . . interfuit,** *nor any the less on this account did he take part, etc.* — **Veniēbat autem,** *moreover, he was accustomed to come, etc.* — **propter valētūdinem,** *drawn, on account of his infirmity, by beasts yoked; i.e. in a chariot.* — **dē vehiculō,** *from the vehicle.* — **quae vidēbantur,** *what seemed best* (to him). — **Neque hōc illī quisquam tribuēbat superbiae,** *nor did any one ascribe this to him as haughtiness.* **illī** and **superbiae,** Rule XIII. — **ex ōre exiit,** *came from his mouth = fell from his lips.* — Observe **cōnsilium,** *counsel, advice,* and **concilium,** *an assembly.*

309. No honor was wanting to Timoleon at Syracuse. When he had lost the sight of his eyes, he bore the calamity so calmly that he was (held) in great honor. He nevertheless took part in public and private affairs. No one ever heard him complaining. When he came into the theatre, borne in a chariot, no one said that he did this on account of his haughtiness. He had so much love from all (of all) that he seemed (to be) the founder of Syracuse.

LESSON XCV

310. Quī quidem, cum suās laudēs audīret praedicārī, numquam aliud dīxit quam sē in eā rē māximē diīs agere grātiās atque habēre, quod, cum Siciliam recreāre cōnstituissent, tum sē potissimum ducem esse voluissent. Nihil enim rērum hūmānārum sine deōrum nūmine gerī putābat; itaque suae domī sacellum Automatiās cōnstituerat idque sānctissimē colēbat.

Ad hanc hominis excellentem bonitātem mīrābilēs accesserant cāsūs. Nam proelia māxima nātālī suō diē fēcit

omnia, quō factum est ut ēius diem nātālem fēstum habēret
ūniversa Sicilia. Huīc quīdam Laphystius, homō petulāns
et ingrātus, vadimōnium cum vellet impōnere, quod cum
illō sē lēge agere dīceret, et complūrēs concurrissent quī
procācitātem hominis manibus coërcēre cōnārentur, Tīmo-
leōn ōrāvit hominēs nē id facerent.

NOTES

311. **aliud,** *anything else.* — **agere grātiās atque habēre,** *that
he in this matter especially thanked the gods and felt grateful to them.*
Cf. **283** (*b*). — **cum . . . tum,** *when . . . then.* — **sē potissimum,**
himself in preference to anybody else. — **domī**: Rule XXIX. — **Auto-
matiās,** a Greek Genitive. — **colēbat,** *was wont to worship.* Imper-
fect of customary action. — **mīrābilēs accēsserant cāsus,** *wonderful
incidents were added.* — **diē**: Rule XXII. — **omnia** agrees with
proelia. It is made emphatic by its position. — **quō factum est,**
from which it came to pass. — **fēstum** (**diem**), *as a holiday.* — **vadi-
mōnium cum vellet impōnere,** *when a certain Laphystius wished
to impose upon him bail for appearance = wished to compel him to give
bail for appearance* (in court). — **cum illō sē lēge agere,** *that he
was acting with him according to law.* — **nē id facerent,** *not to do
this.* — Observe **cōnstituissent,** *had determined,* and **cōnstituerat,**
had built. — Also observe **neque eum querentem quisquam
audierit** in the last lesson, and **cum suās laudēs audīret
praedicārī** in the present lesson.

312. 1. Timoleon fought a very great battle on his birth-
day. 2. A certain man wished to compel him to give bail
for his appearance. 3. He said nothing else than that he
did not wish to hear his own praises proclaimed. 4. He
returned thanks to the gods because he had been able to
restore Sicily. 5. He felt grateful to the gods because he
was able to hold the love of the people.

LESSON XCVI

313. Namque, id ut Laphystiō et cuīvīs licēret, sē māxi-
mōs labōrēs summaque adiīsse perīcula. Hanc enim speciem
lībertātis esse, sī omnibus, quod quisque vellet, lēgibus
experīrī licēret. Idem, cum quīdam Laphystī similis,
nōmine Dēmaenetus, in cōntiōne populī dē rēbus gestīs ēius
dētrahere coepisset āc nōnnūlla inveherētur in Tīmoleonta,
dīxit nunc dēmum sē vōtī esse damnātum; namque hōc ā
dīis immortālibus semper precātum, ut tālem lībertātem
restitueret Syrācūsānīs, in quā cuīvīs licēret dē quō vellet
impūnē dīcere.

Hīc cum diem suprēmum obīsset, pūblicē ā Syrācūsānīs
in gymnasiō, quod Tīmoleontēum appellātur, tōtā celebrante
Siciliā sepultus est.

NOTES

314. A verb of *saying*, implied in what has gone before, is to
be supplied at the beginning of this passage. *For* (*he said*) *that he
had encountered dangers*, etc., *in order that this* (*very thing*) *might be
permitted to L. and to anybody* (*else*). — **id** is the subject of **licēret**.
It precedes **ut** *for the sake of emphasis.* — **cuīvīs** is an Indef. Pron.
from **quīvīs**, compounded of **quī** and the 2d person sing. of **volō**,
to wish. It is declined like **quī**, except that it has **quidvīs** or
quodvīs in the neuter.

(a)	*Masc.*	*Fem.*	*Neut.*
Nom.	**quīvīs**	**quaévīs**	**quidvīs** *or* **quódvīs**
Gen.	**cūiúsvīs**	**cūiúsvīs**	**cūiúsvīs**
Dat.	**cuīvīs**	**cuívīs**	**cuívīs**, etc.

Give the prin. parts of **adiīsse**, and all of the Infinitives.—
speciem, *the appearance* = *the idea*. — The antecedent of **quod** is
id understood, the object of **experīrī**. — **Laphystī** is in the Gen.
after **similis**. — **Similis** may be regarded as a Substantive limited

by a Genitive. Compare the English, "*We ne'er shall look upon his like again.*" So here, *the like of Laphystius.* **Similis** *usually takes the Genitive of likeness of character, and the Dative of external likeness.* — **nōmine:** Rule XXIV. — **dē rēbus ēius dētrahere coepisset,** *had begun to detract from his exploits.* — **nōnnūlla inveherētur,** *made some attack,* etc. — **Tīmoleonta,** a Greek Accusative. — **vōtī esse damnātum,** *was condemned for his vow = was bound to fulfil his vow.* **Vōtī** *is the Genitive of the charge after a verb of condemning.* — **precātum (esse),** *that he had always prayed for this from the immortal gods.* — **in quā = ut in eā,** *that in it, i.e. in the exercise of it.* — **dē quō vellet,** *to speak about whatever he wished (to speak about).* — **Hīc ... obīsset,** *when he had come to his last day = when he died.* — **tōtā celebrante Siciliā,** *all Sicily thronging there.*

315. 1. He encountered very great labors and extreme perils in order that this might be allowed to anybody. 2. It is permitted to each one to try by the laws what he may wish. 3. He made some attack upon Timoleon in the assembly of the people. 4. He restored such liberty to the Syracusans that each one was able to say what he wished. 5. They buried him in the gymnasium at the public expense. 6. When he had freed all Sicily from the tyrant, he died.

(*a*) Give English words derived from the following:

> **contingō, nātus, prīstinus, succurrō, commōtus, dissentiō, conquīrō, potēns, dēdūcō, querentem, impōnere, experīrī.**

Study the following group of allied words: —

sedeō, *to sit;* **sessor,** *one who sits;* **sessiō,** *a sitting;* **sēdēs,** *a seat;* **sella,** *a chair;* **sedīle,** *a seat;* **īnsideō,** *to sit upon;* **īnsidiae,** *an ambuscade;* **praesidium,** *a sitting before, a guard;* **obsidiō, ōnis,** *a siege;* **subsidium** (*a sitting near*), *reserve force;* **cōnsessus** (*a sitting together*), *an assembly.*

THE LAST STRUGGLE FOR GALLIC FREEDOM

From Cæsar's Gallic War (Book VII.)

INTRODUCTORY NOTE

The events narrated in the following pages belong to the seventh year of Cæsar's campaigns in Gaul, 52 B.C. In the former years he had met and defeated the separate forces of the different Gallic tribes, until now all opposition seemed to be crushed and the subjugation of the country complete. But in the midst of this apparent tranquility, Vercingetorix, a young prince of the Arverni, set on foot a combined and determined movement to throw off the Roman yoke and restore to the Gallic peoples their former freedom. Cæsar had succeeded in shutting up the forces of the Gauls in Alesia, whither they had fled for refuge after their cavalry had been defeated in a skirmish with the Romans. This town was a well-nigh impregnable fortress situated in the country of the Mandubii, near the sources of the Seine river. Vercingetorix sent out emissaries who succeeded in arousing all Gaul, and in bringing a vast army to the assistance of their beleaguered chief. The capture of this place and the surrender of Vercingetorix form the subject of the following selection.

The Re-inforcements arrive. Those in the Town prepare to make a Sally

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle pas-

---

79. **summa imperī,** the chief command. — **colle exteriōre,** this hill was outside of the investing line of the Romans, to the southwest of the town. — **mīlle passibus,** one | thousand paces = one mile. The Roman pace was measured from the point where the foot was raised from the ground to the point where the same foot was placed upon the

CÆSAR

(From a bust in the British Museum)

sibus ab nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam in longitūdinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.
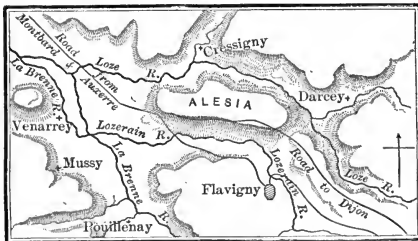
MAP OF ALESIA

ground again. Hence a **passus** was a little less than five feet. The Roman mile of one thousand such paces contained therefore only about 4800 feet, or a little more than 400 feet less than the English mile. — **diē**, Rule XXII. — **plānitiem**, object of **complent**. — **mīlia**, Rule XVI. — **paulum ab eō locō**, *a little way from this place.* — **abditās**, *withdrawn.* — **cōnstituunt**, *station.*

dēspectus, *a view down = a downward slope.* — **Concurrunt**, the subject refers to those in the town. — **hīs auxiliīs vīsīs**, *when these auxiliaries are seen;* Ablative Absolute. — **fit grātulātiō**, *there is rejoicing.* — **prōductīs cōpiīs**, what does this Ablative Absolute modify? — **proximam fossam**, the ditch nearest the town. — **aggere**, *with earth.* — To whom does **sē** in **sēque** refer?

The Romans attacked.   The Gauls driven back

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet.   Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant.   Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent.   Ab hīs complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant.   Cum suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī, quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē āc turpiter factum cēlārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.   Cum ā merīdiē

---

80. **sī ūsus veniat,** *if it should become necessary.* — **proelium committī,** cf. 251 (*a*). — **in colle summō,** *on the top of a hill.* Some adjectives, such as **medius, reliquus, summus, īnfimus, extrēmus,** are used to denote the *middle part, remaining part, highest part,* etc., of an object: as **collis summus,** *the highest part of the hill;* **hostēs reliquī,** *the rest of the enemy.* — **rārōs,** an adj. agreeing with **sagittāriōs** and **expedītōs;** *archers and light-armed infantry*

here and there. — **quī** introduces a purpose clause; best translated by an Infinitive ; *to run up to the assistance of their men when they were giving way.* — **suīs** and **auxiliō,** Rule XIII. — **hīs,** *i.e.* the archers and light-armed infantry. — **pūgnā,** Abl. of specification. Rule XXIV. — **et iī ... et hī,** both those in the town and those who had come to their assistance. — **ululātū,** *with the war-whoop.* — **neque rēctē āc turpiter,** *neither the thing done rightly nor the thing done basely = neither a brave*

prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī
ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt
eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs, sagittāriī
circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus
nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īnsecūtī suī conligendī facul-
tātem nōn dedērunt. At iī, quī ab Alesiā prōcesserant,
maestī prope victōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

A Night Attack on the Romans

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō māgnō
crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte
silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt.
Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī in oppidō ob-
sidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prō-
icere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre
reliquaque, quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent, parant ad-
ministrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō, dat tubā sī-
gnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut
superiōribus diēbus, ut cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mū-

---

nor a cowardly act. — **dubiā victō-**
riā pūgnārētur, *the fighting con-*
tinued with the victory undecided.
Victōriā, Abl. of manner. — **Ger-**
mānī, on the side of the Romans. —
cōnfertīs turmīs, Abl. Abs., *with*
squadrons of horse in close array. —
quibus, *these, i.e.* the Gauls. — **cē-**
dentēs agrees with **eōs** understood,
object of **īnsecūtī.** — **suī conligen-**
dī facultātem, *an opportunity to re-*
cover themselves. Cf. 286, n. on **suī.**
81. **hōc spatiō,** *in this interval;*
Abl. of time. — **māgnō** goes with
numerō. — **effectō,** *being procured.*
—**harpagōnum,** *of grappling irons,*
to be used in pulling down the Roman

defenses. This movement was made
by the Gauls outside, who had come
to the relief of the besieged. — **cam-**
pestrēs mūnītiōnēs, *the fortifica-*
tions in the plain, viz. those of the
Romans. — **quā** introduces a purpose
clause and is equivalent to **ut eā,** *in*
order that by this signal. — **prōicere**
and **prōturbāre** depend upon **pa-**
rant. — Supply **et** before **fundīs.** —
dē vāllō prōturbāre, *to drive in*
disorder from the rampart. — **suīs,**
Dat., *to his men.* — **ut** after **nostrī**
and **ut** before **cuique** are adverbs
= *as, just as.* — **ut superiōribus**
diēbus, *just as on former days.*
— **cuique,** Dat. of **quisque.** —

nītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus, sụdibusque quās in
opere disposuerant āc glandibus Gallōs prōterrent.   Prō-
spectū tenebrīs adēmptō, multa utrimque vulnera accipiun-
tur ; complūra tormentīs tēla cōniciuntur.   At Mārcus
Antōnius et Gāius Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs
ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs premī
intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ūlteriōribus castellīs dēduc-
tōs submittēbant.

The Gauls retreat at Daybreak

82. Dum longius ab mūnītiōne aberant Gallī plūs multi-
tūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successē-
runt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant, aut in scrobēs
dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur, aut ex vāllō āc turribus trāiectī
pīlīs mūrālibus interībant.   Multīs undique vulneribus accep-
tīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī nē ab
latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenī-

---

fundīs lībrīlibus, *with slings carry-
ing stones of a pound weight.* — **su-
dēs** were wooden stakes sharpened at
the end and sometimes charred in the
fire to make them hard. — **glandēs**
means in the first place *acorns,* and
then *leaden bullets* for the sling
made in the form of acorns. — **Prō-
spectū tenebrīs adēmptō,** *the
view being cut off by the darkness.*
— The **tormentum** was an engine
for throwing missiles by means of
twisted cords. — **ad dēfendendum
obvēnerant,** *had fallen by lot to
defend.* — **dēductōs** agrees with
eōs understood, the object of **sub-
mittēbant,** *sent for aid to these
those led out from the farther
forts = led out men from the far-*

ther *forts and sent them to assist
these.*

82. **Dum,** *as long as.* — **plūs prō-
ficiēbant,** *they accomplished more
(than the enemy) = they had the
advantage.* — **stimulī** were sharp-
ened stakes set in pits and covered
with brush to impede the enemy.
The pits in which these stakes were
set were called **scrobēs.** — **sē stimu-
līs inopinantēs induēbant,** *were
impaled unawares on the sharpened
stakes, or falling into the pits were
pierced through, or transfixed by the
mural pikes from the rampart and
towers they perished.* — **ab latere
apertō,** *on the open side = on the
right side ;* the shield being carried
on the left arm, the right side was

rentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea quae
ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant prōferunt,
priōrēs fossās explent; diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs
morātī, prius suōs discēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōni-
bus appropinquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

The Gauls plan a Surprise for the Romans

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī, Gallī quid agant
cōnsulunt. Locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum
castrōrum situs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septen-
triōnibus collis, quem, propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs, opere
circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriō paene inīquō
locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec Gāius Antistius
Rēgīnus et Gāius Canīnius Rebilus, lēgātī, cum duābus legiō-
nibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus, ducēs
hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum
quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque
pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī
tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs
Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus,
propinquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille, ex castrīs

unprotected. — **interiōrēs** . . . **pri-
ōrēs**, *those from within the town
who were in the advance.* — **diūtius,**
too long. — **suōs,** *their friends, i.e.*
those who had come to their relief.
— **rē īnfectā,** *their purpose un-
accomplished.*

83. **Locōrum perītōs,** *familiar
with the places.*

Rule. — *Adjectives of* Desire,
Knowledge, Fulness, Power,
Sharing, Guilt, *and their oppo-*

sites, and Verbals in **-āx** *take the
Genitive.*

opere, *by their works.* — **ne-
cessāriō paene inīquō,** *almost
of necessity unfavorable.* — **eārum
cīvitātum . . . opīniōnem,** *the high-
est reputation for courage of these
states.* — **quid quōque pactō agī
placeat,** *what it seems best should
be done and in what way.* — **placeat,**
Subj. in an indirect question. Of
what is it the object? — **cōpiīs,** Dat.

prīmā vigiliā ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post
montem sē occultāvit, mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē
reficere iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur,
ad ea castra quae supra dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdem-
que tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere,
et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

The Final Struggle

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex
oppidō ēgreditur: crātīs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliqua-
que, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur
ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur; quae
minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum
manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus
locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor,
quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum perīculum
in aliēnā vident salūte cōnstāre; omnia enim plērumque,
quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

after **praeficiunt**. Rule **X.** — **prīmā
vigiliā**, *at the first watch ;* Abl. of
time when. The Romans divided
the night from sunset to sunrise into
four equal watches, the length of
course varying with the season of
the year. — **sub lūcem**, *at day-
break.*

84. **Pūgnātur**, *the fighting con-
tinues.* — **quae minimē vīsa . . .
hūc concurritur**, *what part seemed
least firm, hither it is hastened =
they rush to that part which seemed
the weakest.* — **manus**, *the forces.* —
**nec facile plūribus locīs occur-
rit**, *nor do they easily present them-
selves in several places.* — **pūgnan-**

tibus is a Dat. depending upon **post
tergum exstitit**, nearly equal to a
Gen. limiting **tergum ;** *which arose
behind the back to (of) them fighting
= behind their backs as they fought.*
— **quod suum perīculum . . . cōn-
stāre**, *because they see that their
own danger depends upon the safety
of others.* The Roman soldiers in
one of the lines of fortification could
hear the shouts of the Gauls behind
them attacking those in the other
line of fortification, and they knew
that they were out of danger as long
as their friends were successful in
resisting the attack made upon them
by the relieving force of Gauls.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque ex parte gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus submittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs lābōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fāstīgium māgnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla cōniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et āscēnsum dat Gallīs et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit; imperat, sī sustinēre nōn posset, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnāret; id nisi

---

85. quāque, Abl. sing. of quisque. — quāque ex parte, *on each side.* — gerātur, Rule XXXIV. — Utrīsque ad animum occurrit, *it occurs to the mind of both,* i.e. Romans and Gauls. — Utrīsque, cf. pūgnantibus, § 84. — quō māximē contendī conveniat, *in which it is necessary to put forth the utmost effort.* — conveniat, subjunctive in a relative result clause. — dē omnī salūte dēspērant, *wholly despair of safety.* — perfrēgerint, obtinuerint, Fut. Perf. Ind. — Māximē ... labōrātur, *they exert themselves especially.* — Supply esse with missum. — Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem ... mōmentum, *the unfavorable downward slope of the ground is of great importance.* — ad dēclīvitātem, *downward.* — testūdine factā, *having formed a testudo.* Testudo means a *tortoise.* The soldiers formed the testudo by joining their shields over their heads so as to make a protection against missiles hurled upon them from above. — dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt, *fresh soldiers succeed in turn to those exhausted* = *as they become exhausted fresh soldiers in turn take their places.* The agger was a sloping mound of earth leading up to the wall or the fortification that was to be scaled; also used for the regular earthworks of the entrenched camp. — et ... et, *both ... and.*

86. subsidiō labōrantibus, Rule XIII. Cf. suīs cēdentibus auxiliō, § 80. — dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnāret, *to withdraw their*

necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta ex āscēnsū temptant; hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multi-

TESTUDO

tūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōrīcam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmō Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs Gāius Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostibus, eō quō Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ab tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre

---

poterant, coāctīs ūnā quadrāgintā cohortibus, quās, ex
proximīs praesidiīs dēductās, fors obtulit, Caesarem per
nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faciendum exīstimet. Acce-
lerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

Defeat of the Gauls

88. Ēius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, quō īnsīgnī
in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuerat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus
vīsīs quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec

HEAD OF GAUL
(Rome)

dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs
proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre
sublātō, excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque
omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī,
omissīs pīlīs, gladiīs rem gerunt. Re-
pente post tergum equitātus cernitur;
cohortēs aliae appropinquant: hostēs
terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occur-
runt; fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dux et
prīnceps Lemovīcum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus
vīvus in fugā comprehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria LXXIV ad
Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs
in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam
suōrum, dēspērātā salūte, cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt.

— ūnā, adv., *together.*— fors obtu-
lit, *chance threw them in his way.*—
Caesarem facit certiōrem, *makes
Cæsar more certain = informs Cæ-
sar.*— quid faciendum exīstimet,
what he thinks must be done. Sup-
ply esse with faciendum.— exīsti-
met, Rule XXXIV.— intersit, *take
part in.*
88. ex colōre cōgnitō, *i.e. pur-*

ple.— quō, Rule XXVI.— īnsīgnī,
as a distinguishing mark.— ūtī,
Inf. of ūtor.— haec dēclīvia et
dēvexa, *these steep hillsides. Dē-
clīvis* means *inclined downwards,*
and *dēvexus* means *sloping.* The
two together may be rendered *steep
hillsides.*— excipit, *is caught up.*
— rem gerunt, *continue the fight.*—
vīvus comprehenditur, *is taken*

Fit prōtinus, hāc rē audītā, ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod
nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc totīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent
dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā

DYING GAUL

nocte missus equitātus novissimum āgmen cōnsequitur:
māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā
in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Vercingetorix surrenders

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx, conciliō convocātō, id bel-
lum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātium sed commūnis
lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et, quoniam sit fortūnae cēden-
dum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmā-
nīs satisfacere, seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs

alive. — **Quod nisi,** *but if the*
soldiers had not been exhausted by
the frequent reinforcements (of one
another).
89. **suārum necessitātium**
causā, *for his own interests.* — **quo-**

niam sit fortūnae cēdendum,
since he must yield to fate. — **ad**
utramque rem, *for either event.*
— **Rōmānīs;** compounds of **satis,**
bene, and **male** are followed by
the Dat. — **vīvum** agrees with **sē**

rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prō-
dūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsēdit: eō ducēs
prōdūcuntur. Vercingetorīx dēditur ; arma prōiciuntur.
Reservātīs Haeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs
recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtō exercituī capita
singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

understood, the object of **trādere.**	Dat. for **tōtī.**— **capita singula,** *cap-*
— **Ipse,** Cæsar. — **sī** (to see) *whether.*	*tives one by one = a captive to each*
— **posset,** Rule XXXIV. — **tōtō,**	*soldier under the name of booty.*

NOTE. — Every generous spirit will be touched by the sad fate of the
noble Gallic chief who fought so gallantly, though unsuccessfully, for
the deliverance of his country. We are told that he armed himself,
and equipped his horse, in the most magnificent manner, and then sal-
lied out at the gate. After he had ridden several times around the Roman
proconsul as he sat upon his tribunal, he dismounted, put off his armor,
and placed himself at Cæsar's feet. Here he remained in silence until
Cæsar ordered a guard to take him away and keep him for his triumph.
Vercingetorix had relied upon the former friendship of Cæsar for for-
giveness, or at least for honorable treatment. But Cæsar knew no mercy
for those who had ventured to take the field against the legions of
Rome. The noble Gaul was sent to Rome, to be confined in a dungeon
until the day of his execution. Mommsen, who has only praise for
Cæsar, gives in a few words the closing scene of this tragedy: "Five
years afterwards, he (Vercingetorix) was led in triumph through the
streets of the Italian capital; and while his conqueror was offering thanks
to the gods on the summit of the Capitol, Vercingetorix was beheaded at
its foot as guilty of treason against the Roman nation."

TRANSLATION INTO LATIN

79–82. 1. Having seized the outer hill, they encamped three
miles from our fortifications. 2. On the next day, leading out
the cavalry from the camp, they stationed the infantry in the
higher places. 3. If the cavalry had been led out from the camp,
battle would have been joined. 4. The camp occupied the top

of the ridge.   5. The Gauls thought that their men had-the-[1] advantage in the fight.   6. If they should despair of victory, they would retreat into the town.   7. They fear lest they may be surrounded on the right flank.

83–86.   1. The Gauls, being twice repulsed, took counsel as to what they should do.   2. Going out of the camp at the second watch, they well nigh completed the march at daylight.   3. They brought forth the hooks which had been prepared in case of a sally.   4. They fought everywhere at once.   5. If the Gauls should not break through the fortifications, they would entirely despair of safety.   6. Having learned this, Cæsar sends ten cohorts as a reinforcement for those who were struggling.   7. Do not give up to the labor.

87–89.   1. Since the fight was raging more fiercely, Cæsar sends Brutus with four cohorts as an aid to his men.   2. Labienus informed Cæsar, through a messenger, what he thought should be done.   3. The enemy turn and flee: a great slaughter takes place.   4. Many are taken alive in their flight.   5. Suddenly, a shout being raised from both sides, they join battle.   6. Many are slain, but a few withdraw unharmed into the town.   7. If the soldiers are not worn out with the labor of the day, all the forces of the enemy will be destroyed.   8. The next day, Vercingetorix called together a council, in order to show why he had undertaken this war.   9. We must yield to fortune.

---

[1] **Superiōrēs.**

APPENDIX

REGULAR VERBS

First Conjugation

1. **Amō** (st. **amā-**), *to love*

Principal Parts: *Active Voice,* ámō, amā́re, amā́vī, amā́tum
Passive Voice, ámor, amā́rī, amā́tus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	

PRESENT

I love, am loving, do love · *I am loved,* etc.

ámō	amā́mus	ámor	amā́mur
ámās	amā́tis	amā́ris (-re)	amā́minī
ámat	ámant	amā́tur	amántur

IMPERFECT

I loved, was loving, did love · *I was loving,* etc.

amā́bam	amābā́mus	amā́bar	amābā́mur
amā́bās	amābā́tis	amābā́ris (-re)	amābā́minī
amā́bat	amā́bant	amābā́tur	amābántur

FUTURE

I shall love or *be loving* · *I shall be loved*

amā́bō	amā́bimus	amā́bor	amā́bimur
amā́bis	amā́bitis	amā́beris (-re)	amābíminī
amā́bit	amā́bunt	amā́bitur	amābúntur

Active Voice   **Passive Voice**

PERFECT

I loved or *have loved*   *I was loved* or *have been loved*

amā́vī	amā́vimus	amā́tus, -a, -um	sum es est	amā́tī, -ae, -a	súmus éstis sunt
amāvístī	amāvístis				
amā́vit	amāvérunt (-re)				

PLUPERFECT

I had loved or *had been loving*   *I had been loved*

amā́veram	amāverā́mus	amā́tus, -a, -um	éram érās érat	amā́tī, -ae, -a	erā́mus erā́tis érant
amā́verās	amāverā́tis				
amā́verat	amā́verant				

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have loved or *been loving*   *I shall have been loved*

amā́verō	amāvérimus	amā́tus, -a, -um	érō éris érit	amā́tī, -ae, -a	érimus éritis érunt
amā́veris	amāvéritis				
amā́verit	amā́verint				

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

ámem	amḗmus	ámer	amḗmur
ámēs	amḗtis	amḗris (-re)	amḗminī
ámet	áment	amḗtur	améntur

IMPERFECT

amā́rem	amārḗmus	amā́rer	amārḗmur
amā́rēs	amārḗtis	amārḗris (-re)	amārḗminī
amā́ret	amā́rent	amārḗtur	amāréntur

PERFECT

amā́verim	amāvérimus	amā́tus, -a, -um	sim sīs sit	amā́tī, -ae, -a	sī́mus sī́tis sint
amā́veris	amāvéritis				
amā́verit	amā́verint				

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

PLUPERFECT

amāvíssem	amāvissḗmus	amā́tus, -a, -um	éssem éssēs ésset	amā́tī, -ae, -a	essḗmus essḗtis éssent
amāvíssēs	amāvissḗtis				
amāvísset	amāvíssent				

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

love thou	*love ye*	*be thou loved*	*be ye loved*
ámā	amā́te	amā́re	amā́minī

FUTURE

thou shalt love	*you shall love*	*thou shalt be loved*	*they shall be loved*
amā́tō	amātṓte	amā́tor	———
amā́tō	amántō	amā́tor	amántor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	amā́re, *to love*	amā́rī, *to be loved*
PERF.	amāvísse, *to have loved*	amā́tus ésse, *to have been loved*
FUT.	amātū́rus ésse, *to be about to love*	amā́tum ī́rī, *to be about to be loved*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. ámāns, -antis, *loving*	PERF. amā́tus, -a, -um, *loved* or *having been loved*
FUT. amātū́rus, -a, -um, *being about to love*	GERUNDIVE, amándus, -a, -um, *to be loved*

GERUND	SUPINE

GEN.	amándī, *of loving*	
DAT.	amándō, *to* or *for loving*	
ACC.	amándum, *loving*	amā́tum, *to love*
ABL.	amándō, *by love*	amā́tū, *to love* or *to be loved*

Second Conjugation

2.   **Móneō** (st. **monē-**), *to warn*

Principal Parts : *Active Voice,* móneō, monḗre, mónuī, mónitum
                 Passive Voice, móneor, monḗrī, mónitus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice	**Passive Voice**

PRESENT

I warn, am warning, do warn   *I am warned,* etc.

móneō	monḗmus	móneor	monḗmur
mónēs	monḗtis	monḗris (-re)	monḗminī
mónet	mónent	monḗtur	monéntur

IMPERFECT

I warned, was warning, did warn   *I was warned,* etc.

monḗbam	monēbā́mus	monḗbar	monēbā́mur
monḗbās	monēbā́tis	monēbā́ris (-re)	monēbā́minī
monḗbat	monḗbant	monēbā́tur	monēbántur

FUTURE

I shall warn or *be warning*   *I shall be warned*

monḗbō	monḗbimus	monḗbor	monḗbimur
monḗbis	monḗbitis	monḗberis (-re)	monēbíminī
monḗbit	monḗbunt	monḗbitur	monēbúntur

PERFECT

I warned or *have warned*   *I was warned* or *have been warned*

mónuī	monúimus	mónitus	⎧ sum	mónitī	⎧ súmus
monuístī	monuístis	-a, -um	⎨ es	-ae, -a	⎨ éstis
mónuit	monuḗrunt (-re)		⎩ est		⎩ sunt

| **Active Voice** | | **Passive Voice** | |

PLUPERFECT

I had warned or *had been warning*   *I had been warned*

monúeram	monuerámus	mónitus	éram	mónitī	erāmus
monúerās	monuerātis	-a, -um	érās	-ae, -a,	erātis
monúerat	monúerant		érat		érant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have warned   *I shall have been warned*

monúerō	monuérimus	mónitus	érō	mónitī	érimus
monúeris	monuéritis	-a, -um	éris	-ae, -a	éritis
monúerit	monúerint		érit		érunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

móneam	moneámus	mónear	moneámur
móneās	moneátis	moneáris (-re)	moneáminī
móneat	móneant	moneátur	moneántur

IMPERFECT

monērem	monērēmus	monērer	monērēmur
monērēs	monērētis	monērēris (-re)	monērēminī
monērēt	monērent	monērētur	monēréntur

PERFECT

monúerim	monuérimus	mónitus	sim	mónitī	símus
monúeris	monuéritis	-a, -um	sīs	-ae, -a	sítis
monúerit	monúerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

monuíssem	monuissēmus	mónitus	éssem	mónitī	essémus
monuíssēs	monuissétis	-a, -um	éssēs	-ae, -a	essétis
monuísset	monuíssent		ésset		éssent

IMPERATIVE

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

PRESENT

warn thou	*warn ye*	*be thou warned*	*be ye warned*
mónē	monḗte	monḗre	monḗminī

FUTURE

thou shalt warn	*you shall warn*	*thou shalt be warned*	*they shall be warned*
monḗtō	monētṓte	monḗtor	——
monḗtō	monéntō	monḗtor	monéntor

INFINITIVE

PRES.	monḗre, *to warn*	monḗrī, *to be warned*
PERF.	monuísse, *to have warned*	mónitus ésse, *to have been warned*
FUT.	monitū́rus ésse, *to be about to warn*	mónitum ī́rī, *to be about to be warned*

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	mónēns, -entis, *warning*	PERF.	mónitus, -a, -um, *warned or having been warned*
FUT.	monitū́rus, -a, -um, *being about to warn*	GERUNDIVE,	monéndus, -a, -um, *to be warned*

GERUND

GEN.	monéndī, *of warning*
DAT.	monéndō, *to* or *for warning*
ACC.	monéndum, *warning*
ABL.	monéndō, *by warning*

SUPINE

mónitum, *to warn*

mónitū, *to warn* or *to be warned*

Third Conjugation

3. Régō (verb stem **reg-**; pres. stem **rege-**), *to rule*

Principal Parts : *Active Voice,* régō, régere, réxī, réctum
Passive Voice, régor, régī, réctus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	

PRESENT

I rule, am ruling, do rule		*I am ruled,* etc.	
régō	régimus	régor	régimur
régis	régitis	régeris	regíminī
régit	régunt	régitur	regúntur

IMPERFECT

I ruled, was ruling, did rule		*I was ruled,* etc.	
regébam	regēbámus	regébar	regēbámur
regébās	regēbátis	regēbáris (-re)	regēbáminī
regébat	regébant	regēbátur	regēbántur

FUTURE

I shall rule or *be ruling*		*I shall be ruled,* etc.	
régam	regémus	régar	regémur
régēs	regétis	regéris (-re)	regéminī
réget	régent	regétur	regéntur

PERFECT

I ruled or *have ruled*		*I was ruled* or *have been ruled*	
réxī	réximus	réctus { sum, es, est	réctī { súmus, éstis, sunt
rēxístī	rēxístis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
réxit	rēxérunt (-re)		

Active Voice   **Passive Voice**

PLUPERFECT

I had ruled or *had been ruling*   *I had been ruled*

réxeram	rēxerámus	réctus {	éram	réctī {	erámus
réxerās	rēxerātis	-a, -um {	érās	-ae, -a {	erātis
réxerat	réxerant		érat		érant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have ruled or *been ruling*   *I shall have been ruled*

réxerō	rēxérimus	réctus {	érō	réctī {	érimus
réxeris	rēxéritis	-a, -um {	éris	-ae, -a {	éritis
réxerit	réxerint		érit		érunt

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

régam	regámus	régar	regámur
régās	regātis	regáris (-re)	regáminī
régat	régant	regátur	regántur

IMPERFECT

régerem	regerémus	régerer	regerémur
régerēs	regerétis	regeréris (-re)	regerémīnī
régeret	régerent	regerétur	regeréntur

PERFECT

réxerim	rēxérimus	réctus {	sim	réctī {	símus
réxeris	rēxéritis	-a, -um {	sīs	-ae, -a {	sītis
réxerit	réxerint		sit		sint

PLUPERFECT

rēxíssem	rēxissémus	réctus {	éssem	réctī {	essémus
rēxíssēs	rēxissétis	-a, -um {	éssēs	-ae, -a {	essétis
rēxísset	rēxíssent		ésset		éssent

IMPERATIVE

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	

PRESENT

rule thou	*rule ye*	*be thou ruled*	*be ye ruled*
rége	régite	régere	regíminī

FUTURE

thou shalt rule	*you shall rule*	*thou shalt be ruled*	*they shall be ruled*
régitō	regitṓte	régitor	——
régitō	regúntō	régitor	regúntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. régere, *to rule*	régī, *to be ruled*
PERF. rēxísse, *to have ruled*	réctus ésse, *to have been ruled*
FUT. rēctūrus ésse, *to be about to rule*	réctum īrī, *to be about to be ruled*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. régēns, -entis, *ruling*	PERF. réctus, -a, -um, *ruled* or *having been ruled*
FUT. rēctūrus, -a, -um, *being about to rule*	GERUNDIVE, regéndus, -a, -um, *to be ruled*

GERUND   SUPINE

GEN. regéndī, *of ruling*	
DAT. regéndō, *to* or *for ruling*	
ACC. regéndum, *ruling*	réctum, *to rule*
ABL. regéndō, *by ruling*	réctū, *to rule* or *to be ruled*

Fourth Conjugation

4.   **Aúdiō** (st. **audī-**), *to hear*

Principal Parts : *Active Voice,*   aúdiō, audíre, audívī, audítum
                 Passive Voice, aúdior, audírī, audítus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

PRESENT

I hear, am hearing, do hear   *I am heard,* etc.

aúdiō	audímus	aúdior	audímur
aúdīs	audítis	audíris (-re)	audíminī
aúdit	aúdiunt	audítur	audiúntur

IMPERFECT

I heard, was hearing, did hear   *I was heard,* etc.

audiḗbam	audiēbámus	audiḗbar	audiēbámur
audiḗbās	audiēbátis	audiēbáris (-re)	audiēbáminī
audiḗbat	audiḗbant	audiēbátur	audiēbántur

FUTURE

I shall hear   *I shall be heard*

aúdiam	audiḗmus	aúdiar	audiḗmur
aúdiēs	audiḗtis	audiḗris (-re)	audiḗminī
aúdiet	aúdient	audiḗtur	audiéntur

PERFECT

I heard or *have heard*   *I was heard* or *have been heard*

audívī	audívimus	audítus	sum	audítī	súmus
audivístī	audivístis		es		éstis
audívit	audīvḗrunt (-re)	-a, -um	est	-ae, -a	sunt

Active Voice		Passive Voice	

PLUPERFECT

I had heard or *had been hearing*		*I had been heard*	
audíveram	audīverámus	audítus $\begin{cases} \text{éram} \\ \text{érās} \\ \text{érat} \end{cases}$	audítī $\begin{cases} \text{erámus} \\ \text{erátis} \\ \text{érant} \end{cases}$
audíverās	audīverátis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
audíverat	audíverant		

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have heard or *been hearing*		*I shall have been heard*	
audíverō	audīvérimus	audítus $\begin{cases} \text{érō} \\ \text{éris} \\ \text{érit} \end{cases}$	audítī $\begin{cases} \text{érimus} \\ \text{éritis} \\ \text{érunt} \end{cases}$
audíveris	audīvéritis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
audíverit	audíverint		

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

audíam	audiámus	audíar	audiámur
audíās	audiátis	audiáris (-re)	audiáminī
audíat	audíant	audiátur	audiántur

IMPERFECT

audírem	audīrémus	audírer	audīrémur
audírēs	audīrétis	audīréris (-re)	audīrémīnī
audíret	audírent	audīrétur	audīréntur

PERFECT

audíverim	audīvérimus	audítus $\begin{cases} \text{sim} \\ \text{sīs} \\ \text{sit} \end{cases}$	audítī $\begin{cases} \text{sīmus} \\ \text{sītis} \\ \text{sint} \end{cases}$
audíveris	audīvéritis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
audíverit	audíverint		

PLUPERFECT

audīvíssem	audīvissémus	audítus $\begin{cases} \text{éssem} \\ \text{éssēs} \\ \text{ésset} \end{cases}$	audítī $\begin{cases} \text{essémus} \\ \text{essétis} \\ \text{éssent} \end{cases}$
audīvíssēs	audīvissétis	-a, -um	-ae, -a
audīvísset	audīvíssent		

IMPERATIVE

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	

PRESENT

hear thou	*hear ye*	*be thou heard*	*be ye heard*
aúdī	audíte	audíre	audíminī

FUTURE

thou shalt hear	*ye shall hear*	*thou shalt be heard*	*they shall be heard*
audítō	audítṓte	audítor	——
audítō	audiúntō	audítor	audiúntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. audíre, *to hear*   audírī, *to be heard*
PERF. audivísse, *to have heard*   audítus ésse, *to have been heard*
FUT. audītū́rus ésse, *to be about to hear* audítum írī, *to be about to be heard*

PARTICIPLES

PRES. aúdiēns, -entis, *hearing*   PERF. audítus, -a, -um, *heard or having been heard*

FUT. audītū́rus, -a, -um, *being about to hear* GERUNDIVE, audiéndus, -a, -um, *to be heard*

GERUND   SUPINE

GEN. audiéndī, *of hearing*
DAT. audiéndō, *to or for hearing*
ACC. audiéndum, *hearing*   audítum, *to hear*
ABL. audiéndō, *by hearing*   audítū, *to hear or to be heard*

Third Conjugation — Verbs in -iō

5. Cápiō (verb stem **cap-**; pres. stems **cape-** and **capi-**), *to take*

Principal Parts: *Active Voice*, cápiō, cápere, cḗpī, cáptum
Passive Voice, cápior, cápī, cáptus sum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice	**Passive Voice**

PRESENT

I take, am taking, do take		*I am taken*, etc.	
cápiō	cápimus	cápior	cápimur
cápis	cápitis	cáperis (-re)	capíminī
cápit	cápiunt	cápitur	capiúntur

IMPERFECT

I took, was taking, did take	*I was taken*, etc.
capiḗbam, capiḗbās, *etc.*	capiḗbar, capiēbā́ris (-re), *etc.*

FUTURE

I shall take or *be taking*	*I shall be taken*, etc.
cápiam, cápiēs, *etc.*	cápiar, capiḗris (-re), *etc.*

PERFECT

I took or *have taken*	*I was taken* or *have been taken*
cḗpī, cēpístī, *etc.*	cáptus, -a, -um, sum, es, *etc.*

PLUPERFECT

I had taken or *had been taking*	*I had been taken*
cḗperam, cḗperās, *etc.*	cáptus, -a, -um, éram, érās, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have taken or *been taking*	*I shall have been taken*
cḗperō, cḗperis, *etc.*	cáptus, -a, -um, érō, éris, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

Active Voice   **Passive Voice**

PRESENT

cápiam, cápiās, *etc.*   cápiar, capiā́ris (-re), *etc.*

IMPERFECT

cáperem, cáperēs, *etc.*   cáperer, caperḗris (-re), *etc.*

PERFECT

cḗperim, cḗperis, *etc.*   cáptus, -a, -um, sim, sīs, *etc.*

PLUPERFECT

cēpíssem, cēpíssēs, *etc.*   cáptus, -a, -um, éssem, éssēs, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT

| *take thou* | *take ye* | *be thou taken* | *be ye taken* |
| cápe | cápite | cápere | capíminī |

FUTURE

thou shalt take	*you shall take*	*thou shalt be taken*	*they shall be taken*
cápitō	capitṓte	cápitor	——
cápitō	capiúntō	cápitor	capiúntor

INFINITIVE

PRES. cápere, *to take*   cápī, *to be taken*
PERF. cēpísse, *to have taken*   cáptus ésse, *to have been taken*
FUT. captū́rus ésse, *to be about to take*   cáptum ī́rī, *to be about to be taken*

PARTICIPLES

Active Voice	**Passive Voice**
Pres. cápiēns, -entis, *taking*	Perf. cáptus, -a, -um, *taken* or *having been taken*
Fut. captūrus, -a, -um, *being about to take*	Gerundive, capiéndus, -a, -um, *to be taken*

GERUND	SUPINE
Gen. capiéndī, *of taking*, etc.	Acc. cáptum, *to take*
	Abl. cáptū, *to take* or *to be taken*

IRREGULAR VERBS

6.   **Sum** (pres. stem **es-**; perf. stem **fu-**)

Principal Parts: sum, esse, fuī, futūrus

INDICATIVE

Present		Imperfect	
I am		*I was*	
sum	súmus	éram	erắmus
es	éstis	érās	erắtis
est	sunt	érat	érant

Future		Perfect	
I shall be		*I have been*	
érō	érimus	fúī	fúimus
éris	éritis	fuístī	fuístis
érit	érunt	fúit	fuḗrunt (-ēre)

PLUPERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
I had been		*I shall have been*	
fúeram	fuerámus	fúerō	fuérimus
fúerās	fuerátis	fúeris	fuéritis
fúerat	fúerant	fúerit	fúerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
sim	símus	éssem	essémus
sīs	sítis	éssēs	essétis
sit	sint	ésset	éssent

PERFECT		PLUPERFECT	
fúerim	fuérimus	fuíssem	fuissémus
fúeris	fuéritis	fuíssēs	fuissétis
fúerit	fúerint	fuísset	fuíssent

IMPERATIVE

PRESENT		FUTURE	
be thou	*be ye*	*thou shalt be*	*ye shall be*
es	éste	éstō	estṓte
		he shall be	*they shall be*
		éstō	súntō

INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE

PRES. ésse, *to be*

PERF. fuísse, *to have been*   futúrus, -a, -um, *about to be*

FUT. futúrus ésse, *to be about to be*

7.   **Póssum (potis, *able* + sum),** *to be able, can*

Principal Parts: possum, pósse, pótuī, ——

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		**PRESENT**	
I can, am able			
póssum	póssumus	póssim	possímus
pótes	potéstis	póssīs	possítis
pótest	póssunt	póssit	póssint

IMPERFECT	**IMPERFECT**
I could, was able	
póteram, -ās, *etc.*	póssem, -ēs, *etc.*

FUTURE
I can, shall be able
póterō, -is, *etc.*

PERFECT	**PERFECT**
I could, have been able	
pótuī, -istī, *etc.*	potúerim, -is, *etc.*

PLUPERFECT	**PLUPERFECT**
I could have, had been able	
potúeram, -ās, *etc.*	potuíssem, -íssēs, *etc.*

FUTURE PERFECT
I could have, shall have been able
potúerō, -is, etc.

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	**PERFECT**
to be able	*to have been able*
pósse	potuísse

8.   **Prṓsum (prṓ + sum),** *to profit*

Principal Parts: prṓsum, prōdésse, prōfutū́rus

<table>
<tr><th colspan="2">INDICATIVE</th><th colspan="2">SUBJUNCTIVE</th></tr>
<tr><th colspan="2">PRESENT</th><th colspan="2">PRESENT</th></tr>
<tr><td>prṓsum</td><td>prṓsumus</td><td>prṓsim</td><td>prosī́mus</td></tr>
<tr><td>prṓdes</td><td>prōdéstis</td><td>prṓsīs</td><td>prosī́tis</td></tr>
<tr><td>prṓdest</td><td>prṓsunt</td><td>prṓsit</td><td>prṓsint</td></tr>
</table>

IMPF	prṓderam	prōdéssem
FUT.	prṓderō	
PERF.	prṓfuī	prōfúerim
PLUPF.	prōfúeram	prōfuíssem
FUT. PERF.	prōfúerō	

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	prṓdes	
FUT.	prōdéstō	prōdestṓte

INFINITIVE

PRESENT	PERFECT	FUTURE
prōdésse	prōfuísse	prōfutū́rus esse

PARTICIPLE

FUTURE

prōfutū́rus, -a, -um

9.   **Vólō,** *to be willing, to wish*
     Nṓlō (nōn + volō), *to be unwilling*
     Mā́lō (magis + volō), *to be more willing, to prefer*

Principal Parts: vólō, vélle, vóluī, ——
                nṓlō, nṓlle, nṓluī, ——
                mā́lō, mā́lle, mā́luī, ——

INDICATIVE

Present

	vólō	nōlō	málō
	vīs	nōn vīs	mávīs
	vult	nōn vult	mávult
	vólumus	nólumus	málumus
	vúltis	nōn vúltis	māvúltis
	vólunt	nólunt	málunt
IMPF.	volébam	nōlébam	mālébam
FUT.	vólam, -ēs	nólam, -ēs	málam, -ēs
PERF.	vóluī	nóluī	máluī
PLUPF.	volúeram	nōlúeram	mālúeram
FUT. PERF.	volúerō	nōlúerō	mālúerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

	vélim	nólim	málim
	vélīs	nólīs	málīs
	vélit	nólit	málit
	velímus	nōlímus	mālímus
	velítis	nōlítis	mālítis
	vélint	nólint	málint
IMPF.	véllem, -ēs	nóllem, -ēs	mállem, -ēs
PERF.	volúerim	nōlúerim	mālúerim
PLUPF.	voluíssem	nōluíssem	māluíssem

IMPERATIVE

PRES.	——	nólī	——
	——	nōlíte	——
FUT.	——	nōlítō	——
	——	nōlitóte, nōlúntō	——

INFINITIVE

Pres.	vélle	nólle	málle
Perf.	voluísse	nōluísse	māluísse

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	vólēns	nólēns	———

10.   **Férō,** *to bear, carry*

Principal Parts : férō, férre, túlī, lấtum

INDICATIVE

Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	
Present			
I bear, do bear, am bearing		*I am borne*, etc.	
férō	férimus	féror	férimur
fers	fértis	férris *or* -re	feríminī
fert	férunt	fértur	ferúntur

Impf.	ferēbam	ferébar
Fut.	féram, -ēs, *etc.*	férar, -éris, *etc.*
Perf.	túlī	lấtus sum
Plupf.	túleram	lấtus éram
Fut. Perf.	túlerō	lấtus érō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	féram, -ās, *etc.*	férar, -āris, *etc.*
Impf.	férrem	férrer
Perf.	túlerim	lấtus sim
Plupf.	túleram	lấtus éssem

IMPERATIVE

	Active Voice		**Passive Voice**	
Pres.	fer	férte	férre	feríminī
Fut.	fértō	fērtṓte	fértor	——
	fértō	ferúntō	fértor	ferúntor

INFINITIVE

Pres.	férre	férrī
Perf.	tulísse	lắtus ésse
Fut.	lātū́rus ésse	lắtum ī́rī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	férēns	Perf.	lắtus
Fut.	lātū́rus	Gerundive,	feréndus

GERUND		SUPINE	
Gen.	feréndī, *etc.*	Acc.	lắtum
		Abl.	lắtū

11. **Éō,** *to go* (used only in the Active)
Fíō (pass. of **faciō**), *to be made, become*

Principal Parts: éō, íre, ívī (íī), ítum
fíō, fíerī, fáctus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

éō	ímus	fíō	fíimus
īs	ítis	fís	fítis
it	éunt	fit	fíunt

Impf.	íbam		fiébam
Fut.	íbō		fíam, -ēs, *etc.*
Perf.	ívī (íi)		fáctus sum
Plupf.	íveram (íeram)		fáctus éram
Fut. Perf.	íverō (íerō)		fáctus érō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.	éam		fíam, -ās, *etc.*
Impf.	írem		fíerem
Perf.	íverim (íerim)		fáctus sim
Plupf.	īvíssem		fáctus éssem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.	ī	íte	fī	fíte
Fut.	ítō	ītṓte	——	——
	ítō	eúntō	——	——

INFINITIVE

Pres.	íre		fíerī
Perf.	īvísse (iísse)		fáctus ésse
Fut.	itū́rus ésse		fáctum írī

PARTICIPLES

Pres.	íēns, Gen. eúntis	Perf.	fáctus
Fut.	itū́rus, -a, -um	Gerundive,	faciéndus

GERUND

Gen.	eúndī, *etc.*

SUPINE

Acc.	ítum		fáctum
Abl.	ítū		fáctū

12. NUMERALS

CARDINALS	ORDINALS
1. ūnus, -a, um	prīmus, -a, um
2. duo, duae, duo	secundus (alter)
3. trēs, tria	tertius
4. quattuor	quārtus
5. quīnque	quīntus
6. sex	sextus
7. septem	septimus
8. octō	octāvus
9. novem	nōnus
10. decem	decimus
11. ūndecim	ūndecimus
12. duodecim	duodecimus
13. tredecim	tertius decimus
14. quattuordecim	quārtus decimus
15. quīndecim	quīntus decimus
16. sēdecim (sexdecim)	sextus decimus
17. septendecim	septimus decimus
18. duodēvīgintī	duodēvīcēsimus
19. ūndēvīgintī	ūndēvīcēsimus
20. vīgintī	vīcēsimus
21. { vīgintī ūnus *or* ūnus et vīgintī }	{ vīcēsimus prīmus *or* ūnus et vīcēsimus }
22. { vīgintī duo *or* duo et vīgintī }	{ vīcēsimus secundus *or* alter et vīcēsimus }
30. trīgintā	trīcēsimus
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus
100. centum	centēsimus
200. ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsimus
1000. mīlle	mīllēsimus

13. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

	FIRST PERSON		SECOND PERSON		THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE)
	Sing.	*Plu.*	*Sing.*	*Plu.*	*Sing. and Plu.*
Nom.	égo	nōs	tū	vōs	——
Gen.	méī	$\begin{cases} \text{nóstrūm} \\ \text{(nóstrī)} \end{cases}$	túī	$\begin{cases} \text{véstrūm} \\ \text{(véstrī)} \end{cases}$	súī
Dat.	míhi	nṓbīs	tíbi	vṓbīs	síbi
Acc.	mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sḗsē)
Abl.	mē	nṓbīs	tē	vṓbīs	sē (sḗsē)

14. RULES OF SYNTAX

I. The Subject of a Finite Verb is in the Nominative Case.

II. The Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case.

III. A Predicate Noun after a neuter or passive verb takes the same case as the subject.

IV. Adjectives, Adjective Pronouns, and Participles agree with their nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.

V. A Pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender and Number, but its Case depends upon the construction of the clause in which it stands.

VI. A Noun joined to another noun denoting the same person or thing is in the same case by Apposition.

VII. A Noun limiting another noun denoting a different person or thing is in the Genitive.

VIII. Adjectives of *Desire, Knowledge, Fulness, Power, Sharing, Guilt,* and their opposites, and Verbals in -**āx**, take the Genitive.

IX. The Indirect Object of an action is in the Dative.

X. Many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub,** and **super** are followed by the Dative.

XI. After **sum** and similar verbs, the Possessor is expressed by the Dative, the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

XII. Many verbs signifying to *Favor, Please, Trust, Obey,* and their contraries, to *Command, Resist, Persuade, Threaten, be Angry,* and the like, are followed by the Dative.

XIII. A few verbs admit two Datives, — one denoting the *Object to which,* the other the *End for which,* anything is, or is done.

XIV. Adjectives of *Nearness, Friendliness, Fitness, Likeness,* or their opposites, take a Dative of the object to which the quality is directed.

XV. The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative.

XVI. Duration of Time and Extent of Space are expressed by the Accusative.

XVII. Verbs meaning to *Make, Choose, Name, Call,* and the like, take two Accusatives of the same person or thing.

XVIII. Verbs of *Asking, Teaching,* and *Concealing* take two Accusatives, — one of a *person,* the other of a *thing.*

XIX. *Cause, Means,* and *Instrument* are expressed by the Ablative. *Manner* is expressed by the Ablative, either alone or joined with the preposition **cum.**

XX. That of which anything is *deprived,* or from which it is *removed* or *separated,* is expressed by the Ablative.

XXI. The Degree of Difference is expressed by the Ablative.

XXII. Time at or within which is expressed by the Ablative.

XXIII. A noun with an adjective or limiting Genitive is in the Ablative after the verb **sum,** or another noun, to denote the *Character* or *Quality* of a person or thing.

Note. — Instead of the Ablative, the Genitive is sometimes used.

XXIV. The Ablative of Specification is used with Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs, to denote *in what respect* anything is true.

XXV. The Comparative is followed by the Ablative when **quam** (*than*) is not expressed.

XXVI. The Deponent Verbs **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor** are followed by the Ablative.

XXVII. The Voluntary Agent of a verb in the Passive Voice is in the Ablative with **ā** or **ab.**

XXVIII. A noun and a participle, or a noun and an adjective, or two nouns, may be put in the Ablative to denote the *time, cause,* or other *attendant circumstance* of an action.

This is called the *Ablative Absolute.*

XXIX. *Place Where* is expressed by the *Ablative* with **in**; but names of *Towns* and *Small Islands*, **Domus**, and **Rūs** are put in the *Locative Case* without a preposition.

XXX. After verbs of *Motion, Place to which* is expressed by the *Accusative, Place from which* by the *Ablative;* names of *Towns, Small Islands*, **Domus**, and **Rūs**, without a preposition; other nouns take **ad** or **in** with the *Accusative,* and **ab, dē,** or **ex** with the *Ablative.*

XXXI. Verbs of *Declaring, Thinking, Believing, Knowing,* take after them an Infinitive with a Subject Accusative.

XXXII. Clauses denoting *Purpose* or *Result* take the Subjunctive after **ut, nē, quō, quīn, quōminus,** or a Relative.

XXXIII. **Cum** Causal (*since*) or Concessive (*although*) takes the Subjunctive; **Cum** Temporal (*when*) generally takes the Subjunctive of the Imperfect and Pluperfect Tenses, and the Indicative of the Present and Perfect Tenses.

XXXIV. The Indirect Question has its verb in the Subjunctive.

XXXV. In Indirect Discourse (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua*) the verb of the *Principal* clause is in the *Infinitive,* and the verbs of the *Subordinate* clauses are in the *Subjunctive.*

XXXVI. The Subjunctive is used to express a *command* or an *exhortation.* In this sense it is used chiefly in the *first* and *second* persons singular and the *first* and *third* persons plural of the Present Tense.

XXXVII. The Supine in -**um** is used with verbs of *Motion* to express *Purpose.*

XXXVIII. After verbs of *Giving, Sending, Undertaking, Contracting for,* and the like, the Accusative of the Gerundive in agreement with the object of the verb is used to express *Purpose.*

XXXIX. A Principal Tense in the main clause of a complex sentence is followed by a Principal Tense in the dependent clause; and a Historical Tense in the main clause is followed by a Historical Tense in the dependent clause.

15.   SPECIAL VOCABULARIES

235

Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena*, a proper name.

īnfēstus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, dangerous.*

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

aliās, adv., *at another time.*

ante, adv., *before.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much, such.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, terror.*

invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *to enter, fall upon, attack.*

adeō, adv., *so, to such a degree.*

validus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, powerful, stanch.*

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of Clusium, Clusian.*

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to migrate, remove.*

saepiō, -īre, -sī, -tum, *to hedge in, fortify, guard.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *a protection, guard, garrison.*

pars, partis, f., *a part.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *a wall.*

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *to throw before, set against, use as a defense.*

tueor, -ērī, -tūtus sum, *to guard, defend.*

238

pōns, pontis, m., *a bridge.*

sublicius, -a, -um, adj., *resting upon piles, sublician.*

iter, itineris, n., *a way, march, journey.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*

cōgnōmen, -minis, n., *a surname, name.*

āmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *to lose, send away.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj., *outermost, farthest, farthest part of.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to take possession of, seize, occupy.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *a sharp point, edge, line of battle.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum, *to sustain, hold in check, withstand.*

dōnec, conj., *as long as, until.*

tergum, ī, n., *the back, rear.*

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *to break apart, to break in pieces.*

audācia, -ae, f., *boldness, rashness, audacity.*

obstupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *to astonish, amaze, stupefy.*

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, *to cut off, cut down, break down.*

dēsiliō -īre, -uī, -sultum, *to leap down.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *a missile, weapon.*

superincidō, -ere, ——, ——, *to fall from above, fall upon.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unimpaired, unharmed, safe.*

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, ——, *to swim over, swim across.*

241

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing, thankful, grateful.*

ergā, prep., *towards.*

virtūs, -ūtis, f., *manliness, courage, virtue.*

cīvitās, -tātis, f., *the state.*

pūblicē, adv., *publicly, in behalf of the state.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how much, as.*

circumarō, -āre, -āvī, ——, *to plow around.*

statua, -ae, f., *an image, statue.*

Comitium, -ī, n., *a place of meeting, the Comitium.*

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *to put, place.*

246

quod, conj., *because.*

iniūria, -ae, f., *injustice, wrong, injury.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, f., *Epirus*, a country in the northwest of Greece.

contrā, prep., *against.*

auxilium, -ī, n., *help, assistance, succor.*

pōscō, -ere, popōscī, ——, *to ask, demand, request.*

genus, -eris, n., *race, stock, family, kind, class.*

orīgō, -inis, m., *a beginning, descent, lineage, origin.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, *to draw, drag, drive.*

paulō, adv., *a little.*

prīmum, *in the first place, first, for the first time.*

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, adj., *beyond sea, from over the sea.*

cōnsul, -is, m., *a consul.* The highest magistrate of the Roman republic.

explorātor, -ōris, m., *a spy, scout.*

castra, -ōrum, n., *a camp.* Used only in the plu. in this sense.

ostendō, -ere, -ī, ostentum, *to show, exhibit.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *to send out, dismiss.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to carry tidings back, report.*

249

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *to bring together, join, begin.*

mox, adv., *soon, directly, presently.*

pēs, pedis, m., *a foot;* **pedem referre**, *to retreat, go back.*

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *to bear back, bring back.*

elephantus, -ī, m., *an elephant.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to change.*

fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune, chance, good fortune.*

corpus, -oris, n., *a body.*

molēs, -is, f., *bulk, mass, difficulty.*

terribilis, -e, adj., *frightful, dreadful, terrible.*

superāstō, -āre, -stitī, ——, *to stand upon.*

speciēs, ——, f., *sight, look, appearance.*

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to disturb, confound, throw into disorder.*

equus, -ī, m., *a horse.*

odor, -ōris, m., *smell, scent, odor.*

bēlua, -ae, f., *a beast, monster.*

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to strike with terror, frighten, terrify.*

sessor, -ōris, m., *one who sits, a sitter, a rider.*

vel, conj., *or if you choose, or either;* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or.*

excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *to shake off, remove.*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*

abripiō, -ere, -ripuī, -reptum, *to take away by force, to carry off.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

fīnis, -is, f., *an end, boundary, limit.* In the plural, *territory.*

captīvus, -a, -um, adj., *taken prisoner, captive.* As a substantive, *a prisoner.*

summus, -a, -um, adj. sup., *highest, greatest, the top of.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, distinction.*

252

adversus, -a, -um, adj., *turned towards, facing, in front.*

vulnus, -eris, n., *a wound.*

trux, trucis, adj., *wild, fierce, stern.*

mortuus, -a, -um, adj., *dead.*

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to lie, be prostrate, lie dead.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *the voice, word, exclamation.*

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *all, the whole, entire.*

orbis, -is, m., *a circle, the world.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind.*

mīles, -itis, m. and f., *a soldier, soldiery.*

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum, *to touch, to happen, to fall to one's lot.*

amīcus, -ī, m., *a friend.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to be glad, to congratulate.*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

inquam, inquis, inquit, etc., def. verb, *to say.*

rōbur, -oris, n., *hard wood, oak, strength, flower.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

modus, -ī, m., *measure, manner, way.*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any, any one.*

contendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum, *to strive for, to pursue, to hasten, to fight.*

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, sword, tool.*

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to lay waste, ravage, desolate.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, ordinal adj., *twentieth.*

lapis, -idis, m., *a stone.*

255

obviam, adv., *in the way, against, to meet.*

āiō, ais, ait, etc., def. verb, *to say, affirm.*

hydra, -ae, f., *a hydra.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

caput, -itis, n., *the head, the life.*

renāscor, -ī, -nātus sum, dep. verb, *to be born again, to grow again.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many, as.*

praecīdō, -ere, -ī, -cīsum, *to cut off in front, cut off.*

dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning, from.*

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *to buy back, to ransom, to redeem.*

honōrificē, adv., *honorably, with respect.*

pretium, -ī, n., *price, ransom.*

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to give back, return.*

līberālitās, -tātis, f., *generosity, liberality.*

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to take out, to receive.*

258

mītis, -e, adj., *mild, gentle, kind.*

plācābilis, -e, adj., *placable, conciliatory.*

comes, -itis, m. and f., *a companion, associate, attendant.*

clēmentia, -ae, f., *moderation, forbearance, mercy*.

hūmānitās, -tātis, f., *humanity, kindliness, refinement*.

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, dep., *to try, to test, experience*. In the perf., *to know by experience*.

sērō, adv., *late, too late*.

intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *to come to know, to understand*.

socius, -ī, m., *a companion, an ally*.

accipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to receive, accept, to learn*.

sors, sortis, f., *a lot, fate, fortune*.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to lament, deplore, pity*.

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat, rather*.

līberē, adv., *freely, openly*.

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine*.

incalēscō, -ere, -caluī, inc., *to grow warm, to become heated*.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *to carry away, to report*.

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *to call, summon*.

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several*. As a substantive in the plural.

convīvium, -ī, n., *a social feast, a banquet*.

parum, adv., *too little, not enough*.

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep., *to speak, talk, say*.

perīculum, -ī, n., *a trial, danger, risk*.

simplex, -icis, adj., *simple, frank, open*.

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f., *a confession, an acknowledgment*.

culpa, -ae, f., *a fault, guilt, blame*.

discutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *to shatter, to remove, dispel*.

percontor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to ask particularly, inquire*.

num, adv., *whether* (in indirect questions).

perveniō, -īre -vēnī, ventum, *to come up, arrive, reach*.

auris, -is, f., *the ear*.

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to revolt, to be wanting, to fail, to give out*.

plūs, plūris, adj., *more*.

gravis, -e, adj., *weighty, serious, severe, earnest*.

mālō, mālle, māluī, *to choose rather, to prefer*.

subrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, *to smile*.

261

igitur, conj., *then, therefore, accordingly*.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to reckon, consider, think*.

glōriōsus, -a, -um, adj., *full of glory, famous, glorious*.

foedus, -eris, n., *treaty, league, alliance*.

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, just, fair, equal.*

condiciō, -ōnis, f., *condition, terms, agreement.*

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *to place before, put forth, propose.*

familiāris, -e, adj., *of a household, intimate, friendly.*

multum, adv., *much, greatly.*

apud, prep. with acc., *with, in the presence of.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, friendship, esteem, thanks.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to be strong, to have power, to have influence.*

ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to take by assault, to storm, to capture.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f., *desire, passion, ambition.*

adulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to flatter, fawn upon.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *talk, conversation, discourse.*

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -ertum, *to open, to disclose, to reveal.*

volō, velle, voluī, *to wish.*

diciō, -ōnis, f., *dominion, sway, rule.*

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum, *to place under, to make subject.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to go over, to surpass, to overcome.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to design, intend.*

264

nec, adv., *nor and not.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *difficult, hard.*

nōndum, adv., *not yet.*

perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *to look through, to perceive, see through.*

ego, meī, mihi, etc., *I.*

nōs, acc. plu. of ego.

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet.*

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, agreeable, pleasant.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *ease, leisure, peace.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, dep., *to enjoy, delight in.*

impediō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to entangle, hinder, obstruct.*

quōminus, conj., *by which the less, that not, to prevent.*

iste, ista, istud, pron., *this, that, that of yours.*

domus, -ūs, f., *a house, home.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *a gift, present.*

circumeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, *to go around, to visit, to canvass.*

sōlum, adv., *alone, only.* nōn . . . sōlum, *not only.*

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, *to spurn, reject, scorn.*

267

intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *to lead in, introduce, admit.*

cūria, -ae, f., *the senate house.*

prōpēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *inclining towards, willing, friendly.*

extollō, -ere, ——, ——, *to raise, praise, extol.*

aequitās, -ātis, f., *evenness, fairness, equity.*

disserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to examine, discuss, discourse about.*

sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, sentiment.*

senātus, -ūs, m., *the senate.*

inclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to turn, incline, yield, give way.*

caecitās, -ātis, f., *blindness.*

ōlim, adv., *at that time, for some time, formerly.*

cōnfēstim, adv., *immediately, forthwith.*

lectīca, -ae, f., *a litter, sedan.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *a speech, oration.*

dissuādeō, -ere, -suāsī, -suāsum, *to advise against, dissuade.*

respondeō, -ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, *to answer, reply.*

excēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to go out, to withdraw.*

270

īnfāmis, -e, adj., *of ill repute, disreputable, infamous.*

vetus, -eris, adj., *old, advanced in years.*

status, -ūs, m., *station, position, condition, rank.*

antequam, adv., *before, sooner than.*

bīnī, -ae, -a, distributive numeral, *two by two, two each.*

spolium, -ī, n., *spoils, booty.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *to seek, ask, inquire.*

qualis, -e, adj., *of what sort or kind, such as, as.*

comperiō, -īre, -perī, -pertum, *to gain knowledge of, to find out.*

templum, -ī, n., *a temple, a consecrated place.*

cōnsessus, -ūs, m., *a collection, an assembly.*

273

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, dep., *to set out, depart, march.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *a lingering, delay.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to please, to be pleasing.*

ferōx, -ōcis, adj., *bold, headstrong, fierce.*

temerārius, -a, -um, adj., *rash, imprudent, indiscreet.*

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj., *sharp, spirited, keen, active.*

sequor, -ī, **secūtus sum**, dep., *to follow, adopt.*

ambō, **ambae**, **ambō**, num., *both.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *a village, hamlet.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to fortify on all sides, to intrench.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *against the will, unwilling.*

conlēga, -ae, m., *a colleague.*

instruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *to form, draw up, furnish.*

radius, -ī, m., *a beam, ray.*

ventus, -ī, m., *the wind.*

oriēns, -entis, m., *the rising sun, the East.*

pulvis, -eris, m. (rarely f.), *the dust.*

adflō, -āre, -āvī, ——, *to blow towards.*

caedō, -ere, **cecīdī**, **caesum**, *to cut, to cut to pieces, to slay, slaughter.*

adflīgō, -ere, -īxī, -īctum, *to strike* (to the ground), *to damage, injure, afflict.*

rēs pūblica, **reī pūblicae**, f., *the commonwealth, the state, the republic.*

276

sedeō, -ere, **sēdī**, **sessum**, *to sit.*

saxum, -ī, n., *a stone, rock.*

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *to fill, cover.*

cruor, -ōris, m., *blood, gore.*

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum, *to look at, gaze upon, observe.*

quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** or **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain, some.*

tribūnus, -ī, m., *a tribune.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thine, your.*

mors, -tis, f., *death.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear.*

satis, *enough.* Used as an adv., or as an indecl. adj. or noun.

lūctus, -ūs, m., *sorrow, grief, lamentation.*

tū, **tuī**, pres. pron., *thou, you.*

mactus, -a, -um, adj., *worshiped, honored;* **macte virtūte**, *good luck! well done!*

estō, fut. imper. of **sum**, 2d sing. : *thou shalt be, be thou.*

caveō, -ere, **cāvī**, **cautum**, *to be on one's guard, take heed, beware.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *small, scanty, short.*

ēvādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum, *to go out, escape.*

perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to make way with, waste, lose, ruin.*

abeō, -īre, -iī, ——, *to go away, depart.*

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to fortify, guard, defend.*

priusquam, adv., *sooner than, before that.*

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come to, to reach, arrive at.*

fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to make firm, strengthen.*

strāgēs, -is, f., *an overthrow, ruin, slaughter, carnage.*

patior, patī, passus sum, dep., *to suffer, permit, allow.*

exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to breathe out, perish, expire.*

alter, altera, alterum, gen. alterius, adj. pron., *the other (of two), one (of two).*

paucus, -a, -um, adj., *a few, little.*

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, ——, *to flee for refuge, take refuge.*

cōnsulāris, -e, adj., *of a consul, consular.* As a substantive, *an ex-consul.*

aut, conj., *or.* aut . . . aut, *either . . . or.*

praetōrius, -a, -um, adj., *of a prætor, prætorian.* As a substantive, *an ex-prætor.*

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum, *to fall, perish, be slain.*

vīgintī, num. adj., *twenty.*

nōbilis, -e, adj., *well known, famous, high born.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three hundred.*

mīlle, num. adj., indeclinable in the sing., *a thousand.* In the plu., a substantive, declined, mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, etc.

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred.*

279

tēstimōnium, -ī, n., *testimony, evidence, proof.*

modius, -ī, m., *a measure, a peck.*

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *to draw off, take away, remove.*

(cēterus), -a, -um, adj., *the rest.* Nom. sing. masc. not used.

suadeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *to advise, urge, persuade.*

fessus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied, tired.*

praefectus, -ī, m., *an overseer, commander.*

cēssō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to delay, cease, stop.*

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to urge, exhort.*

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum, *to go on, proceed, hasten.*

quīntus, -a, -um, ordinal num., *fifth.*

Capitōlium, -ī, n., *the Capitol.*

epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to feast, banquet.

probō, -āre -āvī, -ātum, to approve, commend, test.

nīmīrum, adv., doubtless, surely, truly.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep., to use, employ, enjoy.

nesciō, -īre, -īvī, ——, not to know, to be ignorant.

mora, -ae, f., a delay.

salūs, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare.

282

dēvertō, -ere, -ī, ——, to turn aside.

dēliciae, -ārum, f. plu., a delight, charm, allurement.

ardor, -ōris, m., eagerness, zeal.

ꝫlanguēscō, -ere, -languī, ——, incep., to grow faint, fail, relax.

vērē, adv., truly, truthfully.

numquam, adv., at no time, never.

pavor, -ōris, m., a trembling, terror, dread.

clādēs, -is, f., destruction, disaster, calamity.

nūntius, -ī, m., a messenger, courier, tidings.

mentiō, -ōnis, f., a mention.

quīn etiam, nay moreover.

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, to go back, return.

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to have no hope, to despair of, give up.

temeritās, -ātis, f., rashness, foolhardiness, temerity.

sēgniter, adv., slowly, sluggishly, lazily.

ōtiōsē, adv., leisurely, without haste.

interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime.

respīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to take breath, to recover, revive.

285

iuventūs, -ūtis, f., youth, young people.

manūmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, to release, set at liberty, make free.

egeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, to need, to want, to be lacking.

aerārium, -ī, n., a treasury, public funds.

(ops), opis, f., aid, wealth, treasure.

libēns, -entis, adj., willing, with readiness, with pleasure.

medium, -ī, n., the middle. in medium, for public use.

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, to produce, bring forth.

praeter, prep., besides.

bulla, -ae, f., *the bulla, an amulet.*

singulī, -ae, -a, adj., *one by one, apiece.*

quisquam, ——, quicquam (quidquam), indef. pron., *any one, any.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *an example.*

imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. verb, *to imitate.*

tribus, -ūs, f., *a tribe.*

vix, adv., *scarcely, with difficulty.*

tabula, -ae, f., *writing tablet, record.*

scrība, -ae, m., *a scribe, a clerk.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., *private, personal.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *public.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty, opportunity.* In the plu., *forces.*

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to ask, demand.*

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to swear, make oath.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to obtain a request, to gain one's end, to obtain.*

288

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, *to judge, think, believe.*

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *unavoidable, necessary.*

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep., *to go out, leave.*

aliquis (-quī), aliqua, aliquid (-quod), indef. pron., *some one, any one, something, anything.*

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, dep., *to forget.*

regredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep., *to go back, return.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before.*

adsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., *to follow up, overtake.*

ergō, adv., *accordingly, therefore.*

reditus, -ūs, m., *a going back, return.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to explain, understand, interpret.*

innōtēscō, -ere, -nōtuī, ——, incep., *to become known.*

comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum, *to seize, arrest, apprehend.*

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, *to bind, fetter, fasten.*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *to break, subdue, overcome.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj., *elevated, high, noble.*

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

A

ā or **ab**, prep. with abl., *from, away from, by;* **ab latere apertō**, *on the right flank.*

abdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [ab + dō], *to put away, remove, conceal.*

abeō, -īre, -iī, —— [ab + eō], *to go away, depart.*

abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [ab + iaciō], *to throw away, cast off, throw aside.*

abripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptum [ab + rapiō], *to take away forcibly, snatch away, carry off.*

abstineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [abs + teneō], *to keep back, keep from, abstain.*

absum, -esse, -fuī [ab + sum], *to be away, be absent, be far from.*

āc (see **atque**), conj., *and, and also.*

Acca, -ae, f., *Acca,* a proper name.

accēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [ad + cēdō], *to go to, approach, happen, befall.*

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + celerō], *to hasten, make haste.*

acciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [ad + ciō], *to summon, send for, invite.*

accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum [ad + capiō], *to receive, accept, take.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + causa], *to call to account, blame, accuse.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen, hasty, impetuous.* Comp. **ācrior,** Sup. **ācerrimus.**

Achillēs, -is, m., *Achilles,* a Grecian hero.

aciēs, -ēī, f., *a sharp edge, point, line of battle, battle array.*

ācriter [ācer], adv., *sharply, keenly, fiercely.* Comp. **ācrius,** Sup. **ācerrimē.**

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards, near, at, according to;* with numerals, *about.*

addō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [ad + dō], *to put to, join, add.*

addūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [ad + dūcō], *to lead to, bring to, lead up.*

adeō [ad + eō], adv., *to this, so far, so, to such a degree.*

adeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [ad + eō], *to go to, come to, approach, draw near.*

adferō, adferre, attulī, adlātum [ad + ferō], *to bring to, carry, apply;* manūs adferre, *to use force.*

adfīnis, -e [ad + fīnis], adj., *adjoining, near to.* Hence, subst. adfīnis, -is, m. and f., *a connection by marriage, a relative.*

adfīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + fīrmō], *to strengthen, maintain, assert.*

adflīgō, -ere, -flīxī, -flīctum [ad + flīgō], *to overthrow, harass, distress.* adflīctus, -a, -um, part., used as an adj., *miserable, wretched.*

adflō, -āre, -āvī, —— [ad + flō], *to blow towards.*

adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ad + habeō], *to turn to, apply, employ, have recourse to.*

adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [ad + emō], *to take away.*

adiuvō, -āre, -iūvī, -iūtum [ad + iuvō], *to help, assist.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + ministrō], *to manage, direct.*

admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [ad + mittō], *to send to, give access, admit.*

admoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [ad + moveō], *to move to, bring near, apply.*

adorior, -īrī, -ortus sum [ad + orior], dep., *to fall upon, to attack.*

adōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ad + ōrnō], *to provide, furnish, equip.*

adsequor, -ī, -secutus sum [ad + sequor], dep., *to follow up, overtake, come up with.*

adulēscēns, -entis [adolēscō], adj., *young.* As subst., *a youth.*

adulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to flatter.*

adultus, -a, -um [adolēscō], adj., *mature, adult.*

adveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [ad + veniō], *to come to, arrive at.*

adventus, -ūs [adveniō], *a coming, approach, arrival.*

adversārius, -a, -um [adversus], adj., *opposite, hostile.* As subst., *an opponent, enemy, adversary.*

adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum [adversus], dep., *to oppose, resist.*

adversus, -a, -um [advertō], adj., *turned towards, facing, in front, adverse.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *against.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [aedēs + faciō], *to build, construct.*

aegritūdō, -inis [aeger], f., *sickness, grief, vexation.*

aequitās, -ātis [aequus], f., *evenness, fairness, equity.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *even, fair, favorable.* Comp. aequior, Sup. aequissimus.

aerārium, -ī [aes], n., *the treasury, the public treasure.*

aetās, -ātis, f., *time of life, age.*

Āfrica, -ae, f., *Africa.*

ager, agrī, m., *a field, land.*

agger, -eris, m., *a mound, rampart, heap of earth.*

āgmen, -minis [agō], n., *an army on the march, a moving column, troops.*

āgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus [ad + gnōscō], *to recognize, understand.*

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum, *to lead, drive, act, do, move;* grātiās agere, *to thank, give thanks.*

agricola, -ae, m., *a farmer.*

āiō, def. verb, *to say, assent, affirm.*

Alba, -ae, f., *Alba.*

Albānī, -ōrum, m., *inhabitants of Alba.*

Alesia, -ae, f., *Alesia.*

aliās [alius], adv., *at another time;* nōn aliās, *at no other time.*

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius], adj., *of another, of others, another's, others'.*

aliquantō, adv., *somewhat, rather.*

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, indef. pron., *some one, any one;* neut., *something.*

alius, alia, aliud, adj., *another, other.*

alō, -ere, -uī, altum *or* alitum, *to feed, nourish, maintain.*

alter, -tera, -terum, adj., *the other of two, one, another.*

altus, -a, -um, adj., *high, deep.*

alveus, -ī, m., *a small ship, a skiff.*

ambō, ambae, ambō, *both.*

amīcus, -ī [amō], m., *a friend.*

amittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [ab + mittō], *to send away, let go, lose.*

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to love.*

amor, -ōris [amō], m., *love, affection.*

Amūlius, -ī, m., *Amulius,* the younger brother of Numitor.

an, conj., *whether, or;* nesciō an, *I know not whether = probably, perhaps.*

ancīle, -is, n., *a small oval shield.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj., *narrow, contracted.* Comp. angustior, Sup. angustissimus.

animadvertō, -ere, -ī, -versum [animum + advertō], *to turn the mind, give attention to, consider, regard, punish.*

animus, -ī, m., *the mind.*

annus, -ī, m., *a year.*

ante, prep. with acc., *before.* As adverb, *before,* in time or space.

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [ante + ferō], *to bear before,* or *in front.*

antequam, adv., *sooner than, before.*

Antistius, -ī, m., *Antistius Reginus,* one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -ī, m., *Marcus Antonius,* one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

ānulus, -ī, m., *a ring.*

anxius, -a, -um, adj., *anxious, solicitous.*

aper, aprī, m., *a wild boar.*

aperiō, -īre, -uī, -tum, *to uncover, open.*

apertus, -a, -um, adj., *uncovered, open;* latus apertum, *the right side,* as that side was not covered by the shield.

appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to address, call, call by name, name.*

appetō, -ere, -īvī *or* -iī, -ītum, *to strive for, seek after, attack, draw nigh, be at hand.*

Appius, -ī, m., *Appius Claudius,* a famous Roman.

appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to come near, approach.*

apud, prep. with acc., *with, near, before, among, at, in the presence of.*

Āpūlia, -ae, f., *Apulia*, a country in southeastern Italy.

aqua, -ae, f., *water.*

aquila, -ae, f., *an eagle.*

āra, -ae, f., *an altar.*

arbiter, -trī, m., *a spectator, witness.*

arceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to shut up, keep away, prevent.*

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *to call, summon, send for.*

ārdor, -ōris, m., *heat, eagerness, zeal.*

arma, -ōrum, n., only in the plu., *implements, arms, weapons.*

armātūra, -ae [armō], f., *armor, armed men, troops;* **levis armātūra**, *light infantry.*

armilla, -ae, f., *a bracelet, armlet.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to arm, equip.*

Arvernus, -ī, m., *an Arvernian.* The Arverni were a powerful Celtic tribe.

arx, arcis, f., *a citadel, fortress.*

āscēnsus, -ūs, m., *an ascent, a way up, an approach.*

āspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [ad + speciō], *to look at, behold, observe.*

asȳlum, -ī, n., *a place of refuge, sanctuary, asylum.*

at, conj., *but, but on the other hand.*

atque (before consonants **āc**), conj., [ad + que], *and, and also, and in fact.*

attribuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum [ad + tribuō], *to assign, allot, ascribe, give.*

auctōritās, -ātis [augeō], f., *authority, power, responsibility, influence.*

audācia, -ae [audāx], f., *boldness, daring, bravery, audacity.*

audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, semidep., *to venture, dare.*

audiō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, *to hear, listen to, regard.*

auferō, -ferre, abstulī, ablātum [ab + ferō], *to take away, carry off, remove.*

augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctum, *to increase, enlarge.*

augurium, -ī [augur], n., *the observance of omens, augury, divination.*

augustus, -a, -um, adj., *reverend, venerable, majestic.*

aureus, -a, -um [aurum], adj., *of gold, golden.*

auris, -is, f., *the ear, attention.*

aurum, -ī, n., *gold.*

auspicium, -ī, n., *divination by the flight of birds, auspices;* **auspicia adhibēre**, *to consult the auspices.*

aut, conj., *or, or at least.*

autem, conj., *but, however, moreover.*

Automatia, -ae, f., *Automatia*, the goddess of fortune.

auxilium, -ī, n., *help, aid, succor.* In the plu., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

Aventīnus, -a, -um, adj., *relating to the Aventine, of the Aventine*, one of the seven hills of Rome.

avus, -ī, m., *a grandfather.*

B

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, strange, barbarous.* As noun, *a barbarian.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um [bellum], adj., *warlike, fond of fighting.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [bellum], *to war, wage war, carry on war.*

bellum, -ī, n., *war.*

belua, -ae, f., *a beast, wild beast.*

benevolentia, -ae [bene + volō], f., *good will, favor, friendship.*

benīgnē, adv., *in a friendly manner, kindly, courteously.*

benīgnitās, -ātis [benīgnus], f., *kindness, courtesy, friendliness.*

bīnī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *two by two, two each.* Gen. plu. bīnūm.

bis, num. adv., *twice.*

bonitās, -ātis [bonus], f., *goodness, integrity, virtue.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., *good.* Comp. melior, Sup. optimus.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Brutus,* one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

bulla, -ae, f., *an amulet,* generally of gold, worn by free-born boys.

C

C is an abbreviation for the proper name *Gāius.*

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsum, *to fall, happen, decline.*

caecitās, -ātis [caecus], f., *blindness.*

caedēs, -is, f., *a cutting down, killing, slaughter.*

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesum, *to cut, cut down, slay, kill.*

caelum, -ī, n., *the sky, heaven, heavens.* Plu. wanting.

Caesar, -aris, m., *Cæsar.*

calamitās, -ātis, f., *loss, damage, misfortune, disaster, calamity.*

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania,* a country of Italy, south of Rome.

campester, -tris, -tre [campus], adj., *of a level field, flat, level, in the plain.*

campus, -ī, m., *a plain, field;* campus Mārtius, *the field of Mars,* an open field in Rome along the Tiber.

Caninius, -ī, m., *Caninius Rebilus,* one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

Cannae, -ārum, f., *Cannæ,* a hamlet in Apulia.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantum, *to sing, chant.*

caper, -prī, m., *a he-goat.*

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum, *to take, seize, take captive, capture.*

Capitōlium, -ī [caput], n., *the Capitol* at Rome; sometimes used for the Capitoline Hill on which the Capitol stood.

capra, -ae, f., *a she-goat;* caprae palūs, *the Goat's Pool.*

captīvus, -ī [capiō], m., *a captive, prisoner.*

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua,* a city of Campania.

caput, -itis, n., *the head;* capitis poenam, *the punishment of death, capital punishment.*

carmen, -inis, n., *a song, poem.*

Carthāgō, -inis, f., *Carthage,* a city in northern Africa.

Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj., *Cartha-*

ginian, *of Carthage.* As noun, *a Carthaginian.*

casa, -ae, f., *a cottage, hut, cabin.*

castellum, -ī, n., *a fort, citadel, fortress.*

castra, -ōrum, n., *a camp, an encampment.*

cāsus, -ūs [**cadō**], m., *occurrence, event, chance, fortune, calamity.*

catulus, -ī, m., *a young animal, a whelp.*

causa, -ae, f., *a cause, reason.* In the abl. with limiting gen., *on account of, for the sake of.*

caveō, -ere, cāvī, cautum, *to be on one's guard, take care, beware.*

cēdō, -ere, cēssī, cēssum, *to give way, withdraw, retreat.*

celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to frequent, celebrate, honor.*

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., *swift, quick, hasty.* Comp. **celerior,** Sup. **celerrimus.**

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to hide from, hide, conceal.*

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, *to estimate, judge, think, be of the opinion.*

centum, num. adj., *one hundred.*

centuria, -ae [**centum**], f., *a division of a hundred, a century.*

cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētum, *to distinguish, perceive, determine.*

certāmen, -inis [**certō**], n., *a struggle, contest, combat, battle.*

certus, -a, -um, adj., *determined, certain, sure.* Comp. **certior,** Sup. **certissimus.**

cēssō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**cēdō**], *to delay, pause, be idle.*

(cēterus), -a, -um, adj., (nom. masc. sing. not used), *the other, remainder, rest.* As noun, *the others, the other things.*

Cīneās, -ae, m., *Cineas,* a counsellor of Pyrrhus.

circā, prep. with acc., *around, about, among.* As adv., *round about, around.*

circuitus, -ūs, m., *a circuit, way around.*

circumarō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to plow around.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, *to place around, surround, invest, besiege.*

circumeō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum,** *to go around, visit.*

circumplector, -ī, ——, *to clasp, surround, encompass.*

circumveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come around, surround, encompass.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f., *a citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, f., *citizenship, body-politic, state.*

clādēs, -is, f., *destruction, disaster, slaughter, calamity.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**clāmō**], *to cry aloud, shout.*

clāmor, -ōris, m., *a shout, cry, clamor.*

Claudius, -ī, m., *Claudius,* a Roman name of one of the *gentes.*

claudō, -ere, clausī, clausum, *to shut, close, shut in, blockade.*

clēmentia, -ae, f., *mildness, mercy, clemency.*

cliēns, -entis, m., *a client.*

Clūsium, -a, -um, adj., *of Clusium;* **rēs Clūsīna,** *the Clusian state.*

coacervō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to heap together, collect in a mass.

Cocles, -itis, m., Cocles, meaning one-eyed, a surname of Horatius.

coepī, coeptus, def. verb, to begin.

coerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, to restrain, hold in check, curb.

cōgnōmen, -inis, n., a surname, family name, name.

cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitum [cum + gnōscō], to become acquainted with, recognize, know.

cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctum [cum + agō], to drive together, collect, compel, assemble.

cohors, -tis, f., a company, cohort, the tenth part of a legion.

cohortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to encourage, incite, exhort.

collis, -is, m., a hill.

colō, -ere, -uī, cultum, to till, cultivate, cherish, honor, worship.

colōnus, -ī [colō], m., a husbandman, settler, colonist.

color, -ōris, m., the color, hue.

comes, -itis [cum + eō], m. and f., a companion, comrade, associate.

comitium, -ī [cum + eō], n., a place of meeting, the comitium, adjoining the Roman Forum.

committō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [cum + mittō], to bring together, join, engage in ; pūgnam committere, to join battle.

Commius, -ī, m., Commius, a chief of the Atrebates.

commoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [cum + moveō], to move, disturb, agitate.

commūnis, -e, adj., common, general, public.

compār, -paris, adj., like, equal to.

comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to bring together, compare.

compellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to accost, address, upbraid.

compellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsus [cum + pellō], to drive together, force, compel.

comperiō, -īre, -ī, -tus, to ascertain, find out, discover.

compleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, to fill up, fill, complete.

complūrēs, -a or -ia, adj., plu. only, several, many, very many.

comprehendō, -ere, -ī, -hēnsum [cum + prehendō], to seize, arrest, capture, comprehend.

conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [concilium], to win over, bring about, procure, conciliate.

concilium, -ī, n., a meeting, an assembly, a council.

concurrō, -ere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum [cum + currō], to run together, assemble, rush up, join battle.

condiciō, -ōnis, f., condition, terms.

conditor, -ōris [condō], m., a founder, builder.

condō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, to found, establish, build, conceal.

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [cum + ferō], to bring together, gather, carry.

cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj., crowded, thick, in close array.

cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f., a confession, an acknowledgment.

cōnfēstim, adv., immediately.

cōnficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [cum + faciō], to accomplish, complete, finish, execute, perform.

cōnfīdō, -ere, -fīsus sum [cum + fīdō], semi-dep., to trust, be confident, have confidence in, rely upon.

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to make firm, strengthen, establish, encourage, confirm, reassure.

cōnflīctor, -ārē, -ātus sum, dep., to contend, struggle.

cōnfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, —— [cum + fugiō], to flee, take refuge, have recourse to.

congressus, -ūs [cum + gradior], m., a meeting, conference, engagement.

congruō, -ere, -ī, ——, to coincide, correspond, agree with.

cōniciō, -ere, coniēcī, coniectum [cum + iaciō], to throw together, throw, cast; in fugam coniectī, put to flight.

cōniūnx, -iugis, m. and f., a consort, spouse, husband or wife.

conlēga, -ae, m., a colleague, associate.

conligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum [cum + legō], to collect, recover, compose.

conloquium, -ī [cum + loquor], n., a conference, interview, conversation.

conor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to undertake, try, attempt.

conquīrō, -ere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum [cum + quaerō], to seek after, search for, collect.

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cum + sacrō], to dedicate, devote, consecrate.

cōnsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, dep., to follow up, overtake, pursue, obtain.

cōnserō, -ere, -uī, -tum [cum + serō], to connect, join; pūgnam cōnserere, to join battle.

cōnsessus, -ūs, m., an assembly.

cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to look at closely, consider, examine.

cōnsīdō, -ere, -sēdī, -sessum, to sit down, settle, encamp.

cōnsilium, -ī, n., deliberation, advice, counsel, plan, wisdom. Cf. concilium.

cōnsistō, -ere, -stitī, -stitum, to stand still, to halt, depend upon.

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., sight, view, look.

cōnspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [cum + speciō], to catch sight of, see, perceive, behold.

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to see, descry, discern.

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to terrify, alarm, dismay, overwhelm.

cōnstituō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, to set up, place, station, determine.

cōnstō, -āre, -stitī, ——, to stand together, exist, appear, be evident, depend upon.

cōnsuēscō, -ere, -suēvī, -suētum, to become accustomed, accustom one's self. In perf. tense, to be accustomed, be wont.

cōnsul, -is, m., a consul.

cōnsulāris, -e, adj., of a consul, consular. As noun, an ex-consul.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to delib-erate, consult, provide for.*

contegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum [cum + tegō], *to cover, bury, conceal, hide.*

contendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum, *to stretch, struggle, contend, hasten.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f., *a stretching, struggle, contest, strife.*

contineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [cum + teneō], *to hold together, re-strain, hold in check.*

contingō, -ere, -tigī, -tāctum [cum + tangō], *to touch, hap-pen, fall to one's lot.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, f., *a meeting, as-sembly.*

contrā, adv., *in opposition, on the other hand.* Prep. with acc., *against, contrary to.*

cōnūbium, -ī, n., *marriage, the right of intermarriage.*

conveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [cum + veniō], *to come to-gether, meet, come, assemble;* convenit, *it is fit.*

convertō, -ere, -ī, -versum [cum + vertō], *to turn round, turn, change.*

convīvium, -ī [cum + vīvō], n., *a feasting together, banquet.*

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [cum + vocō], *to call together, as-semble, summon.*

coorior, -īrī, -ortus sum [cum + orior], dep., *to rise, rise in opposition, break forth, arise.*

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance, plenty.* In the plu., *forces, troops, re-sources.*

Corinthius, -a, -um, adj., *of Cor-inth, Corinthian.*

Corinthus, -ī, f., *Corinth,* a city of Greece.

corpus, -oris, n., *a body, person.*

crātis, -is, f., *a hurdle, fascine, wicker-work.*

crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., *thick, frequent, crowded, numerous, abundant.* Comp., crēbrior; Sup., crēberrimus.

crēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to be-lieve, trust, think.*

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to create, produce, make, choose.*

Crīmīssus, -ī, m., *the Crimisus,* a river of Sicily.

crīnis, is, m., *the hair.*

crūdēlitās, -ātis [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty.*

cruor, -ōris, m., *blood, gore.*

culpa, -ae, f., *a fault, blame, guilt, offense.*

culter, -trī, m., *a knife.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with, to-gether with, along with.*

cum, conj., *when, while, since, although.*

cunctātiō, -ōnis, f., *a delaying, lingering, hesitation.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f., *desire, eager-ness, passion.*

cūr, adv., *why ?*

Curēs, -ium, f. plu., *Cures,* a Sabine town, the home of Numa.

cūria, -ae, f., *a curia,* one of the divisions of the Roman people; *the senate-house, place of meet-ing of the senate.*

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to care for, take care, attend to, see to.*

currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursum, *to run.*

cursus, -ūs, m., *a running, course, journey, race.*

curūlis, -e [currus], adj., *relating to a chariot, curule;* sella curūlis, *a curule chair,* the chair occupied by the higher officials at Rome. Cf. § 211.

cūstōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to watch, guard.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f., *a guard, keeper.*

D

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to find guilty, condemn, sentence.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, of, out of, about, concerning.*

dea, -ae, f., *a goddess.*

dēcēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum [dē + cēdō], *to depart, withdraw, retire.*

decem, num. adj., *ten.*

dēcernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētum, *to decide, decree, contend.*

dēcēssus, -ūs [dēcēdō], m., *a going away, departure, withdrawal.*

dēclīvis, -e, adj., *sloping down, descending.*

dēclīvitās, -ātis [dēclīvis], f., *a slope, declivity, descent.*

dēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to give up, surrender.*

dēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [dē + dūcō], *to lead away, withdraw, lead forth, conduct.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -atum, *to weary, fatigue, exhaust.*

dēfendō, -ere, -ī, dēfēnsum, *to ward off, defend.*

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [dē + ferō], *to bear away, bring, carry, report.*

dēfessus, -a, -um [dēfetīscor], *wearied, exhausted, worn out.*

dēfetīscor, -ī, -fessus sum, dep., *to become tired, grow weary.*

dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum, *to be wanting, fail, give out.*

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to set bounds to, limit, fix, appoint.*

dein, see deinde.

deinceps, adv., *successively, one after another.*

deinde, adv., *then, next, afterwards.*

dēlābor, -ī, -lāpsus sum, dep., *to fall, glide down, descend.*

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *to blot out, destroy, overthrow.*

dēliciae, -ārum, f., *delight, charm.*

dēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *to choose out, select, pick out.*

Dēmaenetus, -ī, m., *Demaenetus,* a Syracusan enemy of Timoleon.

dēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to emigrate, depart, go away, remove.*

dēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [dē + mittō], *to send down, let fall.*

dēmōlior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., *to throw down, demolish, destroy.*

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to point out, show, mention.*

dēmum, adv., *at length, at last, finally.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally.*

dēpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [dē + pellō], *to drive out, drive away, expel, dislodge, avert.*

dēpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum [dē + pōnō], *to lay aside, deposit, give up, lay down.*

dēscendō, -ere, -ī, -scēnsum, *to climb down, descend.*

dēscrībō, -ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, *to write down, describe, represent, mark off.*

dēsertus, -a, -um, adj., *deserted, solitary, waste.*

dēsiliō, -īre, -uī, -sultum [dē + saliō], *to leap down, leap.*

dēspectus, -ūs, m., *a view downward, prospect.*

dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [dē + spērō], *to be without hope, despair of.*

dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, *to fasten, determine, design, intend.*

dēsum, -esse, -fuī [dē + sum], *to be away, fail, be wanting, be lacking.*

dētegō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *to uncover, unroof.*

dētēstor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to curse, avert, ward off;* dētēstāns, *uttering curses against.*

dētrahō, -ere, -trāxī, -trāctum, *to draw off, take off, withdraw.*

dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss, damage, injury.*

dētrūdō, -ere, -trūsī, -trūsum, *to thrust down, push off.*

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to drive out in disorder, expel, dislodge.*

deus, -ī, m., *a god.* Voc., deus.

dēvertō, -ere, -ī, —— [dē + vertō], *to turn away, turn aside, betake one's self.*

dēvexus, -a, -um, adj., *inclining, sloping downward.*

diciō, -ōnis [dīcō], f., *dominion, sway, sovereignty.* Nom. sing. not used.

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum, *to say, speak, tell.*

diēs, -ēī, m. or f. in sing., *a day, time;* in diēs, *from day to day.*

difficilis, -e, adj., *hard, difficult.* Comp. difficilior; Sup. difficilimus.

dīligō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus, *to single out, love, esteem.*

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, f., *a fight, contest, combat.*

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight, contend.*

dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [dī + mittō], *to let go away, send in different directions, dismiss, send away.*

Diōn, -ōnis, m., *Dion,* a Syracusan.

Dionȳsius, -ī, m., *Dionysius,* the name of two Syracusan tyrants.

discēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to withdraw, depart, go away.*

discurrō, -ere, -currī and cucurrī, -cursum [dis + currō], *to run in different directions, run to and fro, run about.*

discutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum, *to shatter, break up, scatter, disperse, remove, dispel.*

dīsiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [dis + iaciō], *to throw apart, scatter, disperse, break up, destroy.*

dispōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum [dis + pōnō], *to place here and there, station, arrange, dispose.*

dissentiō, -īre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum [dis + sentiō], *to differ in opinion, dissent, be at variance.*

disserō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to discuss, harangue, discourse.*

dissuādeō, -ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum [dis + suādeō], *to advise against, oppose by argument, dissuade.*

distineō, -ere, -uī, -tentum, *to hold apart, hinder, detain, keep apart.*

distribuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to divide, distribute, apportion.*

diū, adv., *a long time, long.* Comp. diūtius; Sup. diūtissimē.

diuturnitās, -ātis, f., *length of time, long duration.*

dīvidō, -ere, -vīsī, -vīsum, *to divide, separate, distribute.*

dīvīnitus, adv., *by divine influence, miraculously.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *to give, grant, afford, permit;* in fugam dare, *to put to flight;* operam dare, *to bestow care;* poenās dare, *to suffer punishment.*

doceō, -ēre, -uī, -tum, *to teach, show, inform.*

dolōsē, adv., *craftily, deceitfully.*

dominus, -ī, m., *a master, lord.*

domus, -ūs *or* -ī, f., *a house, home, dwelling;* domī, *at home.*

dōnec, conj., *as long as, until.*

dōnum, -ī, n., *a gift, present.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain.*

dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum, *to lead, conduct, make, prolong, consider, reckon, think.*

dulcis, -e, adj., *sweet, pleasant.* Comp. dulcior; Sup. dulcissimus.

dum, conj., *while, as long as, until.*

duo, -ae, -o, num. adj., *two.*

duodecim, num. adj., *twelve.*

dux, ducis, m. and f., *a leader, general, guide.*

E

ēdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to give out, bring forth, give birth to.*

ēdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [ē + dūcō], *to lead out, bring out.*

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to bring up, rear.*

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [ex + faciō], *to make, accomplish, complete, bring about, cause.*

effundō, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum [ex + fundō], *to pour out, spread abroad.*

egeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to be in need, to want, lack.*

Ēgeria, -ae, f., *Egeria,* the nymph who gave counsel to Numa.

ego, meī, pers. pron., *I.*

ēgredior, -ī, -gressus sum, dep., *to go out, go away, march out.*

ēlanguēscō, -ere, -languī, ——, incep., *to grow faint, fail, relax.*

elephantus, -ī, m., *an elephant.*

ēliciō, -ere, -uī, ——, *to draw out, lure forth, call down.*

ēligō, -ere, -lēgī, -lēctum [ex + legō], *to pick out, choose, select.*

ēloquentia, -ae, f., *eloquence.*

ēmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [ē + mittō], *to send out, send forth, let go, cast aside.*

enim, conj., *for, indeed.*

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, *to go, march, proceed.*

eō, adv., *there, in that place, thither, to such a degree.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, m., *Epirus, a country north-west of Greece proper.*

epulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *to feast, banquet.*

eques, -itis, m., *a horseman, a knight.*

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *a horse.*

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.*

ergō, adv., *accordingly, therefore;* quid ergō? *what then? what follows?*

ēruptiō, -ōnis [ex + rumpō], f., *a bursting forth, a sally.*

et, conj., *and;* adv., *also, even.*

etiam, adv., *also, even.*

Etrūscī, -ōrum, m., *the Etruscans,* a people north of Rome.

ēvādō, -ere, ēvāsī, ēvāsum, *to go out, escape.*

ex, or before consonants ē, prep. with abl., *out of, from;* ex itinere, *on the march.*

exaudiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to hear clearly, hear, listen to.*

excēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to go out, depart, retire.*

excellēns, -entis, adj., *superior, excellent.*

excelsus, -a, -um, *lofty, high, noble, elevated.*

excipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to take out, receive, follow.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to call out, summon, arouse, excite.*

excutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum [ex + quatiō], *to shake off, cast off, remove.*

exemplum, -ī, n., *an example.*

exeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [ex + eō], *to go out, depart, withdraw, march out, escape.*

exercitus, -ūs [exerceō], m., *an army, a disciplined body of men.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., *scanty, small, narrow, short.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to value, judge, think, consider.*

expediō, -īre, -īvī, ītum, *to set free, make ready.*

expedītus, -a, -um, adj., *unimpeded, unencumbered, free, light-armed.*

expellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum, *to drive out, drive away, expel, banish.*

experior, -īrī, -tus sum, dep., *to try, prove, experience.*

expleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *to fill up, fill.*

explōrātor, -ōris, m., *a spy, scout.*

expōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum, *to set forth, expose, land.*

expositiō, -ōnis, f., *a setting forth, exposure, exposition.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to take by storm, capture, conquer.*

exsistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, *to stand forth, be manifest, be, become.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to wait for, expect, wait to see.*

exspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ex + spīrō], *to breathe out, expire, perish, die.*

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to despoil, pillage, plunder.*

exstinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum, *to put out, extinguish, destroy, deprive of life, kill.*

exstō, -āre, ——, —— [ex + stō], *to stand out, stand forth, appear, exist, be.*

exterior, -us, adj. comp., *outer, exterior;* Sup. **extrēmus,** *outermost, last.*

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [ex + terreō], *to frighten, terrify.*

extollō, -ere, ——, —— [ex + tollō], *to lift up, extol, praise.*

extrā, adv. and prep., *on the outside, without, beyond.*

extrēmus, see **exterior.**

F

faber, -brī, m., *a workman, maker, smith.*

Fabius, -ī, m., *Fabius,* a name of a Roman gens.

fābricō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [faber], *to make, construct.*

facile, adv., *easily, readily.*

facilis, -e [faciō], adj., *easy to do, easy.* Comp. **facilior,** Sup. **facillimus.**

faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum, *to make, do, perform, form, cause;* **certiōrem facere,** *to make more certain, inform.*

factum, -ī, n., *a deed, act.*

facultās, -ātis [facilis], f., *ability, skill, power, means, opportunity, abundance.*

falx, falcis, f., *a sickle, wall hook.*

fāma, -ae, f., *a report, rumor, reputation.*

familiāris, -e, adj., *familiar, intimate, friendly, of a family.*

fānum, -ī, n., *a shrine, sanctuary, temple.*

fāstīgium, -ī, n., *a summit, slope, descent.*

fāstus, -a, -um, adj., *not forbidden.* Hence **fāstus diēs,** *a day on which court may be held; a judicial day.*

Faustulus, -ī, m., *Faustulus,* the shepherd who cared for Romulus and Remus.

fēlīcitās, -ātis, f., *good fortune, good luck.*

fēlīx, -īcis, adj., *fortunate, favorable, successful, prosperous.*

fēmina, -ae, f., *a woman, female.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *to bear, carry, endure, report;* **lēgēs ferre,** *to propose laws.*

ferōx, -ōcis, adj., *bold, fierce, spirited.* Comp. **ferōcior,** Sup. **ferōcissimus.**

ferrum, -ī, n., *iron, implement of iron, sword.*

ferus, -a, -um, adj., *wild, untamed, rude, barbarous.*

fessus, -a, -um, adj., *wearied, tired, worn out.*

fēstum, -ī, n., *a holiday, festival.*

fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, faith, confidence, good faith, pledge, belief.*

fidūcia, -ae [fidēs], f., *trust, confidence, assurance.*

fīlia, -ae, f., *a daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, m., *a son.*

fīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum [fīnis], *to limit, finish, put an end to.*

fīnis, -is, m. and f., *end, boundary.* Plu., *territory, country.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnis**], adj., *bordering upon, neighboring.* As noun, *neighbor.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, used as the pass. of **faciō,** *to be done, be made, become, happen, come to pass;* **certior fierī,** *to be informed;* **fit proelium,** *a battle takes place.*

fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [**fīrmus**], *to strengthen, secure.*

fīrmus, -a, -um, adj., *strong, firm, steadfast.*

flāmen, -inis, m., *a priest of one deity, a flamen.*

fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *to weep, lament.*

flōs, -ōris, m., *a flower.*

flūmen, -inis, n., *a stream, river.*

foedus, -eris, n., *a treaty, league, alliance.*

fore, forem, see **sum.**

forīs, adv., *out of doors, from without.*

fōrma, -ae, f., *a form, figure, appearance, beauty.*

fors, fortis, f., *chance, accident.*

forte [**fors**], adv., *by chance, by accident, as it happened.*

fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, steadfast.*

fortūna, -ae, f., *chance, lot, fortune, luck.*

forum, -ī, n., *an open space, market-place, forum.*

fossa, -ae, f., *a ditch, trench, fosse.*

fragor, -ōris [**frangō**], m., *a crashing, din, thunder peal.*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, *to break, crush, dishearten.*

frāter, -tris, m., *a brother.*

frātricīda, -ae, m., *a murderer of a brother, a fratricide.*

frūctus, -ūs, m., *fruit, product, enjoyment, result.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *corn, grain.*

fruor, -ī, frūctus sum, dep., *to enjoy, have the use of.*

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.*

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, ——, *to flee, fly, take to flight, escape by flight, avoid.*

fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to put to flight, rout.*

fulmen, -inis, n., *lightning, a thunderbolt.*

funda, -ae, f., *a sling.*

fundāmentum, -ī, n., usually in the plu., *a foundation, support.*

fūrtum, -ī, n., *a theft, robbery.*

G

Gāius, -ī, m., *Gaius,* a Roman prænomen.

Gallī, -ōrum, m., *Gauls.*

Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul,* the country of the Gauls, corresponding nearly to modern France.

geminī, -ōrum, m., *twins.*

gēns, gentis, f., *a race, tribe, clan, gens, people.*

genus, -eris, n., *a race, stock, family.*

Germānus, -ī, m., *a German.*

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum, *to bear, carry, wear, carry on, wage.*

gladius, -ī, m., *a sword.*

glāns, glandis, f., *an acorn, acorn-shaped ball.*

glōriōsus, -a, -um [glōria], adj., *full of glory, glorious.*

grātia, -ae, f., *favor, gratitude, esteem;* **grātiās agere**, *to express gratitude;* **grātiās habēre**, *to feel gratitude;* **grātiam referre**, *to return a favor.*

grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor], f., *congratulation, rejoicing, joy.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to congratulate, rejoice, show one's joy.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing, grateful.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, serious, severe, weighty, influential.* Comp. **gravior**, Sup. **gravissimus.**

grex, gregis, m., *a flock, herd.*

gymnasium, -ī, n., *a gymnasium.*

H

habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to have, hold, possess.*

Haeduī, -ōrum, m., *the Hædui, a Gallic tribe.*

Hannibal, -alis, m., *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian leader.*

harpagō, -ōnis, m., *a hook, grappling hook.*

harūspex, -icis, m., *a soothsayer.*

haud, adv., *not, by no means.*

Herculēs, -is, m., *Hercules, a Greek hero.*

hīc, haec, hōc, demons. pron., *this*, used of something near the speaker; *this one, he, she, it.*

hīc, adv., *here, in this place.*

Hicetas, -ae, m., *Hicetas*, a Syracusan.

hinc, adv., *from this place, hence.*

homō, -inis, m., *a man, human being.*

honōrificē [honor], adv., *honorably, with respect.*

honor, -ōris, m., *honor, respect, esteem.*

hōra, -ae, f., *an hour.*

Horātius, -ī, m., *Horatius*, a Roman name.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to urge, encourage, exhort.*

hospes, -itis, m., *a stranger, host, entertainer.*

Hostilius, -ī, m., *Hostilius*, a Roman name.

hostis, -is, m. and f., *an enemy.*

hūc, adv., *hither, to this place, thus far.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f., *humanity, kindliness, refinement.*

hūmānus, -a, -um [homō], adj., *human, kind.*

hydra, -ae, f., *the hydra*, a monster with many heads.

I

iaceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to lie, be prostrate, lie dead, lie in ruins.*

iam, adv., *now, already, presently.*

Iāniculum, -ī, n., *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome.

Iānus, -ī, m., *Janus*, an old Italian god.

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

īcō, -ere, īcī, īctum, *to strike;* **foedus īcere**, *to make a treaty, enter into a covenant.*

īdem, eadem, idem, demons. pron., *the same, likewise.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, proper.*

igitur, conj., *therefore, then, accordingly.*

īgnis, -is, m., *fire.*

īgnōminia, -ae, f., *disgrace, dishonor, ignominy.*

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *not to know, to be ignorant of.*

ille, illa, illud, demons. pron., *that, that one, he, she, it.*

imāgō, -inis, f., *a likeness, copy, image, semblance.*

imbēcillitās, -ātis, f., *weakness, feebleness.*

imbellis, -e, adj., *unwarlike, cowardly.*

imbuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to moisten, fill, imbue.*

imitor, -ārī, -atus sum, dep., *to imitate, copy, represent.*

immortālis, -e [in neg. + mors], adj., *immortal, undying.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n., *a hindrance, baggage.*

impediō, -ire, -īvī, -ītum, *to entangle, hinder, be in the way of, impede.*

imperītē, adv., *ignorantly, unskilfully, unadvisedly.*

imperium, -ī, n., *a command, supreme power, supremacy, sway.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to command, order, demand, govern.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to accomplish, gain one's end, obtain a request.*

impetus, -ūs, m., *an attack, onset, charge, rush.*

impius, -a, -um, adj., *impious, irreverent, ungodly, wicked.*

impōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum [in + pōnō], *to place upon, establish, impose.*

imprōvīsō, adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

impūne, adv., *without punishment, with impunity, safely.*

in, prep. with acc. or abl. With acc. after words of motion, *into, within, against, to.* With abl., *in, within, on, among, during.*

inclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to bend, incline, be disposed.*

inclitus, -a, -um, adj., *celebrated, renowned, famous.*

incola, -ae, m. and f., *an inhabitant.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *unharmed, uninjured, safe.*

incrēdibilis, -e [in neg. + crēdō], adj., *not to be believed, incredible, wonderful.*

increpō, -āre, -uī, -itum, *to sound, rustle, upbraid, chide.*

incumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubitum, *to lean upon, apply one's self, exert one's self.*

index, -icis, m. and f., *a sign, indication.*

indicium, -ī, n., *information, indication, proof, evidence.*

indicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to point out, show, declare, inform.*

indīcō, -ere, -dīxī, -dictum, *to proclaim, announce, declare.*

indīligēns, -entis, adj., *careless, negligent.*

indolēs, -is, f., *nature, character, disposition.*

indŭō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to put on, clothe, entangle, pierce;* sē stimulīs induere, *to be pierced with the pointed stakes.*

ineō, -īre, -īvī *and* -iī, -itum, *to go into, enter;* rationem īnīre, *to make an estimate.*

īnfāmis, -e [in neg. + fāma], adj., *disreputable, infamous.*

īnfāns, -fantis, m. and f., *a little child, infant.*

īnfectus, -a, -um, adj., *unfinished, not done;* rē īnfectā, *their object being unaccomplished.*

īnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [in + ferō], *to bring in, bring against, cause;* sē īnferre, *to betake one's self;* bellum īnferre, *to wage war.*

īnfēstō, -āre, ——, ——, *to disturb, annoy, infest.*

īnfēstus, -a, -um, adj., *disturbed, troublesome, hostile.*

ingēns, -entis, adj., *great, huge, large.*

ingrātus, -a, -um [in neg. + grātus], adj., *unpleasing, disagreeable, ungrateful, thankless.*

inīquus, -a, -um [in neg. + aequus], adj., *unjust, unequal, uneven, unfavorable.*

initium, -ī, n., *a beginning.*

iniungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctum [in + iungō], *to join, attach to, inflict;* servitūtem iniungere, *to impose slavery upon any one.*

iniūria, -ae, f., *injustice, wrong, outrage, insult.*

innōtēscō, -ere, -uī, ——, *to become known.*

inopia, -ae, f., *want, scarcity, poverty.*

inopīnāns, -antis, adj., *not expecting, unawares.*

inquam, def. verb, *to say;* after one or more words of a quotation.

inrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *to laugh at, mock, ridicule.*

inrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [in + rumpō], *to break in, fall upon.*

inruptiō, -ōnis, f., *a breaking in, an attack.*

īnscius, -a, -um, adj., *not knowing, unaware.*

īnsequor, -ī, secūtus sum, dep., *to follow, pursue.*

īnsidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to lie in wait, lie in ambush.*

īnsignis, -e, adj., *distinguished, eminent, marked.*

īnsolēns, -entis, adj., *unaccustomed, insolent, haughty, arrogant.*

īnstituō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to put in place, found, establish, resolve, determine, construct.*

īnstitūtum, -ī, n., *a purpose, design, institution, custom.*

īnstruō, -ere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *to build, draw up, furnish.*

īnsula, -ae, f., *an island.*

integer, -gra, -grum, adj., *whole, untouched, entire, fresh.*

integō, -ere, -tēxī, -tēctum, *to cover over.*

intellegō, -ere, -ēxī, -ēctum, *to understand, know, perceive, learn, find out.*

intentus, -a, -um, adj., *attentive, eager, alert.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among, with, during.*

interdiū, adv., *by day, in the day-time.*

intereā, adv., *meantime, meanwhile.*

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum [inter + eō], *to be lost, perish, die.*

interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [inter + faciō], *to destroy, kill, slay.*

intericiō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [inter + iaciō], *to throw between, intervene, lie between.*

interim, adv., *meanwhile, in the meantime.*

interimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, *to take away, destroy, kill.*

interior, -ius, adj., comp., *inner, interior.* Sup. intimus.

interitus, -ūs, m., *overthrow, destruction, death.*

intermittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum, *to leave off, cease, interrupt, come between, intervene.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to interpret, explain, understand.*

interrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *to break off, break down, interrupt.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *to be between, be present, take part in.* The third pers. sing. is impersonal ; *it concerns, is of interest.*

intrā, adv., *on the inside, within ;* prep. with acc., *within, in.*

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *to lead in, admit, introduce.*

inūtilis, -e, adj., *useless.*

invādō, -ere, -vāsī, -vāsum [in + vādō], *to go into, enter, invade, attack, fall upon.*

invehō, -ere, -vēxī, -vectum [in + vehō], *to carry in, attack, assail, inveigh against.*

inveterātus, -a, -um, adj., *old, of long standing.*

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, hatred, ill-will.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *against the will, unwilling.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demonstrative pron., *self, very, himself, herself,* etc.

īrātus, -a, -um, adj., *angered, enraged, angry, in anger.*

is, ea, id, demons. pron., *this, that, he, she, it,* etc.

iste, ista, istud, demons. pron. referring to what is near the person addressed, *this of yours, that of yours, he, she, it,* etc.

ita, adv., *so, thus, in this manner, accordingly.*

Ītalia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

Ītalicus, -a, -um, adj., *Italian, of Italy.*

itaque, conj., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

item, adv., *likewise, in like manner, moreover.*

iter, itineris, n., *a journey, march, way, route, road.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum, *to order, bid, command.*

iūdicium, -ī, n., *a judgment, opinion, decision.*

iugum, -ī, n., *a yoke, ridge, crest*
of a hill, *summit.*

Iūlius, -ī, m., *Julius*, a Roman
name.

iūmentum, -ī, n., *a beast of bur-
den, a draught animal, ox,
horse.*

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *to
join together, unite, yoke, har-
ness.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the
chief of the gods.

iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to swear,
make oath.*

iūs, iūris, n., *right, justice.*

iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, n., *an
oath.*

iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice, upright-
ness.*

iuvenis, -is, adj., *young.* Comp.
iūnior, Sup. minimus nātū.
As noun, *a youth, young per-
son.*

iuventūs, -ūtis, f., *youth, young
persons.*

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtum, *to help,
aid, assist.*

K

Kalendae, -ārum, f., *the first day
of the month, the Calends.*

L

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *Labienus*, a Ro-
man name.

labor, -ōris, m., *labor, toil, work.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to
labor, toil, strive, be in distress,
be hard pressed.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear.*

laedō, -ere, laesī, laesum, *to
wound, injure, offend.*

laetitia, -ae [laetus], f., *joy, re-
joicing, gladness.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *joyful,
glad.*

laeva, -ae, f., *the left hand.*

lambō, -ere, ——, ——, *to lick,
lap.*

Laphystius, -ī, m., *Laphystius*,
a Syracusan.

lapis, -idis, m., *a stone.*

Lārentia, -ae, f., *Acca Larentia*,
wife of Faustulus.

latrō, -ōnis, m., *a robber, free-
booter.*

latus, -eris, n., *the side, flank.* Cf.
apertus.

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory,
fame, merit.*

lectīca, -ae, f., *a litter, sedan-
chair, palanquin.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f., *an embassy,
legation.*

lēgātus, -ī, m., *an ambassador,
legate, lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, f., *a legion*, consist-
ing of about 6000 men in Cæ-
sar's time.

legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, *to collect,
choose, select, read.*

Lemovīcēs, -um, m., *the Lemo-
vices*, a Gallic tribe.

lēniter [lēnis], adv., *mildly,
gently.* Comp. lēnius, Sup. lē-
nissimē.

levis, -e, adj., *light, nimble;* levis
armātūrae, *light armed.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *a law, enactment.*

lībēns, -entis, adj., *willing, glad,
with pleasure.*

līberālitās, -ātis [līberālis], f., *affability, generosity, liberality.*

līberē, adv., *freely, liberally, without hindrance.*

līberī, -ōrum, m., *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to set free, to free, liberate.*

lībertās, -ātis, f., *liberty, freedom.*

lībrīlis, -e, adj., *of the weight of a pound;* fundae lībrīlēs, *slings throwing missiles weighing a pound.*

licet, impers. verb, *it is allowed, permitted, lawful.*

līneāmentum, -ī, n., *feature, lineament.*

lingua, -ae, f., *a tongue, language.*

locus, -ī, m., *a place, region.*

longē, adv., *far, far away.*

longinquus, -a, -um, adj., *distant, remote, long.*

longitūdō, -inis [longus], f., *length.*

longurius, -ī [longus], m., *a long pole.*

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, dep., *to speak, say, tell, talk of.*

lōrīca, -ae, f., *a corselet, coat of mail.*

Lūcius, -ī, m., *Lucius,* a Roman name.

lūctus, -ūs, m., *sorrow, lamentation, grief, distress.*

lūcus, -ī, m., *a sacred grove, wood.*

lūdibrium, -ī, n., *a mockery, derision, laughing stock, jest.*

lūdicer, -cra, -crum, adj., *playful, sportive, done for sport.*

lūdus, -ī, m., *a play, game, show, exhibition.*

lūmen, -inis, n., *light, sight* (of the eye).

lūna, ae, f., *the moon.*

lupa, -ae, f., *a she-wolf.*

lūstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to examine, go around, purify.*

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.*

M

māceria, -ae, f., *a wall, enclosure.*

mactus, -a, -um, adj., *honored;* macte virtūte estō, *be honored in your virtue, hail to you! good luck attend you!*

maestus, -a, -um, adj., *sad, sorrowful.*

magis, adv. comp., *more, rather.* Sup. māximē.

māgnitūdō, -inis [māgnus], f., *greatness, magnitude, size.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, extensive.* Comp. māior, Sup. māximus.

māior, cf. māgnus.

mālō, mālle, māluī [magis + volō], *to choose rather, prefer.*

Māmercus, -ī, m., *Mamercus,* a tyrant of Catana.

Māmurius, -ī, m., *Mamurius,* the maker of the *ancilia.*

mandātum, -ī, n., *an order, injunction, command, charge.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to enjoin, order, command, commission.*

Mandūbiī, -ōrum, m., *the Mandubii,* a Gallic tribe whose chief city was Alesia.

maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum, to stay, remain, continue, wait for.

manūmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [manus + mittō], to set at liberty, make free.

manus, -ūs, m., a hand, band, company, force.

Mārcus, -ī, m., Marcus, a Roman name.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., Mars, the god of war and father of Romulus and Remus.

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj., relating to Mars, of the month of March.

māter, -tris, f., a mother.

māximē, adv., sup., in the greatest degree, exceedingly, very, most. Cf. magis.

māximus, see māgnus.

mediocris, -e [medius], adj., middling, medium, ordinary, moderate.

medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle, mid, halfway between, the middle of.

memoria, -ae, f., memory, recollection.

mēns, mentis, f., the mind, intellect, thought, purpose, disposition.

mēnsis, -is, m., a month.

mentiō, -ōnis, f., a calling to mind, mention.

mercēnnārius, -a, -um [mercēs], adj., serving for hire, paid, mercenary.

merīdiēs, -eī [medius + diēs], m., midday, noon.

meritum, -ī, n., a merit, desert, service, favor.

metior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, dep., to measure, measure out, deal out.

metuō, -ere, -ī, —— [metus], to fear, be afraid.

metus, -ūs, m., fear, anxiety.

meus, -a, -um, poss. pron., mine, of me, my.

mīles, -itis, m. and f., a soldier.

mīlia, plu. of mīlle.

mīlitāris, -e [mīles], adj., of a soldier, military, warlike; rēs mīlitāris, the art of war.

minimē, adv., sup. of parum, in the smallest degree, least of all, not at all, very little.

minus, adv., comp. of parum, less.

mīrābilis, -e [mīrus], adj., wonderful, extraordinary, strange.

mīrus, -a, -um, adj., wonderful, marvelous, surprising.

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., to bewail, lament, pity.

mītigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [mītis], to soften, make gentle, soothe.

mītis, -e, adj., mild, gentle, kind.

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum, to let go, send.

moderātē, adv., moderately, with moderation, with self-control.

modius, -ī, m., a measure, nearly equal to a peck.

modo [modus], adv., measurably, only, merely, simply, just.

moenia, -ium, n., walls, ramparts, a city; fortifications.

mōlēs, -is, f., a pile, mass, bulk.

mollitia, -ae, f., softness, weakness, effeminacy. Sometimes written mollitiēs.

mōmentum, -ī, n., movement, weight, influence.

monitus, -ūs [moneō], m., *a warning, admonition, advice.*

mōns, montis, m., *a mountain.*

mora, -ae, f., *delay, hindrance.*

morbus, -ī, m., *a disease, sickness, malady.*

moror, -ārī, -ātus [mora], dep., *to delay, tarry, stay, hinder.*

mors, -tis, f., *death.*

mortuus, -a, -um [mors], adj., *dead.*

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtum, *to move, set in motion, influence.*

mox, adv., *soon, anon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, f., *a woman.*

multitūdō, -dinis, f., *a large number, throng, multitude.*

multō, adv., *by much, by far, much.*

multum, adv., *much, far, greatly.*

multus, -a, -um, adj., *much, many.* Comp. **plūs**, Sup. **plūrimus.**

mūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, *to fortify, defend, protect.*

mūnitiō, -ōnis, f., *a defending, fortifying, defense, fortification.*

mūnus, -eris, n., *a present, gift, office, service.*

mūrālis, -e [mūrus], adj., *pertaining to a wall, mural, wall.*

mūrus, -ī, m., *a wall.*

mūsculus, -ī [mūs], m., *a little mouse, a war engine.*

mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to change, modify.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*

namque, conj., *for in fact.* A strengthened **nam.**

nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, dep., *to meet with, fall in with, obtain, find.*

nātālis, -e [nātus], adj., *of birth, natal;* **diēs nātālis**, *birthday.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f., *a nation, race, people.*

(nātus, -ūs), m., abl. **nātū**, the only form in use, *by birth;* **māior nātū**, *elder.*

nē, conj., *lest, that not;* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*

-ne, enclitic, used in asking a question.

nec or **neque**, adv. and conj., *neither, nor, and not.*

necessāriō, adv., *of necessity, inevitably, necessarily.*

necessārius, -a, -um, adj., *necessary, needful.* As subst., *kinsmen, friends, relatives.*

necessitās, -ātis, f., *necessity.*

nēfarius, -a, -um, adj., *wicked, infamous, impious.*

nefāstus, -a, -um, adj., *unhallowed, unlucky;* **diēs nefāstus**, *a day* on which court may not be held. Cf. **fāstus.**

neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *to disregard, neglect, not to care for.*

nemus, -oris, n., *a grove, wood, forest.*

nepōs, -ōtis, m., *a grandson, a descendant.*

nēquāquam, adv., *by no means, in no way.*

nesciō, -īre, -īvī, ——, *not to know, to be ignorant.*

neu or **nēve**, adv., *nor, and not.*

nihil, n., indecl., *nothing, in no respect, not at all.*

nimīrum, adv., *without doubt, certainly, surely*.

nisi, conj., *unless, if not*.

nōbilis, -e, adj., *well-known, famous, noble, renowned*.

noctū, adv., *by night, at night*.

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj., *nocturnal, of the night, by night*.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī [nōn + volō], *to be unwilling, not to wish*.

nōmen, -inis, n., *a name, account*.

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to call by name, to name*.

nōn, adv., *not*.

nōndum, adv., *not yet*.

nōnne, interrog. adv., *not? whether not?*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj., *some, several*.

nōnnumquam, adv., *sometimes*.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtum, *to learn, come to know, know*.

noster, -stra, -strum, poss. pron., *our, ours*. In the plu., *our men*.

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, recent, fresh*.

nox, noctis, f., *night*.

nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *to veil one's self, to marry* (of the woman).

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to uncover, lay bare, expose*.

nūllus, -a, -um, adj., *none, no, not any*.

num, interrog. particle, used to ask a question, and need not be translated. In indirect questions, *whether*.

Numa, -ae, m., *Numa Pompilius*, second king of Rome.

nūmen, -inis, n., *divine will, a divinity, a god, divine power*.

numerus, -ī, m., *a number*.

Numitor, -ōris, m., *Numitor*, grandfather of Romulus.

numquam, adv., *never, at no time*.

nunc, adv., *now, at the present time*.

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to announce, report, inform*.

nūntius, -ī, m., *a messenger, courier, message, tidings*.

nūsquam, adv., *nowhere, in no case*.

O

Ō, interj., *O! oh!*

ob, prep. with acc., *against, on account of, for, for the sake of*.

obeō, -īre, -īvī, -itum [ob + eō], *to go to meet, go against, perform, perish;* diem suprēmum obīre, *to die*.

obiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [ob + iaciō], *to throw before, offer, oppose, be in the way*.

oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum, dep., *to forget, omit*.

obruō, -ere, -ī, -tum [ob + ruō], *to overwhelm, overthrow, bury*.

obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum [ob + sedeō], *to sit down against, besiege, blockade*.

obsidiō, -ōnis, f., *a siege, blockade*.

obstupefaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum, *to astonish, astound, stupefy*.

obterō, -ere, -trīvī, -trītum, *to bruise, crush, undervalue*.

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to call to witness, appeal to, protest*.

obtineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [ob + teneō], *to occupy, hold, possess, accomplish.*

obveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [ob + veniō], *to go to meet, happen, be allotted.*

obviam [ob + via], adv., *in the way, against;* **obviam īre** *or* **venīre**, *to meet.*

occāsus, -ūs, m., *a falling, setting;* **sōlis occāsus**, *sunset.*

occīdō, -ere, -cīdī, -cīsum [ob + caedō], *to cut down, kill, slay.*

occidō, -ere, -cidī, -cāsum [ob + cadō], *to fall, perish, be slain.*

occultē, adv., *secretly, privately.*

occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to hide, conceal.*

occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to take possession of, seize.*

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursum [ob + currō], *to run to meet, go to meet, fall in with, rush upon.*

octō, num. adj., *eight.*

octōgintā, num. adj., *eighty.*

oculus, -ī, m., *an eye.*

odium, -ī, n., *hatred, enmity.*

odor, -ōris, m., *a smell, odor.*

offerō, -ere, obtulī, oblātum [ob + ferō], *to offer, show, present.*

ōlim, adv., *at that time, at times, formerly, hereafter.*

omnis, -e, adj., *every, all, the whole of.*

opera, -ae [opus], f., *work, labor, pains;* **operam dare**, *to take pains, see to it.*

opīniō, -ōnis, f., *opinion, belief, reputation.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *a town, stronghold.*

oppleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *to fill, cover.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., *fit, suitable, favorable.*

opprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressum, *to overwhelm, overthrow, crush, oppress.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, f., *an assaulting, storming, attack, siege.*

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to assault, attack, assail, besiege.*

(ops), **opis**, f., no nom. or dat. sing., *help, succor, resources, means, wealth.*

optimē, adv., sup. of **bene**, *best.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of **bonus**, *best.*

opus, -eris, n., *work, labor, fortification, military works.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f., *a speech, oration, address, discourse.*

orbis, -is, m., *circle;* **orbis terrae** *or* **terrārum**, *the world.*

ōrdinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [ōrdō], *to order, arrange, regulate.*

oriēns, -entis [orior], m., *the rising* (sun), *the east.*

orīgō, -inis [orior], f., *the beginning, origin, lineage.*

orior, -īrī, ortus sum, dep., *to arise, appear, begin.*

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to beseech, pray, entreat.*

ōs, **ōris**, n., *the mouth, face, countenance.*

ostendō, -ere, -ī, -tentum, *to show, exhibit, manifest, declare.*

ōtiōsē [ōtium], adv., *at leisure, leisurely, without haste.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *leisure, ease, repose, quiet.*

P

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to pacify, tranquilize, subdue, make peaceful.*

pactum, -ī, n., *an agreement, compact, way, manner.*

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

palūs, -ūdis, f., *a marsh, pool;* **Caprae palūs**, *the Goat's Pool,* in the Campus Martius.

pandō, -ere, -ī, passum, *to spread out, open;* **crīnibus passīs**, *with dishevelled hair.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal, like;* **parī modō**, *in like manner.*

parcē, adv., *sparingly, frugally.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī or parsī, parsum, *to spare, be sparing, refrain from, forbear.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f., *a parent, father or mother.*

pāreō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to appear, be obedient to, submit, comply, obey.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to prepare, procure, furnish.*

pars, partis, f., *a part, share.*

particeps, -cipis [pars + capiō], adj., *taking part, sharing.* As noun *a comrade, partner.*

parum, adv., *too little, not very, not enough.* Comp. **minus**, Sup. **minimē**.

parvulus [parvus], adj., *small, little.* As noun, *child, little one.*

passus, -ūs, m., *a step, pace.*

pāstor, -ōris, m., *a shepherd.*

pateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to be open, clear, manifest, extend.*

pater, -tris, m., *a father.*

patienter, adv., *patiently, tamely.*

patior, patī, passus sum, dep., *to endure, suffer, permit, submit.*

patria, -ae [pater], f., *a fatherland, one's own country.*

paucus, -a, -um, adj., *few, little.*

paulātim, adv., *little by little, gradually.*

paulisper, adv., *for a little while.*

paulō, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

paulum, adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pavor, -ōris, m., *terror, dread, alarm.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle, herd.*

pedes, -itis, m., *a foot-soldier, infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs], adj., *of foot-soldiers, of infantry;* **pedestrēs cōpiae**, *the force of infantry.*

peditātus, -ūs [pēs], m., *foot-soldiers, infantry.*

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum, *to expel, drive away, banish, put to flight.*

per, prep. with acc., *through, along, by means of, on account of, during.*

peragrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to wander through, traverse.*

percontor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to question, inquire.*

perdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum, *to destroy, lose, ruin.*

perdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum, *to lead through, lead, conduct.*

perennis, -e, adj., *never-failing, perennial.*

perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [per

+ faciō], *to accomplish, perform, finish, complete, cause.*

perfidus, -a, -um, adj., *faithless, false, perfidious.*

perfringō, -ere, -frēgī, -frāctus [frangō], *to break through, force a way through.*

perfugiō, -ere, -fūgī, ——, *to flee for succor, take refuge.*

pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctum [per + regō], *to go on, continue, proceed, go forward, march.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril, risk.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj., *skilled, expert.*

permittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [per + mittō], *to send through, allow, grant, permit, entrust.*

perpetuō, adv., *constantly, continually.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., *constant, continuous, perpetual, lasting.*

perrumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [per + rumpō], *to break through, force a passage through.*

perspiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [per + speciō], *to perceive, see, understand, discern.*

perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [per + terreō], *to terrify, alarm.*

pertineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [per + teneō], *to extend, relate to, pertain.*

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [per + turbō], *to confound, throw into disorder, disturb, trouble.*

perveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [per + veniō], *to come through, arrive.*

pēs, pedis, m., *a foot.*

petō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, -ītum, *to seek, aim at, ask, demand, attack.*

petulāns, -antis, adj., *impudent, insolent.*

pietās, -ātis [pius], f., *filial affection, dutiful conduct, devotion, loyalty, piety.*

pīgnus, -oris, n., *a pledge, guaranty.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *a javelin, dart.*

plācābilis, -e, adj., *conciliatory, placable.*

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to please, give pleasure.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f., *a plain, level ground.*

plēbs, plēbis, or plēbēs, -ēī, f., *the common people, the plebeians.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full, filled.*

plērumque, adv., *generally, for the most part.*

plūrimus, cf. plūs.

plūs, plūris, adj., comp., *more.* Pos. multus, Sup. plūrimus.

poena, -ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m., *the Carthaginians.*

Pompilius, -ī, m., *Numa Pompilius,* the second king of Rome.

pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum, *to put, place, station, post.*

pōns, pontis, m., *a bridge.*

populus, -ī, m., *a people, nation, the people.*

Porsena, -ae, m., *Porsena,* king of Clusium.

porta, -ae, f., *a gate, door.*

pōscō, -ere, popōscī, ——, *to ask for, demand, claim.*

possessiō, -ōnis, f., *a possession, occupation.*

possum, posse, potuī, irreg. verb, *to be able, can, have power.*

post, adv., *behind, afterwards.*

post, prep. with acc., *behind, after.*

posteā, adv., *afterwards.*

posteāquam, adv., *after that.* Also written posteā quam.

(posterus), -a, -um, adj., not used in nom. sing. masc., *following, next.* In the plu., *descendants, posterity.* Comp. posterior, Sup. postrēmus.

postrēmō, adv., *at last, finally.*

postrīdiē, adv., *on the next day.*

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to ask, demand.*

potēns, -entis, adj., *able, powerful.*

potentātus, -ūs [potēns], m., *dominion, chief power.*

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep., *to become master of, gain possession of, acquire, gain.*

potissimum [potis], adv., sup., *chiefly, above all, in preference to all others.*

potius [potis], adv., comp., *rather.*

praecīdō, -ere, -ī, -cīsum [prae + caedō], *to cut off.*

praecipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum [prae + capiō], *to take beforehand, order, direct, instruct.*

praeclārus, -a, -um [prae + clārus], *splendid, remarkable, famous.*

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, plunder, prey.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, ātum [prae + dicō], *to announce, proclaim, herald.*

praedūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [prae + dūcō], *to draw before, construct in front.*

praefectus, -ī [prae + faciō], m., *commander, lieutenant.*

praeficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [prae + faciō], *to set over, place in command of.*

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prae + parō], *to prepare beforehand, prepare.*

praerumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum [prae + rumpō], *to break off, tear away in front.*

praesaepiō, -īre, -saepsī, -saeptum [prae + saepiō], *to hedge in in front, barricade.*

praesertim, adv., *especially, chiefly.*

praesidium, -ī, n., *defense, guard, garrison.*

praesum, -esse, -fuī [prae + sum], *to be before, have charge of, command.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *beyond, before, besides, except.*

prabtereā, adv., *besides, moreover.*

praetereō, -īre, -iī, -itum [praeter + eō], *to go by, pass by, disregard.*

praeteritus, -a, -um [praetereō], adj., *past.*

praeterquam, adv., *besides, except.*

praetōrius, -a, -um [praetor],

adj., *prætorian, belonging to a general.*

precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to pray, beseech, ask.*

premō, -ere, pressī, pressum, *to press down, oppress, overwhelm.*

pretium, -ī, n., *a price, value.*

(prex, precis), f., nom. and gen. not used, *prayer, request.*

prīmō, adv., *at first, in the first place.*

prīmum, adv., *first, for the first time, at first.*

prīnceps, -cipis, m., *chief, leader.*

prior, prius, adj., comp., *former, prior, first.* Sup. **prīmus.**

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj., *former, old, original.*

priusquam, adv., *sooner than, before.*

prīvātus, -a, -um, adj., *private, personal.*

prīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to deprive, rob.*

prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of, in place of, instead of, for, according to, in behalf of.*

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to approve, try, prove, show.*

Proca, -ae, m., *Proca,* king of the Albans.

procācitās, -ātis, f., *impudence, impertinence.*

prōcēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum, *to go before, advance, proceed.*

procul, adv., *far, far off.*

Proculus, -ī, m., *Proculus,* a Roman name.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to attend to, avert, ward off.*

prōditiō, -ōnis, f., *treachery, treason.*

prōdō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [prō + dō], *to give forth, hand down, transmit.*

prōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [prō + dūcō], *to lead forth, lead out, draw up.*

proelium, -ī, n., *a battle.*

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum [prō + ferō], *to bring forward, bring forth.*

prōficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [prō + faciō], *to advance, accomplish, effect.*

proficīscor, -ī, -fectus sum, dep., *to set out, depart, march.*

prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō + habeō], *to hold back, hinder, prevent, prohibit.*

prōiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [prō + iaciō], *to cast forth, throw, throw down.*

prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum [prō + mittō], *to promise.*

prōmoveō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum [prō + moveō], *to move forward, advance.*

prope, adv., *near.* Also used as a prep. with acc. Comp. **propius,** Sup. **proximē.**

prōpellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [prō + pellō], *to drive forward, impel, drive away, repulse.*

prōpēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *inclining towards, disposed.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to hasten.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj., *near, neighboring.* As noun, *kinsmen, neighbors.*

propior, -us, adj., comp., *nearer*.

propius, adv., comp., cf. **prope**.

prōpōnō, -ere, -posuī, -positum [prō + pōnō], *to place before, present, offer, propose*.

propter, prep. with acc., *near, on account of, because of*.

prōpūgnāculum, -ī [prōpūgnō], n., *a bulwark, rampart, defense*.

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō + pūgnō], *to rush out to fight, sally, defend*.

prōspectus, -ūs [prō + speciō], m., *an outlook, distant view, prospect*.

prōsternō, -ere, -strāvī,-strātum [prō + sternō], *to throw down, to overthrow, prostrate*.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī [prō + sum], *to be of use, benefit, profit*.

prōterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum [prō + terreō], *to frighten off, terrify, affright*.

prōtinus, adv., *forward, straight on, directly, forthwith*.

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [prō + turbō], *to drive away in disorder, drive off, dislodge*.

prōvehō, -ere, -vexī, -vectum [prō + vehō], *to carry forward, advance*; **aetāte prōvehī**, *to be advanced in years*.

prōveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [prō + veniō], *to come forth, appear*.

prōventus, -ūs, m., *the result, issue*.

prōvincia, -ae, f., *a province*.

proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup., *nearest, next*. Comp. **propior**.

prūdentia, -ae, f., *foresight, wisdom, sagacity, prudence*.

pūblicē, adv., *in the name of the state, publicly, officially*.

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj., *of the state, public*.

Pūblius, -ī, m., *Publius*, a Roman name.

pūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to fight*.

pulcher, -chra,-chrum, adj., *fair, beautiful, noble*. Comp. **pulchrior**, Sup. **pulcherrimus**.

pulvis, -eris, m., rarely f., *dust*.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to reckon, think, consider*.

Pyrrhus, -ī, m., *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.

Q

quadrāgintā, num. adj., *forty*.

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *to seek, ask, require*.

quālis, -e, adj. pron., *of what sort, as, such as, what kind of a*; **tālis . . . quālis**, *such . . . as*.

quam, adv., *how, as*. After comparatives, *than*. With superlatives, *as possible*; **tam . . . quam**, *so . . . as*.

quamdiū, adv., *as long as*.

quantus, -a, -um, adj. pron., *how much, how great, as much as*; **tantus . . . quantus**, *so much . . . as*.

quasi, adv., *as if*.

quattuor, num. adj., *four*.

-que, conj. enclit., *and*. Always joined to another word.

queror, -ī, questus sum, dep., *to complain, bewail*.

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, that.* Interrog. (neut. **quid** or **quod**), *who? which? what?*

quīcumque, quaecumque, quod-cumque, rel. pron., *whoever, whatever, all who.*

quid, interrog. adv., *why? how?*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam *and* **quiddam**, indef. pron., *a certain one, somebody, something.* Plu., *some, certain ones.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, in fact, truly.* Often to be expressed by giving a proper emphasis in the sentence. Cf. **nē.**

quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet.*

quīn, conj., *but that, but, without, that not.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *five hundred.*

quīntus, -a, -um, num. adj., *the fifth.*

Quirīnālis, -e, adj., *of Quirinus* or *Romulus;* **collis Quirīnālis**, *the Quirinal Hill,* one of the seven hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -ī, m., *Quirinus,* a name given to Romulus.

quis, quae, quid, interrog. pron., *who? which? what?* After **sī, nisi,** and **num,** indefinite, *any one, anybody, anything, some one, somebody, something.*

quisquam, neut. **quicquam**, indef. pron., *any, any one, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, indef. pron., *each, each one, every.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or **quodvīs**, indef. pron., *any one you please, any one, any.*

quō, adv., *where, whither.* As conj., *in order that, that thereby.*

quōminus, conj., *that not, so that not.*

quondam, adv., *once, formerly, hereafter.*

quoniam, adv., *since, seeing that, inasmuch as.*

quoque, conj., following the word it makes emphatic, *also, too.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many.*

R

radius, -ī, m., *a staff, ray, beam* (of light).

rādīx, -īcis, f., *a root, foot* (of a hill or mountain).

rapīna, -ae, f., *robbery, plunder, pillage.*

rapiō, -ere, -uī, -tum, *to seize and carry off, hurry away, plunder.*

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *scattered, far apart, here and there, few.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f., *a reckoning, account, consideration, plan.*

rātus, -a, -um, *thinking;* participle of **reor.**

Rebilus, -ī, m., *Rebilus,* one of Cæsar's lieutenants.

recēnseō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to enumerate, review, muster.*

recidō, -ere, reccidī, recasum, *to fall back, return, be handed over.*

recipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, *to take back, recover, receive;* **sē recipere**, *to betake one's self, to retreat.*

recreō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to restore, revive, renew.*

rēctē, adv., *rightly, properly, well.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to decline, refuse, reject, object, protest.*

reddō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [red + dō], *to give back, return, restore.*

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [red + eō], *to go back, return, come.*

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum [red + agō], *to bring back, reduce, render, compel.*

redimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum [red + emō], *to ransom, redeem, purchase.*

redintegrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to restore, renew.*

reditus, -ūs [red + eō], m., *a returning, going back, return.*

redūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum [re + dūcō], *to lead back, withdraw.*

referō, -ferre, rettulī, relātum, *to bear back, bring, return;* **pedem referre**, *to retreat.*

reficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [re + faciō], *to make again, repair, restore.*

Rēgīnus, -ī, m., *Reginus*, a Roman name.

regiō, -ōnis, f., *a region, district, country.*

rēgius, -a, -um, adj., *of a king, royal, kingly.*

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to reign, rule.*

rēgnum, -ī, n., *a kingdom.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *to rule, govern, conduct.*

regredior, -ī, -gressus sum [re + gradior], dep., *to go back, return.*

relābor, -ī, lāpsus sum, dep., *to slide back, flow back, return, recede.*

religiō, -ōnis, f., *piety, religion.*

relinquō, -ere, -līquī, -lictum, *to leave behind, leave, desert.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj., *left, remaining, the rest of.*

Remus, -ī, m., *Remus*, brother of Romulus.

renāscor, -ī, -nātus sum [re + nāscor], dep., *to be born again, grow again.*

renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum [re + nūntiō], *to report back, report, announce.*

reor, rērī, rātus sum, dep., *to think, judge.*

repellō, -ere, -pulī, -pulsum [re + pellō], *to drive back, repulse, repel.*

repente, adv., *suddenly.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *to find, discover.*

rēs, reī, f., *a thing, circumstance, affair, event, matter;* **rēs pūblica**, *the state, commonwealth.*

rescindō, -ere, -scidī, -scissum, *to cut off, tear down, destroy.*

reservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to keep back, reserve.*

resideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *to remain, reside, abide.*

resistō, -ere, -stitī, ——, *to stand still, halt, come to a stand, resist.*

respiciō, -ere, -spexī, -spectum [re + speciō], *to look back, look for, regard, consider.*

respīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to take breath, recover.*

respondeō, -ēre, -ī, -spōnsum, to answer, reply.

respōnsum, -ī, n., an answer, reply.

restituō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, to restore, replace, reinstate.

revertor, -ī, -versus sum, dep., to turn back, return; perf. also revertī.

rēx, rēgis, m., a king.

Rhea, -ae, f., Rhea Silvia.

rigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to wet, moisten, water.

rīpa, -ae, f., a bank (of a river).

rīte, adv., with proper ceremony, duly, solemnly.

rōbur, -oris, n., oak, strength, power, flower.

Rōma, -ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., Roman. As noun, a Roman.

Rōmulus, -ī, m., Romulus, the founder of Rome.

rūrsus, adv., in turn, again.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m., the Sabines.

sacellum, -ī, n., a little sanctuary, chapel.

sacer, -cra, -crum, adj., sacred, consecrated.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f., a priest, priestess.

saepe, adv., often. Comp. saepius, Sup. saepissimē.

saepiō, -īre, -sī, -tum, to hedge about, hedge in, fortify.

sagitta, -ae, f., an arrow.

sagittārius, -ī, m., an archer, bowman.

Saliī, -ōrum, m., the Salii, a college of priests founded by Numa.

saltō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to dance.

saltus, -ūs, m., a forest, woodland, pasture.

(saltus, -ūs), m., a leaping, leap, bound. Only in acc. and abl. in both numbers.

salūs, -ūtis, f., safety, welfare.

sānctē, adv., scrupulously, religiously, reverently. Comp. sānctius, Sup. sānctissimē.

sanguis, -guinis, m., blood.

sapiēns, -entis, adj., wise, discreet.

satelles, -itis, m. and f., companion, assistant.

satis, adj., indecl., enough, sufficient. Also used as noun.

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, to give satisfaction, satisfy

saxum, -ī, n., a rock.

scalae, -ārum, f., a ladder, scaling-ladder.

scelus, -eris, n., a crime, wickedness.

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissum, to cleave, divide, rend.

sciō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, to know, understand.

scissus, part. of scindō, rent, cleft.

scrība, -ae, m., a secretary, clerk.

scrobis, -is, m. and f., a ditch, trench.

scūtum, -ī, n., a shield.

sēcrētus, -a, -um, adj., separate, apart, secret.

secundus, -a, -um, adj., following, second, favorable.

secūris, -is, f., an axe.

sed, conj., *but.*

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, *to sit, be still, delay.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, f., *dissension, civil discord, sedition.*

Sedulius, -ī, m., *Sedulius*, a Gallic leader.

sēgniter, adv., *slothfully, slowly, lazily.*

sella, -ae, f., *a chair, stool;* **sella curūlis**, *the magistrates' chair.*

semper, adv., *always, ever.*

senātor, -ōris, m., *a senator.*

senātus, -ūs, m., *the senate,* the council of state at Rome.

senectūs, -ūtis, f., *old age, age.*

senior, -ōris, adj., comp. of **senex**, *older, elder.* As noun, *the elders, the older men.*

sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, judgment, sentiment, purpose.*

sepeliō, -īre, -īvī, sepultum, *to bury.*

septentriōnēs, -um, m. plu., *the seven stars of the Great Bear, the north.*

septuāgintā, num. adj., *seventy.*

sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, dep., *to follow, succeed, come after, pursue.*

sermō, -ōnis, m., *a discourse, conversation, talk.*

serō, adv., *late, too late.*

servīlis, -e, adj., *slavish, servile.*

servitūs, -ūtis, f., *slavery, servitude.*

servus, -ī, m., *a slave, servant, bondsman.*

seu or **sīve**, conj., *or if, whether.*

sex, num. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, num. adj., *sixty.*

sī, conj., *if, whether.*

sīc, adv., *thus, so.*

siccus, -a, -um, adj., *dry.* As noun, *dry land.*

Sicilia, -ae, f., *the island of Sicily.*

Siculī, -ōrum, m., *the Sicilians,* inhabitants of Sicily.

sīgnificātiō, -ōnis, f., *an indication, signal, warning.*

sīgnificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to make signs, show, indicate.*

sīgnum, -ī, n., *a sign, indication, military standard, banner.*

silentium, -ī, n., *silence.*

sileō, -ere, -uī, ——, *to be still, be silent.*

Silvia, -ae, f., (Rhea) *Silvia,* the mother of Romulus and Remus.

similis, -e, adj., *like, similar.*

simplex, -icis, adj., *simple, plain, unmixed.*

simulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to pretend, feign.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singulāris, -e, adj., *singular, single, remarkable, alone.*

singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. adj., *one at a time, single, one to each.*

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., *left, on the left, unfavorable.*

situs, -ūs, m., *situation, site, position.*

societās, -ātis, f., *union, alliance.*

sociō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to unite, associate, share.*

socius, -ī, m., *ally, companion, associate.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.*

soleō, -ēre, -litus sum, semidep.,
  to be wont, be accustomed.

sōlitūdō, -inis [sōlus], f., lone-
  liness, solitude, a lonely place,
  desert.

sōlum, adv., alone, only.

sōlus, -a, -um, adj., alone, only.

soror, -ōris, f., a sister.

sors, sortis, f., a lot, chance, fate.

spatium, -ī, n., a space, extent,
  distance.

speciēs (-ēī), f., appearance,
  form, looks.

spectāculum, -ī, n., a show, spec-
  tacle.

spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, to look
  at, observe, examine, extend, lie.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum,
  to despise, reject, scorn, spurn.

spolium, -ī, n., mostly in the plu.,
  spoil, booty, arms taken from
  an enemy.

statim, adv., forthwith, immedi-
  ately.

statiō, -ōnis [stō], f., a position,
  station, post, outposts, sentries,
  guards.

statua, -ae [stō], f., a statue,
  image.

status, -ūs [stō], m., standing,
  position, condition.

stimulus, -ī, m., a prick, spur,
  pointed stake planted in the
  ground to hinder the enemy.

strāgēs, -is, f., overthrow, defeat,
  slaughter, carnage.

studium, -ī, n., zeal, desire, in-
  clination, pursuit.

stultitia, -ae, f., folly.

suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, to
  advise, urge, persuade.

subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum [sub + eō],
  to go under, undergo, endure,
  come up.

subiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [sub
  + iaciō], to place under, make
  subject, bring up.

subigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum [sub
  + agō], to overcome, subjugate,
  drive, compel.

subitō, adv., suddenly.

sublicius, -a, -um, adj., resting
  upon piles; pōns sublicius, the
  pile-bridge (over the Tiber at
  Rome).

subluō, -ere, ——, -tum, to wash
  below.

submittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum
  [sub + mittō], to let down, send
  secretly, send as aid.

subolēs, -is, f., offspring.

subrīdeō, -ēre, -rīsī, —— [sub
  + rīdeō], to smile.

subsequor, -ī, -secūtus sum, to
  follow after, follow.

subsidium, -ī, n., a reserve force,
  reinforcement, relief, help.

succēdō, -ere, -cēssī, -cēssum
  [sub + cēdō], to follow, come
  up, come after, succeed.

succumbō, -ere, -cubuī, -cubi-
  tum [sub + cumbō], to sub-
  mit, yield, give up.

succurrō, -ere, -cursum [sub +
  currō], to run to help, assist,
  succor.

sudis, -is, f., a stake.

sufficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum [sub
  + faciō], to be sufficient, suffice.

suī, gen. of the reflex. pron., nom.
  wanting, himself, herself, itself,
  themselves.

sum, esse, fuī, irreg. verb, *to be.*

summus, -a, -um, adj., super. of **superus,** *highest, best, greatest, supreme.*

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *to take, undertake, begin.*

super, prep. with acc. and abl., *over, above, on, about, concerning, beyond.*

superāstō, -āre, -stitī, ——, *to stand upon.*

superbia, -ae, f., *haughtiness, arrogance.*

superincidō, -ere, ——, ——, *to fall upon from above.*

superior, -ius, adj., *higher, greater, better,* comp. of **superus.**

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to go over, surpass, overcome, subdue.*

superus, -a, -um [**super**], adj., *above, higher.* Comp. **superior,** Sup. **suprēmus** or **summus.**

superveniō, -īre, -vēnī, -ventum [**super + veniō**], *to come upon, come up.*

suppetō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, *to be at hand, be present, to suffice.*

supplicium, -ī, n., *a punishment, penalty.*

suprā, adv., *above, before.*

suscipiō, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum [**sub + capiō**], *to take, receive, begin, undertake, undergo.*

sustineō, -ēre, -uī, -tentum [**sub + teneō**], *to hold up, sustain, withstand.*

suus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *his, hers, its, theirs, one's own.*

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f., *Syracuse, the chief city of Sicily.*

Syrācūsānī, -ōrum, m., *the Syracusans.*

T

tabula, -ae, f., *a writing-tablet, record, list.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such, of such a kind;* **tālis . . . quālis,** *such . . . as.*

tamen, adv., *nevertheless, still, yet.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so much, such.* See **quantus.**

Tarentīnī, -ōrum, m., *the Tarentines,* inhabitants of Tarentum.

Tarpēia, -ae, f., *Tarpeia.*

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m., *the Tarquins,* one of the families of Roman kings.

Tatius, -ī, m., *Tatius,* a name of a Sabine leader.

tēlum, -ī, n., *a weapon, javelin, missile.*

temerārius, -a, -um, adj., *rash, inconsiderate, indiscreet.*

temeritās, -ātis, f., *rashness, indiscretion, temerity.*

tempestās, -ātis, f., *a storm, tempest, weather.*

templum, -ī, n., *a temple, sanctuary.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to attempt, try.*

tempus, -oris, n., *time, season.*

teneō, -ēre, -uī, -tum, *to hold, keep, retain, maintain, defend.*

Terentius, -ī, m., *Terentius,* a Roman name.

tergum, -ī, n., *the back, rear.*

terra, -ae, f., *the earth, land, region, country.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *to frighten, terrify, deter.*

terribilis, -e, adj., *dreadful, fearful.*

terror, -ōris, m., *alarm, fear, fright.*

tēstimōnium, -ī, n., *testimony, evidence, proof.*

tēstis, -is, m. and f., *a witness.*

tēstūdō, -inis, f., *a tortoise, a shelter of shields* used by besiegers, *a testudo.*

Teutonēs, -um, m., *the Teutones,* a German tribe.

theātrum, -ī, n., *a theater, place of exhibition.*

Tiberis, -is, m., *the Tiber.*

timor, -ōris, m., *fear, dread.*

Tīmoleōn, -ontis, m., *Timoleon,* a Corinthian who went to the assistance of the Syracusans.

Titus, -ī, m., *Titus,* a Roman name.

tolerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to endure, bear, hold out, support.*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *to raise, lift up, carry off, take away.*

tonitrus, -ūs, m., *thunder.* Sometimes neuter in the plu.

tormentum, -ī, n., *an engine for hurling stones or darts, torture.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

tōtus, -a, -um, adj., *the whole, all.*

trādō, -ere, -didī, -ditum [trāns + dō], *to give up, deliver, surrender, hand down.*

trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctum, *to drag along, to draw, derive, delay, prolong.*

trāiciō, -ere, -iēcī, -iectum [trāns + iaciō], *to throw across, transfer, lead over, cross over.*

trānō, -āre, -āvī, ——, *to swim across, swim over.*

trānscendō, -ere, -ī, ——, *to pass over, cross, surmount.*

trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum [trāns + eō], *to go over, go across, pass by.*

trānsfodiō, -ere, -fōdī, -fossum, *to dig through, transfix, pierce.*

trānsiliō, -īre, -uī, ——, *to leap over.*

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, adj., *from beyond sea, transmarine.*

trecentī, -ae, -a, num. adj., *three hundred.*

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*

tribūnus, -ī, m., *a tribune.*

tribuō, -ere, -ī, -ūtum, *to assign, ascribe, distribute, bestow.*

trīgintā, num. adj., indecl., *thirty.*

trux, trucis, adj., *fierce, savage.*

tū, tuī, pers. pron., *you, thou.*

tuba, -ae, f., *a trumpet.*

tum, adv., *then, at that time.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that time, just then.*

turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to disturb, throw into confusion.*

turma, -ae, f., *a troop, squadron.*

turpis, -e, adj., *disgraceful, unseemly, base.*

turpiter [turpis], adv., *basely, shamefully, dishonorably.*

turris, -is, f., *a tower.*

tūtēla, -ae, f., *safeguard, defense.*

tūtus, -a, -um, adj., *safe, secure, protected.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron., *thy, thine, your, yours.*

tyrannis, -idis, f., *arbitrary power, tyranny.*

tyrannus, -ī, m., *an absolute ruler, usurper, despot, tyrant.*

U

ūber, -eris, n., *an udder, breast.*

ubi, adv., rel. and interrog., *where, in which place, whereby; where? in what place?*

ūllus, -a, -um, adj., *any, any one.*

ūlterior, -ius, adj., comp., *farther, on the farther side, more remote.*

ūltimus, -a, -um, sup. of **ūlterior.**

ūltrō, adv., *beyond, of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

ululātus, -ūs, m., *a howling, war-whoop.*

umquam, adv., *ever, at any time.*

ūndecim, num. adj., *eleven.*

undique, adv., *everywhere, on all sides, from every side.*

ūniversus, -a, -um, adj., *all, whole, entire.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj., *one, one only, alone.*

urbs, urbis, f., *a city.*

ūsque, adv., *even, as far as, all the way.*

ūsus, -ūs, m., *use, practice, experience, need, necessity.*

ut, conj., *that, so that, in order that.* As adv., *as, just as, how.*

uter, utra, utrum, adj., interrog., *which of two? which?* Relative, *whichever* (of two), *the one who or which* (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj., *each, both.*

ūtilis, -e [**ūtor**], adj., *useful, serviceable.*

ūtor, -ī, ūsus sum, dep., *to use, make use of, enjoy, employ, practise, exercise.*

utrimque, adv., *on both sides.*

uxor, -ōris, f., *a wife.*

V

vacuēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factum [**vacuus + faciō**], *to make empty, make vacant, vacate.*

vadimōnium, -ī, n., *bail for appearance, bail, security.*

vāgītus, -ūs, m., *a crying.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, *to be strong, have influence, avail, be able.*

Valerius, -ī, m., *Valerius*, a Roman name.

valētūdō, -inis [**valeō**], f., *health, state of health, feebleness.*

vāllum, -ī, n., *a rampart* formed of stakes, *palisade, fortification.*

varius, -a, -um, adj., *various, different, diverse.*

Varrō, -ōnis, m., *Varro*, a Roman name.

vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., *waste, desert, vast.*

vehementer, adv., *violently, eagerly, impetuously.* Comp. **vehementius.**

vehiculum, -ī [**vehō**], n., *a carriage, vehicle.*

vehō, -ere, vexī, vectum, *to carry, convey, bear.*

velutī, adv., *as, just as.* Also written **velut.**

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventum, *to come.*

venor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep., *to hunt.*

ventus, -ī, m., *the wind.*

verbum, -ī, n., *a word.*

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., *Vercassivellaunus,* a Gallic chief.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, m., *Vercingetorix,* the leader of the Gauls.

vērē, adv., *truly, truthfully.*

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, *to stand in awe of, revere, fear, be afraid.*

vērō, adv., *in truth, in fact, surely, but in fact.*

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to keep turning, think over, meditate.* In the pass., *to be, be situated, engaged in, busy one's self with.*

vertō, -ere, -ī, versum, *to turn, turn back;* **terga vertere,** *to turn their backs, take to flight.*

vērum, adv., *but in truth, but.*

Vesta, -ae, f., *Vesta,* goddess of the hearth and home.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. pron., *your, yours.*

vēstīgium, -ī, n., *a footstep, trace, vestige.*

vestis, -is, f., *clothing, garments, garb.*

vestītus, -ūs, *dress, attire, clothing.*

vetus, -eris, adj., *old, former, ancient.* Comp. **vetustior,** Sup. **veterrimus.**

vexō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to harass, trouble, annoy.*

vīcēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj., *the twentieth.*

vīcīnus, -a, -um, adj., *near, neighboring.*

vicis, gen. (nom. not used), *change, succession;* **in vicem,** *in turn, successively.*

victor, -ōris, m., *a victor, conqueror.*

victōria, -ae, f., *victory.*

vīcus, -ī, m., *a village, hamlet.*

vidēlicet, adv., *evidently, plainly, forsooth, of course.*

videō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, *to see, perceive.* In the pass., *to seem, appear.*

vigilia, -ae, f., *a watch, guard, watching, division of the night.*

vīgintī, num. adj., *twenty.*

vinciō, -īre, vīnxī, vīnctum, *to bind, fasten.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, *to conquer, defeat, subdue.*

vinculum, -ī [**vinciō**], n., *that which binds, a chain, bond, fetter.*

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to assert a claim to, defend, punish.*

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine.*

vir, virī, m., *a man, husband.*

virgō, -inis, f., *a maiden, girl.*

Viridomarus, -ī, m., *Viridomarus,* a Gallic chief.

virītim [**vir**], adv., *man by man, to each man.*

virtūs, -ūtis [**vir**], f., *manliness, worth, valor, courage.*

vīs (gen. wanting), acc. **vim,** f., *strength, force, power, number.*

vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum, *to live*.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj., *living, alive*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty, hardly, scarcely*.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to call, name, summon, invoke*.

volō, velle, voluī, *to wish, be willing, desire*.

vōtum, -ī, n., *a vow, pledge*.

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, *to make a vow, promise solemnly, vow*.

vōx, vōcis [vocō], f., *the voice, utterance, word*.

vulgō, adv., *commonly, generally*.

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *to wound, hurt*.

vulnus, -eris, n., *a wound*.

vultur, -uris, m., *a vulture*.

vultus, -ūs, m., *countenance, looks, face, expression*.